

Book 1





FUNDAMENTALS  
OF  
FRENCH GRAMMAR.

WITH ILLUSTRATIVE TEXTS, EXERCISES,  
AND VOCABULARIES

FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY

WILLIAM B. SNOW

*Officier d'Académie*

*Head of the Department of Romance Languages*

*English High School, Boston, Mass.*



NEW YORK  
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

1912

673  
2674

COPYRIGHT, 1912,  
BY  
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

Pub.

1-12749  
TO THE  
LIBRARY OF  
THE UNIVERSITY OF  
CALIFORNIA

## PREFACE

A quarter-century of teaching has convinced the author that the value of a text-book generally varies inversely as its size. His original question was therefore not what could be put into an elementary French grammar, but what might reasonably be omitted. He had before his eyes more than one unhappy example of books spoiled for the class-room by the excess of their excellences. "Abundant exercises" have in some cases so multiplied that, with our time-limitations, the reader, which should be the center of our instruction, is crowded out, and grammar is mistress instead of handmaiden. This book is planned to give the help required in connection with reading or writing, and is intended to furnish that help as need thereof is likely to be felt.

Exercises and illustrations are believed to be sufficiently numerous to explain and fix principles, without being too extensive for careful study in the time that should be apportioned to the grammar. For each topic, not all possible forms of exercises, but the kinds thought best suited to that topic, have been provided. The best supplementary exercises are those based on the text read by each class. Teachers, however, who wish to do intensive work in connection with the grammar will find a classified collection of substantial drill material on pages 147 to 192.

Arrangement is at first inductive, examples preceding rules; later, deductive. A considerable portion of Chapters VI and VII should be omitted by beginners, but is

inserted to make the book adequate for advanced work in secondary schools or for most classes in colleges.

The question of phonetic type is solved by putting it at the bottom of the page, where those who wish it can find it easily, and those who object to it need not look at it.

An especial feature of the book is the presentation of the verb, which the author has tested for many years, teaching by tenses instead of by conjugations, and giving tenses in the order of their importance. Useful synoptic tables are given on pages 193 to 201; but the complete tables of conjugation and translation found in many books are directly opposed to the author's belief that one should not do for a pupil what the latter can profitably do for himself; and long experience, both with and without complete paradigms, has proved conclusively that they are a positive injury to the pupil, and that far better results are obtained when, from the beginning, the pupil learns most forms as derived in accordance with a few simple rules, and then concentrates his attention on the exceptions.

Another conviction, based on both theory and experience, is that irregular forms, being the commonest and most useful words, should be attacked early and mastered while one form is as easy to memorize as another, before an established analogy impels the mind to reject such forms as *faites*, *vont*, or *tiennent*.

Prepositions are given a fullness of treatment which it is hoped will be welcome in view of the great importance and difficulty of the subject. A page or two on word-order, that prime essential in expressing or comprehending delicate shades of thought, may be illuminating to some readers.

The author's obligation to several well-known grammars will be apparent and is gratefully acknowledged. His thanks are also due to his colleagues Charles P. Lebon, who has made many valuable suggestions and corrections, Peter F. Gartland, who has read proof, and James E. O'Neil, who has assisted with the vocabularies.

W. B. S.

BOSTON,

April 6, 1912.



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

# CONTENTS

## INTRODUCTION

	PAGE
THE PARTS OF SPEECH, § 1 . . . . .	1
LETTERS AND THEIR SOUNDS, § 2 . . . . .	2
Vowels, §§ 3-11 . . . . .	2
Syllables, §§ 12-14 . . . . .	5
Nasal vowels, § 15 . . . . .	7
Consonants, § 16 . . . . .	8
Liaison, § 17 . . . . .	10
Phonetic alphabet, § 18 . . . . .	11

## CHAPTER I

### SUBSTANTIVES AND THEIR MOST FREQUENT SUBORDINATES

Definite nouns; masculine and feminine, §§ 19-20 . . . . .	13
Feminine of adjectives, §§ 21-23 . . . . .	13
Special forms before vowels,	
Elision, § 24; <b>ce</b> , <b>cet</b> , <b>beau</b> , <b>bel</b> , etc., § 25 . . . . .	15
Plurals of nouns and adjectives, §§ 26-31 . . . . .	16
Contracted forms; pronoun <b>ce</b> , §§ 29, 30 . . . . .	18
Possessive adjectives, § 32 . . . . .	19
Indefinite and partitive constructions, §§ 33-37 . . . . .	20

## CHAPTER II

### FUNDAMENTAL VERB-FORMS

Primitive tenses; stem and ending, §§ 38-40 . . . . .	23
Present indicative singular, § 41; subject pronouns, § 42 . . .	25
Present indicative plural, §§ 43, 44 . . . . .	26
Vowel-strengthening, §§ 45, 46 . . . . .	27
<b>Y</b> and <b>i</b> , § 47; <b>c</b> and <b>g</b> , cedilla, § 48 . . . . .	29
Noteworthy forms of present indicative, § 49 . . . . .	30

	PAGE
Imperative, § 50 . . . . .	31
Interrogative forms, §§ 51-53 . . . . .	33
Negation, § 54 . . . . .	34

## CHAPTER III

## PRONOUNS

Personal pronouns, § 55 . . . . .	35
Direct and indirect objects, § 56 . . . . .	36
Disjunctive or stressed pronouns, § 57 . . . . .	37
Position of objective pronouns, § 58 . . . . .	37
Reflexive pronouns, §§ 59, 60 . . . . .	38
Y and en, § 61 . . . . .	39
Invariable le, § 62 . . . . .	40
Two objective pronouns, §§ 63-65 . . . . .	41
Possessive pronouns, § 66 . . . . .	43
Demonstrative pronouns, §§ 67-71 . . . . .	45
Relative pronouns, §§ 72-80 . . . . .	48
Interrogative pronouns, §§ 81-83 . . . . .	53
Indefinites, §§ 84-89 . . . . .	56

## CHAPTER IV

## PAST AND FUTURE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

Past indefinite, §§ 90-92 . . . . .	61
Imperfect, §§ 93-95 . . . . .	63
Past definite, §§ 96, 97 . . . . .	64
Future, §§ 98-101 . . . . .	68
Compound tenses, §§ 102-104 . . . . .	71
Passive voice, §§ 105-107 . . . . .	73

## CHAPTER V

VERB-FORMS OTHER THAN THE INDICATIVE  
AND IMPERATIVE

Infinitive, §§ 108, 109 . . . . .	75
Participles (gerund), §§ 110-113 . . . . .	76
Conditional, §§ 114-116 . . . . .	79
Subjunctive, §§ 117-125 . . . . .	82



## CHAPTER VI

MORE ABOUT SUBSTANTIVES AND THEIR  
SUBORDINATES

	PAGE
Gender, §§ 126–129 . . . . .	89
Invariable forms, §§ 130, 131 . . . . .	93
Agreement of adjectives, § 132 . . . . .	94
Comparison of adjectives and adverbs, §§ 133–135 . . . . .	94
Use of the articles, §§ 136, 137 . . . . .	96
Word-order, § 138 . . . . .	98
Cardinal numbers, § 139 . . . . .	100
Ordinals, § 140; collectives, § 141; fractions, § 142 . . . . .	102
Time, § 143; dates and titles, § 144 . . . . .	104
Age, § 145 . . . . .	105
Dimension, § 146 . . . . .	106
<b>Ce</b> and <b>il</b> , § 147 . . . . .	107
Predicate <b>le</b> , § 148; <b>le plus</b> , § 149 . . . . .	108
<b>En</b> for English possessive adjective, § 150 . . . . .	109

## CHAPTER VII

## MORE ABOUT VERBS

Inversion, §§ 151, 152 . . . . .	110
Agreement, §§ 153–155 . . . . .	111
Government, § 156 . . . . .	112
Complement, §§ 157–162 . . . . .	113
Special uses of future, §§ 163, 164 . . . . .	116
Special uses of conditional, §§ 165–168 . . . . .	116
Imperative, §§ 169, 170 . . . . .	118
Difficulties of the subjunctive, §§ 171–175 . . . . .	119
Infinitive, §§ 176–178 . . . . .	121
Participles, §§ 179, 180 . . . . .	122
Impersonal verbs, §§ 181–186 . . . . .	123

## CHAPTER VIII

## UNINFLECTED PARTS OF SPEECH

## Adverbs

Position, § 187 . . . . .	125
Derivation, §§ 188–190; comparison, § 191 . . . . .	126

	PAGE
<b>Non, oui, si, §§ 192-195; ne, §§ 196-198 . . . . .</b>	<b>127</b>
<b>The prefix au, § 199; davantage, § 200; only, § 201 . . . .</b>	<b>131</b>
<b>Prepositions</b>	
<b>À, §§ 202-206 . . . . .</b>	<b>132</b>
<b>Avant, devant, § 207; avec, § 208 . . . . .</b>	<b>134</b>
<b>Chez, § 209; dans, en, § 210 . . . . .</b>	<b>135</b>
<b>De, §§ 211-216 . . . . .</b>	<b>136</b>
<b>Envers, vers, § 217 . . . . .</b>	<b>137</b>
<b>Pour, § 218; special uses of prepositions, § 219 . . . . .</b>	<b>138</b>
<b>Repetition of prepositions, § 220 . . . . .</b>	<b>139</b>
<b>Prepositional phrases, § 221 . . . . .</b>	<b>140</b>
<b>Conjunctions</b>	
<b>Conjunctions requiring the subjunctive, § 222 . . . . .</b>	<b>140</b>
<b>Ni, § 223; quand and lorsque, § 224 . . . . .</b>	<b>141</b>
<b>Tandis que, pendant que, § 225; depuis que, puisque, § 226</b>	<b>141</b>
<b>Distinction between conjunctions and prepositions, § 227</b>	<b>142</b>
<b>Que, §§ 228, 229 . . . . .</b>	<b>142</b>
<b>Interjections, § 230 . . . . .</b>	<b>142</b>
<b>Comme, comment, § 231 . . . . .</b>	<b>143</b>
<b>Abbreviations, § 232 . . . . .</b>	<b>143</b>

## TEXTS AND EXERCISES

<b>Selections from French history (adapted from Lavissee)</b>	
<b>I. Jeanne d'Arc. (Articles and partitives) . . . . .</b>	<b>147</b>
<b>II. Les trois États. (Possessives and demonstratives) . . . .</b>	<b>150</b>
<b>III. François Premier. (Interrogatives and comparatives) . . . . .</b>	<b>152</b>
<b>IV. Henri Quatre. (Disjunctive personals and relatives) . . . . .</b>	<b>154</b>
<b>V. Louis Quatorze. (Two objective personal pronouns — past participles) . . . . .</b>	<b>156</b>
<b>VI. Louis Quinze. (Future and conditional) . . . . .</b>	<b>159</b>
<b>VII. La Révolution. (Subjunctive mode) . . . . .</b>	<b>162</b>
<b>VIII. Napoléon. (Subjunctives and infinitives) . . . . .</b>	<b>164</b>
<b>Noiraud . . . . .</b>	<b>168</b>
<b>Exercises based on Noiraud . . . . .</b>	<b>176</b>

# CONTENTS

xi

PAGE

<b>La dernière Classe</b> . . . . .	183
Exercises based on <b>La dernière Classe</b> (especially for the subjunctive) . . . . .	188
<b>ESSENTIAL VERB-FORMS</b> . . . . .	193
<b>INDEX TO IRREGULAR VERBS</b> . . . . .	198
<b>SYNOPSIS OF INFLECTED FORMS</b> . . . . .	201
<b>FRENCH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY</b> . . . . .	203
<b>ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY</b> . . . . .	240
<b>INDEX</b> . . . . .	263



# FRENCH GRAMMAR

## INTRODUCTION

### I.—THE PARTS OF SPEECH

1. Language, like thought, deals with things and acts.  
Hence words are:

I. Thing-words, or substantives,

NOUNS

Les noms

(a) Their substitutes,

PRONOUNS

Les pronoms

(b) Their modifiers,

ADJECTIVES

Les adjectifs

(c) Their link-words,  
which introduce  
them,

PREPOSITIONS

Les prépositions

II. Act-words, or words  
that predicate,

VERBS

Les verbes

(a) Their modifiers,

ADVERBS

Les adverbes

(b) Their link-words,  
which introduce  
them,

CONJUNCTIONS

Les conjonctions

The adjectives *a*, *an*, and  
*the* have the special name

ARTICLES

Les articles

Certain cries, independent  
of the sentence structure,  
expressing feeling  
rather than thought, are  
called

INTERJECTIONS

Les interjections

Adverbs are used also to modify adjectives or other adverbs.

Conjunctions are used to connect any two words or word-groups that have the same syntax (construction), as such expressions always imply two coordinate clauses: *John and Henry came* implies *John came and Henry came*.

To know what part of speech a word is, ask what it does, or what its "function" is, in the sentence.

## II. — LETTERS AND THEIR SOUNDS

2. The French names for the letters of the alphabet are:

a	a	h	ache	o	o	u	u
b	bé	i	i	p	pé	v	vé
c	cé	j	ji	q	ku	w	double vé
d	dé	k	ka	r	erre	x	iks
e	é (e)	l	elle	s	esse	y	i grec
f	effe	m	emme	t	té	z	zède
g	gé	n	enne				

3. Six of these represent vowel sounds, the relation of which to one another and to the nearest English sounds appears from the following table, in which letters at the top represent sounds made with the lower jaw up, hence the mouth nearly closed; the lower the letter, the lower the jaw, hence the wider the mouth opening.

Letters at the left represent sounds articulated at the front of the mouth; those at the right represent back vowels, i.e. vowels made with the highest part of the tongue at the back of the mouth.

The vowel triangle on the opposite page gives the typical vowel sounds of French, with diagrams indicating lip outlines, round for back vowels, elongated for front vowels.

## FRONT VOWELS

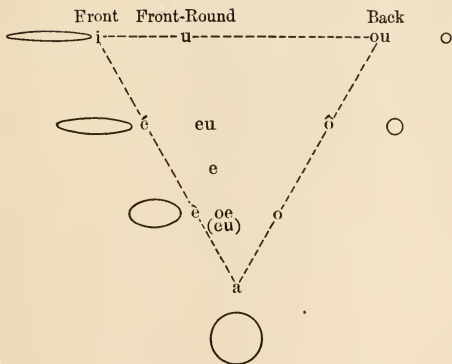
Lip-corners drawn  
back.

## FRONT-ROUND VOWELS

Lips rounded and pushed forward, "puckered."

## BACK VOWELS

i (y) <i>pire</i> <i>ee E. peer</i>	u <i>pur</i> ( <i>E. ee</i> with lips rounded as for whistling)	ou <i>pour</i> <i>oo E. poor</i>
é <i>bébé</i> <i>a E. baby</i>	eu <i>peu</i> (Lips close) <i>ur, er E. further</i>	ô <i>côte, peau</i> <i>o E. cone</i>
è <i>mène</i> <i>e E. men</i>	e <i>le</i> <i>e E. the boy</i>	o <i>offrir</i> <sup>1</sup> <i>o E. not</i>
	<i>e E. there</i>	<i>ur E. cur</i> <i>o E. north</i>
è <i>père</i> <i>a E. pat</i>	œ ( <i>eu</i> ) <i>cœur</i> (Lips open) <i>a papa</i>	o <i>mort, Maure</i> <i>â pâte</i> <i>a E. far</i>
	<i>a patte</i>	



<sup>1</sup> Perhaps the nearest English equivalent is the sound often heard in *obey* or *wholly*, when the *o* is not given the long close sound of *o* in *holy*, but is spoken short and somewhat open.

4. As there are more sounds than letters, a sound is sometimes represented by a combination of two or more letters, as **eu**, **ou**, **œu**. Other combinations are **au**=**eau**=**ô**, **la peau**; **ai**=**é** or **è**, **allai**, **allais**; **ei**=**è**, **la reine**.

A letter may be made to represent different sounds by writing over it diacritics called *accents*. Thus the *acute accent* (**accent aigu**) shows **é** to be pronounced with the mouth nearly closed, as in **bébé**; the *grave accent* (**accent grave**) shows **è** to be pronounced with the mouth rather widely open, as in **mène**, **mère**; the *circumflex accent* (**accent circonflexe**) generally shows a letter to be long, as in **pâte**. Notice that *open* and *close* refer to mouth opening, while *long* and *short* refer to the time the sound is prolonged.

5. The vowels of a group shade insensibly into one another. Thus the **e** sounds shade from the open **è** of **père**, through **bête**, **mène**, **flétrir**, to the close stressed **é** of **bébé**. Stress and lengthening intensify the character of a vowel, making open vowels more open and close vowels closer. **ê** is generally long and open, while **â**, **î**, **ô**, and **eû** are generally long and close.

The lips are rounded or "puckered" for the back and mid-vowels, except **a**, and are pushed farther and farther forward as the mouth closes; in the front vowels, the corners of the mouth are drawn back more and more as the mouth closes.

6. The muscles are tenser and their action prompter and more vigorous for French than for English vowels; especially the close vowels, **i**, **u**, **ou**, and **é**, should have this muscle-tension, or "narrowness."



7. English long vowels often end in a glide or “vanish” caused by closing the mouth while the sound continues. Thus English *ā* ends in an *ee* sound, and English *ō* in an *oo* sound. In French, such a glide is bad, and the utmost care must be taken to avoid any change in quality during the continuance of a vowel.

8. English has no sound like that of French *u*. This sound has the lip position of French *ou*, and the tongue and teeth in position for pronouncing French *i*. To make it, put the lips into the French *ou* position (close, as if for whistling) and without moving them try to pronounce French *i*.

9. An *e* having no written accent and coming at the end of a syllable is called *e mute* (*e muet*). It usually has the obscure sound given in rapid speech to the vowel of English *the*, as *the boy*, and often seems to vanish entirely, its syllable sounding like a part of the preceding syllable. A preceding consonant has distinct utterance.

10. *y* between two vowels is pronounced like French *i-i*, *paya* being pronounced *pai-ia* = *pè-ia*.

11. *oi* is a diphthong and is pronounced like French *oua*; *moi* is pronounced *moua*; *toi*, *toua*; the stress coming on the *a*, and the *ou* short and semi-consonant, like a *w*. English *mwah*, *twah*, with short vowels.

12. Whenever possible, a syllable will begin with a single consonant or with a consonant followed by an *h*, *l*, *n*, or *r* with which the consonant blends in pronunciation: *a-ni-mal*, *mour-rai*, *per-du*, *res-té*, *ta-bleau*, *a-chat*, *pro-phète*, *a-gré-able*, *a-gneau*, *Sei-gneur*.

In certain compound words, consonant groups occur that contain an *s* followed by one or more consonants. Usage is not uniform in dividing these words. We find **con-spirer** and **cons-pirer**, **in-struction** and **ins-truction**, **de-scription** and **des-cription**, **ob-scurcir** and **obs-curcir**, **in-spirer** and **trans-pirer**, **abs-tenir** and **ob-stiné**, **circonspect** and **circons-pection**, **trans-fuge** and **atmo-sphère**. Some printers follow the etymology, others the sound of the word. In writing, the *s* seems to go with the preceding syllable in a majority of cases, but in pronouncing it will be spoken with the syllable following.

**x** is always written with the preceding vowel, **ex-act**; **lh** is divided in writing, **mal-heur**, but blended in speaking, pronounce **ma-leur**. The dieresis (**tréma**) indicates that its vowel begins a new syllable, **haïr**, **naïf**; or, if used over mute *e*, that a preceding *u* has its proper sound, **aiguë**, **ambiguë**, as distinguished from **intrigue**, **figue**, etc.

**13.** At the end of a syllable a consonant or group of consonants, except **c**, **f**, **l**, and **r**, is generally silent, **piéd**, **trop**, **vous**, **dit**, **prix**, **pends**, **lac**, **bref**, **mil**, **fer**.

**14.** French syllables must be spoken with smooth, even stress, the only ones slurred and indistinct being those whose vowel is mute *e*. The last pronounced syllable of a word-group generally has increased stress, and is often lengthened.

### EXERCISE I

Let the pupil pronounce after the teacher:

Car, part; cave, lave, alpe, barbe, dalle, nappe, carafe, rapace.  
Poire, boire, noir, soir, noise, toise, boive, boîte, soif, poil, voile,  
froide, moine, foi, loi, roi, toi, moi, émoi.

Mère, père, frère, amer, ver, claire, taire; bête, tête, baisse, laisse, caisse, mêle, chaîne, seize, pèse, baie, claie, taie, vrai; fève, grève, neige; belle, mène, cède, peine, aime; leste, celte, bec, dette, bref, messe, cesse.

Allé, aller, allez, allai, cédé, gai, aimé, blé, frappé, bébé.

Liste, dite, pipe, cycle, file, mille, figue, ligue, tigre; ami, fini, grive, cire, sire, dire, grise, mise, vise, lie, mie, manie.

Pâte, tasse, espace, pâle, fable, sable, flamme, base, vase, blâme, mois, le bois, poids, trois, noix, poix.

Or, dore, Maure, corde, force, golfe, froc, hotte, dot, cotte, robe, notre, colle, Paul, bonne, album, mauvais, restaurant.

Côte, ôte, nôtre, saute, aune, baume, zone, atome, fauve, dôme, fosse, grosse, mauve, sauve, close, dose, rose, cause, pause, étau, eau, peau, seau, beau, aux, baux.

Courte, lourde, bouc, broute, doute, coupe, touffe, mousse, douce, pousse, boule, coule, coude, couve, prouve, cou, fou, trou; boue, loue, cloue, amour, four, tour, bourre, blouse, douze.

Cœur, beurre, heure, sœur, peur, fleur; heurte, meurtre, peuple, neuf, veuf, œuf, bœuf, aveugle.

Bleu, feu, lieu, vœu, creuse, Meuse, berceuse, meute, neutre, bleus, vœux, veux, veut, affreux, deux, creux, œufs, bœufs, feux.

Buste, juste, culte, pulpe, ture, urne, due, nuque, brut, sucre, hutte, butte, dupe, russe, suce, nul, rude, fugue, tube, dune, lune, fume; nu, cru, rue, nue, use, buse, amuse, ruse, dure, pure, mûre, sûre.

**15.** If, while pronouncing the open vowels, â, o, è, œ, we allow part of the air from the lungs to pass out by the nose, we get four sounds called *nasal vowels*. Nasal vowels are indicated by an **n** or **m**, not doubled, following a vowel in the same syllable, as, **content**, **dans**, **hum-ble**; but there is no nasal vowel in **a-ni-mal**, **in-no-ver**. The **m** or **n** is itself never to be pronounced, the sound of the vowel stopping before the mouth closes. The **tilde**, as in **ã**, **õ**, is often used to show that the vowel under it is

to be made nasal. Compounds of **en**, also **ennui** and its derivatives, have the nasal vowel of French **en** even though **m** or **n** is double, as **emmener**, **ennoblir**, **ennui**.

Nasal **â** (**ā**) is written **am**, **an**, **em**, **en**. It is a little less open than **â**, approaching **o**: **champ**, **an**, **sembler**, **tenter**.

Nasal **o** (**ɔ**) is written **om**, **on**: **nom**, **ton**.

Nasal **œ** (**œ̃**) is written **um**, **un**: **parfum**, **lundi**.

Nasal **ê** (**ɛ̃**) is written **im**, **in**, **ym**, **yn**: **simple**, **fin**, **nymphé**. It is also written **en** after **i**, **y**, or **é**, in words like **bien**, **mien**, **rien**, **vient**, **tiendrai**, **Troyen**, **Européen**, **lycéen**; likewise in a few foreign words, as **examen**, **Benjamin**.

To learn to make the nasal vowels well, with no trace of a consonant sound at the end, practise prolonging them as long as the breath holds out, keeping the sound steady, and stopping it before the mouth begins to close.

**16.** Accurate pronunciation of the vowels is the first essential for speaking French. Most of the consonants are so nearly like the English sounds represented by the same characters, that the substitution of the English sounds does not make what we say unintelligible to a Frenchman. The following points, however, require especial attention.

Enunciation must be vigorous, muscle-action energetic, lips and tongue active, sounds clear-cut and definite.

Linguo-dentals, that is, tongue-teeth sounds, have the tip of the tongue farther forward than in English. For **t**, **d**, **l**, **n**, in English, the tongue-tip usually touches the palate; in French it should press against the back of the upper teeth.

In many words, **il** or **ill** has a sound resembling that of English **y**. This is called *liquid l* (1 **mouillée**). Pro-

nounce in this way *la fille, la feuille, la paille, la muraille, une abeille, une bouteille, une corbeille, meilleur, vieille, gentille, une aiguille, une coquille, une cuiller, juillet, Castille, un œil, le seuil, le travail, un fauteuil, une grenouille, je chatouille.*

A sound called *liquid n* (*n mouillée*) is written **gn**. It is similar to *ni* or *ny* in English words like *onion, banyan*, but the tip of the tongue is on the bottom of the mouth against the lower teeth. Pronounce in this way *digne, ignorant, magnifique, une ligne, Agnès, ignoble, un rognon, un compagnon, une compagne, la campagne, l'Allemagne, je soigne, je règne, je peigne, etc.*

**b** sounds like *p* before **s** or **t**, as, *absurde, l'abstinence, j'observe, j'obtiens, etc.*

**c** and **g** before front vowels (**e, i, y**) have the "soft" sounds like *s* in *case* and *s* in *measure*, respectively; before back vowels (**a, o, u**) they sound respectively like *k* in *kick* and *g* in *go*. The cedilla is written under a **c** which is to have the soft sound before **a, o, or u**, as, *plaçant, nous forçons, il reçut.*

**ch** is similar to English *sh* in *show*, but the lips protrude more and the sound is less explosive. Pronounce *Charles chante une chanson en cherchant son capuchon.*

**ch** in a few words of Greek origin sounds like *k*, as *Christ, chaos.*

**j**, always, and **g**, before a front vowel (**e, i, y**), sound like *s* in *measure* or *z* in *azure*, but the lips protrude more than in English. Pronounce *je juge que le jeune Georges joue avec la jolie Jeanne.*

**h** is not sounded, but sometimes keeps words from running together in pronunciation. It is then called *aspirate* and is treated as a consonant, as in *la hache, la haine, les halles, la harpe, des haricots, du héros, la*

honte, ce homard, ce hibou, de grands hêtres, Jean est en haut.

**qu** sounds like **k**: **qui**, **que**; very rarely like **kou**, as in **équateur**, etc.

**r**, when pronounced, must either be uvular or clearly trilled with tongue-tip well forward.

**s** generally sounds as in *say*, but when between two vowels it has the sound of *z* in *zone*. Pronounce **c'est six sous, ces six saucissons-ci; Louise a plusieurs roses qu'elle a mises dans un vase**.

**ti** has the sound of **si** in many words where corresponding English words usually have the sound of *sh* or *s*, as, **essentiel, ambitieux, un pétiole, une condition, la nation, Égyptien, le Titien, une portion, l'aristocratie, la diplomatie, l'inertie, je balbutie**, etc.

**x** is generally pronounced like **ks**: **fixer, luxe**; but the initial syllable **ex** preceding a vowel sounds like **egz**: **exemple, exister**. In **soixante, Bruxelles, Aix-la-Chapelle**, etc., **x** sounds like **ss**; and in **deuxième, dixième**, etc., it sounds like **z**.

**17.** Words that belong closely together in sense are often run together in pronunciation and sound like a single word. A final consonant is then pronounced with an initial vowel in the next word of the group. This is called *liaison*, "linking," as in **des amis, cet animal**. In *liaison* the sonants (voiced letters) **d** and **g** become surds (unvoiced) and sound like **t** and **k**, respectively, **grand arbre, sang impur**; while the surds **f** and **x** become sonant, and sound respectively like **v** and **z**, **neuf ans, dix élèves**. When final **n** of a nasal vowel is carried over, the vowel loses its nasality wholly or in part, **mon ami**. Unless *aspirate*, initial **h** does not prevent *liaison*.

For further information about pronouncing French, the reader is referred to some special book on pronunciation, among the best being: *An Introduction to the Pronunciation of French*, by Philip Hudson Churchman, to be had at the Harvard Coöperative, Cambridge, Mass.; *Précis de Prononciation Française*, by Rousselot and Laclotte, published in Paris by H. Welter; *A Primer of French Pronunciation*, by John E. Matzke, New York, Henry Holt and Company.

## EXERCISE II

Pronounce after the teacher:

En, dans, quand, sans, tant, cent, Caen, Jean, une dent, le temple, le camp, un franc, un membre, la patience, la science, une lampe, je rends, je vends, je tente, etc. \*

Hein, vin, vain, américain, simple, Reims, juin, loin, la faim, le chien, la main, le pain, l'index, le lin, le foin, le pin, je tiens, je pince, je vins, etc.

Un emprunt, un lundi, chacun, quelqu'un, brun, humble, j'emprunte, etc.

On, bon, ton, mon, le lion, sont, font, plomb, l'ombre, la bonté, le jonc, un pigeon, je romps, je compte, je fonds, je conte, etc.

**18.** In representing sounds by printed characters, it is unfortunate that ordinary alphabets do not always use the same character for a given sound, nor does a given character always represent the same sound. This causes confusion, and in order to show more precisely and certainly how words are pronounced, phonetic alphabets have been devised in which each character has always approximately the same sound. The characters of one such alphabet, with the sound of each character, are shown in the following table. This alphabet will be used to show the pronunciation of words and word-groups that might otherwise be doubtful, and students who learn to use it will find it helpful both in learning French and in other language work.

ALPHABET OF THE  
INTERNATIONAL PHONETIC ASSOCIATION  
(Association Phonétique Internationale)

Each sign has the value of the italicized letter or letters in the word next to which it stands.

<b>a</b> <i>patte</i>	<b>l</b> <i>la</i>	<b>ø</b> <i>vœu</i>
<b>ɑ</b> <i>pâte</i>	<b>m</b> <i>ma</i>	<b>œ</b> <i>leur</i>
<b>b</b> <i>bébé</i>	<b>n</b> <i>nonne</i>	<b>ɑ̃</b> <i>dans</i>
<b>k</b> <i>col (quand)</i>	<b>o</b> <i>peau (pot)</i>	<b>ɛ̃</b> <i>vin</i>
<b>d</b> <i>dans</i>	<b>ɔ</b> <i>poche</i>	<b>ɔ̃</b> <i>bon</i>
<b>e</b> <i>allé</i>	<b>p</b> <i>pas</i>	<b>œ̃</b> <i>un</i>
<b>ɛ</b> <i>vêts</i>	<b>r</b> <i>rat</i>	<b>j</b> <i>yeux</i>
<b>ə</b> <i>me</i>	<b>s</b> <i>ceux (seul)</i>	<b>w</b> <i>oui</i>
<b>f</b> <i>fou</i>	<b>t</b> <i>tête</i>	<b>ɥ</b> <i>lui</i>
<b>g</b> <i>gâter</i>	<b>y</b> <i>vu</i>	<b>ʃ</b> <i>chat</i>
<b>h</b> <i>hardi</i>	<b>v</b> <i>vous</i>	<b>ɲ</b> <i>digne</i>
<b>i</b> <i>si</i>	<b>z</b> <i>zèbre (rose)</i>	<b>:</b> <i>sign of length</i>
<b>ʒ</b> <i>git (jour)</i>	<b>u</b> <i>vous</i>	



## CHAPTER I

### SUBSTANTIVES AND THEIR MOST FREQUENT SUBORDINATES

**19. Definite Nouns — Masculine and Feminine.** Substantives that indicate a particular object as distinguished from others of the same class are called *definite*. When not otherwise determined, each such substantive is preceded by the *definite article* (English *the*).

*Le crayon est petit.*  
The pencil is small

*La plume est petite.*  
The pen small

*Le monsieur est grand, il*  
gentleman tall he

*La dame est grande, elle*  
lady she

*n'est pas petit.*  
is not

*n'est pas petite.*

*Le petit garçon est joli, il*  
boy pretty

*La petite fille est jolie, elle*  
girl

*n'est pas laid.*  
homely

*n'est pas laide.*

Some definite nouns are preceded by *le*. These nouns are called *masculine*, as, *le crayon, le monsieur*.

Other definite nouns are preceded by *la*. These nouns are called *feminine*, as, *la plume, la dame*.

**20.** *Il* is the substitute for a masculine singular noun used as subject of a verb.

*Elle* is the substitute for a feminine singular noun used as subject of a verb.

**21.** An adjective that modifies a feminine singular noun must generally end in *e*. Usually this *e* is added to the masculine singular, which is the only form commonly given in vocabularies.

*Pronounce:* læ krɛjɔ̃ ɛ pəti. læ plym ɛ pəti. læ mæsʒø ɛ grɑ̃, il nɛ pa pəti. læ dam ɛ grɑ̃d, el nɛ pa pəti. læ pəti ɡarsø ɛ ʒoli, il nɛ pa le. læ pəti fi ɛ ʒoli, el nɛ pa leð.

## EXERCISE III

Write the feminine singular of

noir, gris, bleu, vert, brun, ouvert, fermé, poli, impoli, rond, carré, gai, fort, méchant.

Learn from the vocabulary the sound and meaning of new words.

Fill the blanks with suitable adjectives and pronouns:

Henri est — et —. Marie est — et —.

Le livre est —, — n'est pas —.

La plume est —, — n'est pas —.

Write similar sentences with the following nouns:

le crayon, la salle, le bureau, le papier, le pupitre, la chaise, le canif, la porte, la fenêtre, le tableau.

**22. Paul est jeune.**

**Marie est jeune.**

If a masculine singular adjective ends in *e*, its feminine is the same as the masculine.

**23. Le melon est gros.**

**La pomme est grosse.**

**Le papier est blanc.**

**La craie est blanche.**

**Louis est heureux.**

**Louise est heureuse.**

**Le chemin est long.**

**La rue est longue.**

**Le pantalon est neuf.**

**La veste est neuve.**

Many adjectives double or modify the final consonant before adding *e* to form the feminine.

## EXERCISE IV

Write the feminine,

(a) Doubling the final consonant of

cruel, tel, quel, pareil, vermeil, gentil, nul; bon, ancien, chrétien; bas, gras, las, gros, épais, net, sot.

*Pronounce:* pəl ɛ ʒœn. mari ɛ ʒœn.

lə mælɔ̃ ɛ gro. la pəm ɛ grois. la papje ɛ blɑ̃. la kre ɛ blɑ̃ʃ. lwi et œro. lwiʒ et œrøz. lə ʃœmɛ ɛ lɔ̃. la ry ɛ lɔ̃g. lə pɑ̃talɔ̃ ɛ nœf. la vest ɛ nœv.

(b) Softening *f* to *v* in

actif, attentif, vif, neuf.

(c) Changing *x* to *s* in

heureux, envieux, honteux, joyeux, généreux, paresseux, curieux, dangereux, glorieux, odieux, jaloux.

What final consonants sometimes double? How does *x* change? *f*?

## SPECIAL FORMS BEFORE VOWELS

**24.** *L'arbre est haut. L'encre est noire. L'oiseau est petit. L'eau n'est pas claire.*

Before a vowel sound, monosyllables ending in mute *e*, also *la*, cut out the final vowel and replace it by an apostrophe. This is called *elision*. *si, if*, elides *i* before *il* or *ils* (*s'il, s'ils*); and some compounds of *que* show elision with particular words as *quelqu'un, lorsqu'elle*.

**25.** *Ce fruit est une pomme; cet arbre est un pommier; cette pomme est rouge.*

*Quel beau dahlia! Quel bel œillet! Quelle belle rose!*

Five common adjectives have two forms of the masculine singular, one ending in a vowel, for use before a consonant, and an older form, ending in a consonant, still used before a vowel; the principle being that a succession of vowel sounds (called *hiatus*) is unpleasant. The feminine comes from the second form, and doubles the final consonant. Write the feminine of these adjectives, which are: *ce, cet; beau, bel; nouveau, nouvel; fou, fol; mou, mol*.

---

*Pronounce:* l arbr ɛ o. l ɑ:kr ɛ nwɑ:r. l wazo ɛ pɑ:ti. l o nɛ pa klɛ:r.  
sə frui ɛt yn pɑ:m; sɛt arbr ɛt œ pɑ:mje; sɛt pɑ:m ɛ ru:ʒ. kɛl bo  
dalja! kɛl bɛl œje! kɛl bɛl ro:z!

**Ce vieux livre; ce vieil arbre; cette vieille dame.**

**Vieux** usually becomes **vieil** before a vowel. The feminine is **vieille**.

### EXERCISE V

Fill blanks with adjectives used in same sentence:

Le petit Henri est bon, studieux, et attentif; la — Henriette est —, —, et —.

Le long mur blanc est bas et épais; la — muraille — est — et —.

Paul est jeune, sage, vif, fort, et heureux; Marie est —, —, —, —, et —.

Before each noun in the next line, write each of the five adjectives given after the nouns:

Jardin, étoile, animal, maison, fontaine. Ce, quel, beau, nouveau, vieux.

### PLURALS

**26.** Le jardin est grand, il n'est pas petit; *les jardins sont grands, ils ne sont pas petits.*

La fenêtre est ouverte, elle n'est pas fermée; *les fenêtres sont ouvertes, elles ne sont pas fermées.*

Most nouns, pronouns, and adjectives form their plural by adding **s** to the singular. Every pronoun or adjective that relates to a plural noun must itself be plural in form.

**27.** **Les** is the plural of **la** and of **l'**, as well as of **le**.

*Pronounce:* sə vjø livr; sə vjej arbr; set vjej dam.

lə pəti ʔri ɛ bɔ̃, stydjø, ɛ atətif; la pətit ʔriet ɛ bən, stydjo:z, ɛ atəti:v. lə lɔ̃ myʁ blā ɛ baz ɛ epɛ; la lɔ̃:g myʁa:j blā:ʃ ɛ bas ɛ epɛs. pəl ɛ ʒœn, sa:ʒ, vif, fɔʁ, ɛ œrø; mari ɛ ʒœn, sa:ʒ, vi:v, fɔʁt, ɛ œro:z.

lə ʒardɛ ɛ grā, il nɛ pa pəti; le ʒardɛ sɔ̃ grā, il nɔ̃ sɔ̃ pa pəti. la fənɛ:tr ɛt uvert, ɛl nɛ pa fɛrme; le fənɛ:tr sɔ̃t uvert, ɛl nɔ̃ sɔ̃ pa fɛrme.

## EXERCISE VI

Make the following sentences plural:

Le jeune garçon est actif, il n'est pas sot.  
 Le petit livre est fermé, il n'est pas ouvert.  
 Le joli mouchoir est blanc, il n'est pas noir.  
 L'arbre vert est grand, il n'est pas petit.

Substitute *filles* for *garçon*, *portes* for *livre*, *robes* for *mouchoir*, *maisons* for *arbre*, and rewrite the sentences in both singular and plural forms.

28. Le Français est courtois mais impétueux. Les Français sont *courtois* mais *impétueux*.

Le nouveau cheval est beau. Les nouveaux chevaux sont *beaux*.

Nouns and adjectives ending in **s**, **x**, or **z** remain unchanged in the plural.

Nouns ending in **au** or **eu**, and adjectives ending in **au** (also **hébreu**), add **x** instead of **s** to form the plural.

Most nouns and many adjectives ending in **al** change **l** to **u** and then add **x** to form the plural. A few nouns ending in **ail** have a similar plural in **aux**, as **travail**, **travaux**. Learn: **un œil**, *an eye*, plural, **des yeux**; **le ciel**, *sky, heaven*, plural, **les cieux**.

## EXERCISE VII

Write the plural of

Loyal, doux, faux, légal, égal, gris, brutal, spécial.

Le cardinal, le château, le bras, le nez, ce jeu, la voix.

Le brave général, ce vieux bateau, l'œil fermé, ce beau travail, le fils paresseux, ce gâteau frais.

*Pronounce:* la ʒœn ɡarsø et aktif, il ne pa so. la pøti livr ε ferme, il ne paz uver. la ʒøli muʃwair ε blā, il ne pa nwair. l arbr veir ε grā, il ne pa pøti. la ʒœn fi:j et aktif, el ne pa sət. la pøtit port ε ferme, el ne paz uvert. la ʒøli røb ε blā:ʃ, el ne pa nwair. la mezø vørt ε grā:d, el ne pa pøtit.

la frāse ε kurtwa mez ēpetqø. le frāse sø kurtwa mez ēpetqø. la nuvo ʃəval ε bo. le nuvo ʃəvo sø bo.

CONTRACTED FORMS. THE PRONOUN *CE*

**29.** *Ce livre est (belongs) au professeur. Ces livres sont aux professeurs.*

*C'est le livre du professeur. Ce sont les livres des professeurs.*

With **le** or **les**, forms of the definite article, a preposition **à** or **de** blends into a single word, the **l** of the article changing to **u** or disappearing. **à** and **le** become **au**; **à** and **les** give **aux**; **de** and **le** become **du**; **de** and **les** give **des**.

**30.** Notice that the *adjective* **ce** has a plural **ces**, but the *pronoun* **ce** remains unchanged in the plural.

## EXERCISE VIII

From the following ten nouns make forty combinations, by using both singular and plural and prefixing to each first **à** and then **de**, e.g. **le livre, au livre, du livre, aux livres, des livres**.

le général, la femme, l'oncle, la tante, le frère, l'animal, la vache, le cheval, l'ami, le crayon.

**31.** *Ces beaux hommes sont fous. Ces belles dames sont folles.*

The plural of the adjective **ce** is **ces** for both genders. The other adjectives with double forms in the masculine singular have in the masculine plural **beaux, nouveaux, fous, mous, vieux**; the feminine plural coming regularly from the feminine singular by adding **s**.

---

*Pronounce:* sə li:vɹ et ɔ pɹɛfɛsœ:r.   se li:vɹ sɔt ɔ pɹɛfɛsœ:r.   se lə li:vɹ dy pɹɛfɛsœ:r.   sə sɔ le li:vɹ de pɹɛfɛsœ:r.  
 se boz ɔm sɔ fu.   se bel dam sɔ fol.

## POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

**32.** Voilà *mon père, ma mère, mes frères, et mes sœurs!*  
Voici *notre oncle, notre tante, nos cousins, et nos cousines!*

Possessive adjectives are peculiar in form.

SINGULAR		PLURAL
Masculine, and Feminine before a Vowel Sound.	Feminine before a Consonant Sound.	For Both Genders.
<b>mon</b>	<b>ma</b>	<b>mes</b>
<b>ton</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>tes</b>
<b>son</b>	<b>sa</b>	<b>ses</b>
<div style="text-align: center;"> <span style="font-size: 1.5em;">}</span>  <b>notre</b>  <b>votre</b>  <b>leur</b> </div>		<b>nos</b>
		<b>vos</b>
		<b>leurs</b>

## EXERCISE IX

(a) Before each of the following nouns write six possessive adjectives:

cousin, cousine; ami, amie; crayon, plume; jardin, maison; oncle, orange.

(b) Make the nouns plural, and then write before each six possessive adjectives.

(c) Put the following sentences into the plural:

Ce fameux général est fort et heureux.

Ce bel animal blanc est bon et doux (*feminine, douce*).

Son pauvre oncle est faible, vieux, et boiteux.

Notre ami est brave, loyal, et généreux.

*Pronounce:* vwala mō pe:r, ma me:r, me frēr, e me sœ:r! vwasi nōtr ô:kl, nōtr tūt, no kuzē, e no kuzim!

mō	ma	me,	nōtr	no.
tō	ta	te,	vōtr	vo.
sō	sa	sē,	lœr	lœr.

sō famø general e fō:r e cœrø; set famø:z fam e fōrt e cœrø:z; se famø genero sō fō:rz e cœrø; se famø:z fam sō fōrtz e cœrø:z. sō bel animal blā[k] e bō e du; set bel ſe:vr blā:ſ e bōn e dʊs. sō po:vr ô:kl e fe:bl, vjə, e bwatø; sa po:vr tūt e fe:bl, vje:j, e bwatø:z. nōtr ami e bra:v, lwajal, e ženerø; nōtr ami e bra:v, lwajal, e generø:z.

Substitute for **général, femme**; for **animal, chèvre**; for **oncle, tante**; for **ami, amie**; and write the sentences in both singular and plural.

### INDEFINITE AND PARTITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

**33.** Voilà *un livre, une plume, et des crayons*; est-ce le livre, la plume, et les crayons que vous cherchez? *There is a book, a pen, and some pencils; are they the book, the pen, and the pencils which you are seeking?*

Sur la table il y a *du papier, de la craie, de l'encre, des règles, de bons crayons, et beaucoup de plumes, mais il n'y a pas de livres*. *On the table there are paper, chalk, ink, rulers, good pencils, and many pens, but there are no books.*

Besides definite nouns, we have indefinite nouns and partitive nouns.

**34.** Indefinite nouns apply to any one of a class of objects, as distinguished from definite nouns, which apply to a particular one of those objects. Indefinite nouns are commonly preceded in English by *a (an)*, and in French by **un** (masculine) or **une** (feminine). As the plural of the indefinite article, we often use *some* in English, and regularly have **des** in French.

**35.** Partitive nouns express an undefined number or quantity of the objects or substance specified, and are commonly preceded in English by *some*, and in French by words that literally mean *of the*, as *du courage, de la patience, des enfants*.

**Nous avons acheté (quelques-uns) des livres (qui existent).**  
*We have bought some (of the) books (which exist)*

*Pronounce: vvala œ li:vr, yn plym, e də krejō; es lə li:vr, la plym, e lə krejō kə vu ʃerʃe. syr la tabl ilja dy papje, də la kre, də l ɑ:kr, de re:gl, də bō krejō, e boku də plym, mez il nja pa də li:vr.*



Comparison of the preceding sentences leads us to think that the complete expression should mean *some of the*, but that English omits *of the*, and French omits *some*, the implied relative clause at the end being omitted in both languages.

**36.** The partitive adjective *some* is often omitted in English, but a French partitive noun must always have its "partitive article," composed of **de** and the definite article, except in the case of:

1. Partitives closely joined to a verb, as **avoir faim**, *to be hungry*; **avoir soif**, *to be thirsty*; **avoir peur**, *to be afraid*; **avoir besoin**, *to need*; **prendre garde**, *to take care*; **faire attention**, *to pay attention*.

2. Partitives introduced by the prepositions **sans** or **de** (and occasionally **avec** or **à**), as **du pain sans beurre**, *bread without butter*; **sans peur et sans reproche**, *without fear and without reproach*; **un morceau de pain**, *a piece of bread*; **une plume d'or**, *a gold pen*; **une tasse de café**, *a cup of coffee*; **plein de vin**, *full of wine*; **peu d'argent**, *little money*; **beaucoup de patience**, *much patience*; **assez de papier**, *paper enough*; **trop d'eau**, *too much water*; **tant de livres**, *so many books*; **autant de tableaux**, *as many pictures*; **pas de crayons**, *no pencils*; **plus de temps**, *no more time*; **il n'a guère d'amis**, *he has but few friends*; **je ne mange jamais de grenouilles**, *I never eat frogs*; **avec plaisir**, *with pleasure*; **avec joie**, *gladly*; **chapeau à plumes**, *plumed hat*.

Note especially the partitives connected by **de** with a noun, an adverb of negation (**pas**, **plus**, **guère**, **jamais**), or an adverb of quantity (**tant**, **beaucoup**, **trop**, **assez**, etc.). (See § 137, 2f.)

After **être**, however, an adverb of negation affects the

verb rather than a following predicate nominative, and the definite article is used: **ce n'est pas du vin**, *that is not wine*; **ce ne sont pas des fraises**, *those are not strawberries*. Compare with **je ne bois pas de vin**, *I drink no wine*; **il n'a pas de fraises**, *he has no strawberries*.

3. Partitives in an enumeration or series, where the repetition of an article would be tedious, as, **vin, bière, pain, beurre, fromage, viande, il avalait tout**, *he gobbled everything, wine, beer, bread, butter, cheese, meat*.

4. Partitives that follow the conjunctions **ni . . . ni**, *neither . . . nor*, or **soit . . . soit**, *either . . . or*: **soit peur, soit colère**, *either fear or anger*; **ni parents ni amis**, *neither relatives nor friends*.

37. When an adjective precedes the partitive noun, it is usual to omit the definite article: **de bon papier**, *good paper*; **de tels enfants**, *such children*; **de mauvais pain**, *bad bread*; but with adjective after the noun use the definite article, **du papier rouge**, *red paper*; **des enfants sages**, *good children*; **du pain sec**, *dry bread*.

## EXERCISE X

I. Change each of the following sentences:

By putting before each noun an adjective: **bon, beau, joli, grand**, etc. E.g. **Nous avons de bon papier**, etc.

By putting before each noun an adverb of quantity: **peu, assez, tant**, etc. E.g. **Je vois beaucoup de garçons**, etc.

By putting after each noun an adjective: **rouge, studieux, cassé, mûr**, etc. E.g. **Elle cherche des pommes rouges**, etc.

By using an adverb of negation: **pas, plus, guère, jamais**, etc. E.g. **Vous n'achetez jamais d'encre ni de livres**.

A negative sentence must have **ne** before the verb. The negative of **et** is **ni**.

1. Nous avons (*have*) du papier, de la craie, et des crayons.
2. Je vois (*see*) des garçons et des filles.
3. Elle cherche (*seeks*) des pommes et des oranges.
4. Vous achetez (*buy*) de l'encre et des livres.
5. Le petit Jean a (*has*) des balles, des billes, et des toupies.

## II. Translate the following expressions:

1. Paper, chalk, ink, and books; courage and patience; nuts, apples, and oranges; tea, coffee, milk, and water; tops and marbles; frogs and fishes; bread, butter, and cheese.

2. To be cold, to be hungry, to be thirsty, to be frightened, to take care, to pay attention.

3. Coffee without sugar; without money and without friends; a gold cup; full of water; a piece of cheese; a box of chalk.

4. No more money; no ink; little patience; wine enough; so much rain; too much snow; few books; much courage; many friends.

## CHAPTER II

### FUNDAMENTAL VERB-FORMS

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS, PRESENT INDICATIVE, AND IMPERATIVE

**38.** All forms of most French verbs may be derived from five *principal parts* or *primitive tenses*. These five principal parts are: (1) the infinitive, the form usually given in word-lists; (2) the present participle; (3) the past participle; (4) the first person singular of the present

---

*Pronounce:* nuz avō dy papje, de la krē, e de krejō. ʒə vwa de garsōz e de fij. el ʃerʃ de pəmz e dez ʔrū:ʒ. vuz aʃte də l'ū:kr e de livr. lə pəti ʒū a de bal, de bi:j, e de tupi.

indicative; and (5) the first person singular of the past definite. For sixteen common verbs these parts are:

INFINITIVE	PRESENT PART.	PAST PART.	PRES. IND.	PAST DEF.
<i>donner, give</i>	<i>donnant</i>	<i>donné</i>	<i>donne</i>	<i>donnai</i>
<i>finir, finish</i>	<i>finissant</i>	<i>fini</i>	<i>finis</i>	<i>finis</i>
<i>rompre, break</i>	<i>rompant</i>	<i>rompu</i>	<i>romps</i>	<i>rompis</i>
<i>avoir, have</i>	<i>ayant</i>	<i>eu</i>	<i>ai</i>	<i>eus</i>
<i>être, be</i>	<i>étant</i>	<i>été</i>	<i>suis</i>	<i>fus</i>
<i>aller, go</i>	<i>allant</i>	<i>allé</i>	<i>vais</i>	<i>allai</i>
<i>venir, come</i>	<i>venant</i>	<i>venu</i>	<i>viens</i>	<i>vins</i>
<i>dire, say</i>	<i>disant</i>	<i>dit</i>	<i>dis</i>	<i>dis</i>
<i>faire, do</i>	<i>faisant</i>	<i>fait</i>	<i>fais</i>	<i>fis</i>
<i>mettre, put</i>	<i>mettant</i>	<i>mis</i>	<i>mets</i>	<i>mis</i>
<i>prendre, take</i>	<i>prenant</i>	<i>pris</i>	<i>prends</i>	<i>pris</i>
<i>recevoir, receive</i>	<i>recevant</i>	<i>reçu</i>	<i>reçois</i>	<i>reçus</i>
<i>voir, see</i>	<i>voyant</i>	<i>vu</i>	<i>vois</i>	<i>vis</i>
<i>savoir, know</i>	<i>sachant</i>	<i>su</i>	<i>sais</i>	<i>sus</i>
<i>vouloir, wish</i>	<i>voulant</i>	<i>voulu</i>	<i>veux</i>	<i>voulus</i>
<i>pouvoir, be able</i>	<i>pouvant</i>	<i>pu</i>	<i>peux</i>	<i>pus</i>

**39.** Infinitive endings are **-er**, **-ir**, **-oir**, and **-re**. About nine tenths of all French verbs end in **-er**.

All present participles end in **-ant**.

The first singular present indicative ends

in **-e** (all **-er** verbs except **aller**; also a few **-ir** verbs),  
in **-s** (**aller**, most **-ir** and **-oir**, and all **-re** verbs), or  
in **-x** (**pouvoir**, **valoir**, **vouloir**).

**Avoir** (**ai**) is the only exception.

The first singular past definite ends in **-ai** for **-er** verbs, and in **-s** for all other verbs.

---

*Pronounce:* dāne, dānā, dāne, dān, dāne; finir, finisā, fini, fini, fini; rā:pr, rāpā, rāpy, rā:p, rāpi; avwair, ejā, y, e, y; ɛ:tr, etā, etc, sɔi, fy; ale, alā, ale, ve, ale; vānir, vānā, vāny, vjē, vē; di:r, dizā, di, di, di; fe:r, fəzā, fe, fe, fi; metr, metā, mi, me, mi; prā:dr, prānā, pri, prā, pri; rəsəvwair, rəsəvā, rəsy, rəswa, rəsy; vwair, vwajā, vy, vwa, vi; savwair, saʒā, sy, se, sy; vulwair, vulā, vuly, vø, vuly; puvwair, puvā, py, pø, py.

**40.** The part of a tense which changes to express differences in person or number is called the *ending*; the remaining portion is called the *stem* of the tense. The stems of **donner**, **finir**, and **rompre** are the same in all the principal parts, except that **finir** inserts the syllable *-iss-* in the present participle. A verb conjugated throughout like one of these is called *regular* or *weak*. Other verbs have one or more changes, usually in the stem, and are called *irregular* or *strong* verbs. Their principal parts must be learned with the utmost care.

### PRESENT INDICATIVE SINGULAR

**41.** When the first singular present indicative ends in *-e* the second person ends in *-es* and the third in *-e*.

When the first singular ends in *-s* or *-x* the second singular is like the first, and the third generally ends in *-t*; but this *-t* is omitted after final *c*, *d*, or *t* of the stem.

**42.** The personal pronouns used as subjects are **je**, *I*, **tu**, *you*, **il**, *he*, *it*, **elle**, *she*, *it*, **nous**, *we*, **vous**, *you*, **ils**, *elles*, *they*, *as*,

**je** donne, **tu** donnes, **il** donne, **elle** donne; **nous** donnons, **vous** donnez, **ils** donnent, **elles** donnent.

**je** romps, **tu** romps, **il** rompt, **elle** rompt; **nous** rompons, **vous** rompez, **ils** rompent, **elles** rompent.

### EXERCISE XI

Write the present indicative singular of the verbs in § 38, omitting **avoir**, **être**, and **aller**.

Write the principal parts and the present indicative singular of the regular verbs:

---

*Pronounce:* ʒə dən, ty dən, il dən, el dən; nu dənɔ̃, vu dənə, il dən, el dən. ʒə rɔ̃, ty rɔ̃, il rɔ̃, el rɔ̃; nu rɔ̃pɔ̃, vu rɔ̃pə, il rɔ̃:p, el rɔ̃:p.

regarder, *to watch*; trouver, *to find*; parler, *to speak*; aimer, *to love*; rougir, *to grow red*; pâlir, *to grow pale*; jaunir, *to grow yellow*; blanchir, *to grow white*; répondre, *to answer*; perdre, *to lose*; vendre, *to sell*; attendre, *to wait*.

### PRESENT INDICATIVE PLURAL

**43.** To form the plural of the present indicative, change *-ant* of the present participle into *-ons*, *-ez*, *-ent*. Thus in *finir* the stem of the plural of the present indicative is not *fin-*, as in the singular and in the infinitive, but *finiss-*, and the present indicative plural is therefore *finissons*, *finissez*, *finissent*.

**44.** Notice that the endings of the present indicative are mute, except in the first and second persons plural.

### EXERCISE XII

Write the present indicative plural of the regular verbs given in the last exercise.

Write the present indicative of the verbs whose principal parts are

écrire, <i>write</i>	écrivant	écrit	écris	écrivis
— craindre, <i>fear</i>	craignant	craint	crains	craignis
conduire, <i>lead</i>	conduisant	conduit	conduis	conduisis
partir, <i>start</i>	partant	parti	pars	partis
suivre, <i>follow</i>	suivant	suivi	suis	suivis
valoir, <i>be worth</i>	valant	valu	vaux	values
vivre, <i>be alive</i>	vivant	vécu	vis	vécus
lire, <i>read</i>	lisant	lu	lis	lus

*Pronounce:* ekri:r, ekri:vā, ekri, ekri, ekri:vi; krē:dr, krejā, krē, krē, krepi; kōdɥi:r, kōdɥizā, kōdɥi, kōdɥi, kōdɥizi; parti:r, partā, parti, par, parti; sɥi:vr, sɥivā, sɥivi, sɥi, sɥivi; valwa:r, valā, valy, vo, valy; vi:vr, vivā, veky, vi, veky; li:r, lizā, ly, li, ly.

ouvrir, <i>open</i>	ouvrant	ouvert	ouvre	ouvris
naître, <i>be born</i>	naissant	né	nais	naquis
i before t, in naître, paraître, etc.				

**45.** When the ending is mute, the voice-stress (tonic accent) falls upon the last vowel of the stem, called the *stem vowel*. This often causes a change, called *strengthening*, in the stem vowel, which changes from a *close* vowel (one made with the mouth nearly closed) to an *open* vowel (one made with the mouth well open), or even to a diphthong. Thus we have

céder, <i>yield</i>	je cède	nous cédon	ils cèdent
lever, <i>lift</i>	je lève	nous levons	ils lèvent
geler, <i>freeze</i>	je gèle	nous gelons	ils gèlent
acheter, <i>buy</i>	j'achète	nous achetons	ils achètent
jeter, <i>throw</i>	je jette	nous jetons	ils jettent
appeler, <i>call</i>	j'appelle	nous appelons	ils appellent
mourir, <i>die</i>	je meurs	nous mourons	ils meurent
vouloir, <i>wish</i>	je veux	nous voulons	ils veulent
pouvoir, <i>be able</i>	je peux	nous pouvons	ils peuvent
tenir, <i>hold</i>	je tiens	nous tenons	ils tiennent
devoir, <i>owe</i>	je dois	nous devons	ils doivent
boire, <i>drink</i>	je bois	nous buvons	ils boivent

Some people seem to consider this strengthening very mysterious and difficult. In fact, nothing could be simpler. More stress requires more breath; more breath requires a wider mouth opening to let it out; opening the mouth wider means naturally a change to a more open vowel.

*Pronounce:* uvri:r, uvrã, uvẽ:r, u:vr, uvri; næ:tr, næsũ, ne, nẽ, naki.  
 sedẽ, ʒã sed, nu sedũ, il sed; lãve, ʒã lẽ:v, nu lãvũ, il lẽ:v; ʒãle, ʒã ʒel, nu ʒãlũ, il ʒel; aʃte, ʒaʃet, nuz aʃetũ, ilz aʃet; ʒãte, ʒã ʒet, nu ʒetũ, il ʒet; apãle, ʒapel, nuz apãlũ, ilz apel; muri:r, ʒã mœ:r, nu murũ, il mœ:r; vulwair, ʒã vø, nu vulũ, il vœl; puvwair, ʒã pø, nu puvũ, il pœ:v; tãni:r, ʒã tjẽ, nu tãnũ, il tjen; dãvwair, ʒã dwa, nu dãvũ, il dwarv; bwair, ʒã bwa, nu byvũ, il bwa:v.

**-46.** It will be noticed that before mute **e** the final consonant of the stem doubles in **jeter**, **appeler**, and **tenir**. We recognize an **e** as mute (§ 9) when it ends a syllable and has no written accent. As syllables in French must begin with a consonant whenever possible (§ 12), we divide **je-ter**, **appe-ler**, **te-nir**, and see that the stem vowel is mute. But a mute syllable can never have voice-stress; and that the stem vowel, mute **e**, becomes an open **e** before a mute ending may be shown either by writing the grave accent over it, as in **lève**, **gèle**, **achètent**, or by doubling the following consonant as in **jet-te**, **appel-le**, **vien-nent**, so that the **e** of the stem no longer ends the syllable. Most verbs in **-eler** and **-eter** double the consonant. We must observe and remember those that are written with the grave accent.

The stem strengthening explained in § 45 and § 46 occurs before a mute ending in the present indicative, present imperative, and present subjunctive, and is to be expected there whenever the first singular of the present indicative has a strengthened form.

### EXERCISE XIII

Write the present indicative of the verbs in § 45, also of

*venir*, *prendre* and its compounds: *apprendre*, *to learn*, *comprendre*, *to understand*, *surprendre*, *to surprise*; *mener* (*mène*), *to lead*, *répéter* (*répète*), *to repeat*, *peler* (*pèle*), *to peel*.

Give orally the present indicative of three verbs that change atonic **ou** of the stem to **eu** in stressed position; of five verbs that change mute **e** or close **e** (**é**) to open **e**; of two verbs that strengthen mute **e** to **ie** (open **e**).



# ORTHOGRAPHIC CONVENTIONS

**47.** Certain verbs use the letter **y** before a pronounced vowel, and **i** before mute **e** or a consonant. So we have

<i>croire, believe</i>	<i>croyant, cru, crois, croyons, croient</i>
<i>employer, employ</i>	<i>employé, emploie, employons, emploient</i>
<i>appuyer, support</i>	<i>appuyé, appuie, appuyons, appuient</i>

After **e**, and sometimes after **a**, **y** is used before mute **e** also, as in

<i>grasseyer, speak thick</i>	<i>grasseye, grasseyons, grasseyent</i>
<i>asseoir, seat</i>	<i>asseyant, asseyons, asseyez, asseyent</i>
<i>payer, pay</i>	<i>payant, paie, paient, or paye, payent</i>

**48.** The letters **c** and **g** have a “soft” sound (s, ʒ) before front vowels (**e**, **i**), and a “hard” sound (k, g) before back vowels (**a**, **o**, **u**). When these letters have the soft sound in the infinitive, the same sound must be kept throughout; so before **a**, **o**, or **u** we write a cedilla under **c**, and an **e** after **g**, as in

<i>placer, place</i>	<i>plaçant, placé, place, plaçons, placent, plaçai</i>
<i>manger, eat</i>	<i>mangé, mange, mangeons, mangent, mangeai</i>
<i>recevoir, receive</i>	<i>reçu, reçois, recevons, reçoivent, reçus</i>

## EXERCISE XIV

Write the present indicative of

*voir* (see § 38), *croire*, *employer*, *essuyer*, *appuyer*, *nettoyer*, *manger*, *tracer*, *forcer*, *effacer*, *plonger*.

*Pronounce:* krwa:r, krwajā, kry, krwa, krwajō, krwa; āplwaje, āplwaje, āplwa, āplwajō, āplwa; apɥije, apɥije, apɥi, apɥijō, apɥi.

graseje, grase:j, grasejō, grase:j; aswa:r, asejā, asejō, aseje, ase:j; peje, pejā, pe.

plase, plasā, plase, plas, plasō, plas, plase; mūze, mūze, mū:3, mū3ō, mū:3, mūze; rəsəvwair, rəsy, rəswa, rəsəvō, rəswa:v, rəsy.

Write the present indicative of the verbs whose principal parts are

<b>fuir</b> , <i>flee</i>	<b>fuyant</b>	<b>fui</b>	<b>fuis</b>	<b>fuis</b>
<b>asseoir</b> , <i>seat</i>	<b>asseyant</b>	<b>assis</b>	<b>assieds</b>	<b>assis</b>

**49.** The following verbs must be learned with especial care:

PRESENT INDICATIVE

<b>avoir</b> :	<b>ai, as, a; avons, avez, ont</b>
<b>être</b> :	<b>suis, es, est; sommes, êtes, sont</b>
<b>aller</b> :	<b>vais, vas, va; allons, allez, vont</b>

Three second plurals end in **-tes**: **êtes, dites, faites**.

Four third plurals end in **-ont**: **ont, sont, vont, font**.

**Savoir** has the stem **sav-** in the plural: **savons, savez, savent**.

EXERCISE XV

I. Write from memory the present indicative of

**avoir, être, aller, dire, faire, savoir**.

II. Translate:

(a) You (*use vous*) go, you are, you have, you say, you see, you make, you come, you know.

(b) I go, I give, I wish, I am, I have, I come, I know, I take, I put, I can.

(c) I finish, we finish; I believe, we believe; I receive, we receive; I go, we go; I am, we are; I have, we have; I yield, we yield; I lift, we lift; I owe, we owe; I drink, we drink; I call, we call; I can, we can; I wish, we wish.

(d) He is freezing, you are freezing; he throws, you throw; he holds, you hold; he is dying, you are dying; he leads, you lead; he repeats, you repeat; he comes, you come; he receives,

*Pronounce:* fuir, fuĩjã, fuĩ, fuĩ, fuĩ; aswair, asejã, asi, asje, asi.

e, a, a; avõ, ave, õ. sũĩ, e, e; sãm, et, sã. ve, va, va; alõ, ale, võ. et, dit, fet. õ, sõ, võ, fõ. savõ, save, saiv.

you receive; he knows, you know; he wishes, you wish; he can, you can; he is going, you are going.

(e) We are, they are; we have, they have; we go, they go; we make, they make; we come, they come; we receive, they receive; we take, they take; we wish, they wish; we drink, they drink; we can, they can; we see, they see; we place, they place; we eat, they eat; we flee, they flee; we trace, they trace; we plunge, they plunge; we are cleaning, they are cleaning.

## IMPERATIVE

**50.** The imperative has three persons: second singular and second plural, and a first plural commonly translated *let us* —, as, **ayons**, *let us have*; **soyons**, *let us be*; **sachons**, *let us know*. The second person singular is like the first person singular of the present indicative; or like the second singular if the final **-s** be dropped in **-er** verbs; the first and second persons of the plural are like the same persons of the present indicative. No subject pronouns are used with the imperative.

## IMPERATIVE

<b>donner:</b>	donne, donnons, donnez
<b>finir:</b>	finis, finissons, finissez
<b>recevoir:</b>	reçois, recevons, recevez
<b>dire:</b>	dis, disons, dites
<b>faire:</b>	fais, faisons, faites

Exceptions are

<b>avoir:</b>	aie, ayons, ayez
<b>être:</b>	sois, soyons, soyez
<b>aller:</b>	va, allons, allez
<b>savoir:</b>	sache, sachons, sachez

---

*Pronounce:* dən, dən̄, dən̄e; fini, finis̄, finise; rəswa, rəsəv̄, rəsəve; di, diz̄, dit; fə, fəs̄, fet. ɛij, ɛj̄, ɛje; swa, swaj̄, swaje; va, al̄, ale; saʃ, saʃ̄, saʃe.

## EXERCISE XVI

I. Write the imperative of the verbs in §§ 38, 44, 45, and 48.

## II. Translate:

(a) (*Use singular of second-person verbs.*) Come! Let us come! Go! Let us go! Say! Let us say! Be good (**sage**)! Let us be good! Have patience (**patience**, *f.*)! Let us have patience! Do that (**cela**)! Let us do that! Lift the head (**tête**, *f.*)! Let's lift the head! Throw the ball! Let's throw the ball! Call Mary! Let's call Mary! Hold the rope (**corde**, *f.*)! Let's hold the rope! Drink the milk (**lait**, *m.*)! Let's drink the milk! Give the hand (**main**, *f.*)! Let's give the hand! Break the stick (**baguette**, *f.*)! Let's break the stick! Take the pen! Let's take the pen! Know how (**savoir**) to wait! Let's know how to wait! Buy some oranges! Let's buy some oranges!

(b) (*Use plural of second-person verbs.*) Come now (**maintenant**)! Let's come now! Go yonder (**là-bas**)! Let's go yonder! Tell the truth (**vérité**, *f.*)! Let's tell the truth! Make a ball! Let's make a ball! Know the truth! Let's know the truth! Receive that gentleman! Let's receive that gentleman! Buy some apples! Let us buy some apples! Take some chalk! Don't take any chalk! Let's take some chalk! Let us take no chalk! Drink some water! Drink no water! Let us drink some coffee! Let us not drink coffee! Be happy! Let us be happy! Have courage! Let us have courage! Reply to Henry! Let us reply to Henry! Open the door! Let us open the door! Shut the window! Let us shut the window! Fear nothing (**ne . . . rien**)! Let us fear nothing! Finish this exercise (**exercice**, *m.*)! Let us finish this exercise!

(c) You are sad, be gay! Are you afraid? Don't be afraid! You say nothing; say something! We are doing well, but let us do even (**encore**) better to-morrow!

## INTERROGATIVE FORMS

**51.** Verbs may be made interrogative by prefixing *est-ce que*, *is it true that*, used like English auxiliary *do*, *did*, etc.

## DECLARATIVE

## INTERROGATIVE

*Je donne, I give.*

*Est-ce que je donne? Do I give?*

*Vous dites, You say.*

*Est-ce que vous dites? Do you say?*

Interrogations are also made by inversion, putting a pronoun subject after the verb, as *jé suis*; interrogative, *suis-je?* *vous faites*; interrogative, *faites-vous?* *Jean voit*; interrogative, *Jean voit-il?* *Marie parle*; interrogative, *Marie parle-t-elle?*

**52.** In the first person singular of the present indicative, the first method is to be used except for certain monosyllables, as *suis-je?* *ai-je?* *dis-je?* *puis-je?* *fais-je?* *vais-je?* *sais-je?* *dois-je?*

**53.** In the third person singular, when the verb ends in a vowel, *-t-* must be inserted between the verb and its following pronoun subject, as *donne-t-il?* *a-t-il?* *va-t-elle?*

## EXERCISE XVII

(a) Give each of the following interrogations in another form:

Dis-je?	Vais-je?	Est-ce que nous savons?
Ont-ils?	Font-ils?	Est-ce que vous dites?
Faites-vous?	Puis-je?	Est-ce qu'ils vont?
Est-ce qu'elle va?	Allons-nous?	Est-ce qu'il a?

*Pronounce:* ʒə dən, eskəʒə dən; vu dit, eskə vu dit. ʒə sɥi, sɥi:ʒ; vu fɛt, fɛt vu; ʒɑ vwa, ʒɑ vvatil; mari parl, mari parlɛtɛl.

sɥi:ʒ, ɛ:ʒ, di:ʒ, pui:ʒ, fɛ:ʒ, vɛ:ʒ, sɛ:ʒ, dwa:ʒ.

dɑntil, atil, vatɛl.

di:ʒ, vɛ:ʒ, eskə nu savɔ; ɔtil, fɔtil, eskə vu dit; fɛt vu, pui:ʒ, eskil vɔ; eskɛl va, alɔ nu, eskil a?

(b) Turn the following statements into questions:

Il donne	Elle a	Vous écrivez
Vous allez	Nous parlons	Ils reçoivent
Nous voyons	Je vends	Marie écrit
Je mange	Il sait	Pierre nage
Tu veux	Je plonge	Louise mange

(c) Write interrogatively the present indicative of the verbs in §§ 38, 44, 45, and 48.

(d) Translate:

Do I give? does she give? do you give? Do I go? does he go? do we go? Do I have? does he have? do they have? Do I make? does she make? do you make? Do I say? does he say? do you say? Am I? is she? are they?

Do I open the door? Does he open the door? Do you open the door? Am I closing the window? Is she closing the window? Are we closing the windows? Am I eating the apple? Is he eating an apple? Are we eating apples? Am I writing an exercise? Is she writing an exercise? Are you writing exercises?

## NEGATION

**54.** The French negation with verbs is **ne**, placed before the verb and as near it as possible. The negation is almost invariably strengthened by a complementary substantive or adverb placed usually directly after the verb.

*Je ne vais pas à Paris, I am not going to Paris (not a step).*

*Je n'ai rien, I have nothing (not a thing).*

*Il ne parle jamais, he never speaks (not ever).*

*Elle ne voit que lui, she sees him only (none but him).*

---

*Pronounce:* il dən, ɛla, vuz ekrive, vuz ale, nu parlɔ̃, il rəswa:v, nu vva:jɔ̃, ʒə vɑ̃, mari ekri, ʒə mɑ̃:ʒ, il se, pjɛr na:ʒ, ty vø, ʒə plɔ̃:ʒ, lwiz mɑ̃:ʒ.

ʒə nə ve paz a pari; ʒə ne rjɛ; il nə parl ʒame; ɛl nə vva kə lɥi.

## EXERCISE XVIII

I. (a) Write negatively, using **ne . . . pas**, the present indicative of the verbs in §§ 38, 44, 45, and 48.

(b) Write the same negative-interrogatively (**n'ai-je pas**, etc.).

(c) Write with **ne . . . rien** the present indicative of **faire**, **dire**, **recevoir**, **vouloir**, and **manger**.

(d) Write with **ne . . . jamais** the present indicative of **être malade**, **aller à Paris**, **venir en retard**, **céder**, **finir**.

(e) Write the negative imperative of the verbs in §§ 38, 44, 45, and 48.

## II. Translate:

I do not give, I never give, I give only that (**cela**). He has no apples, he has only two apples, he has but few apples, he never has any apples. You are doing nothing, you do only that, you never do that. You say nothing, you say only that, you never say that.

## CHAPTER III

## PRONOUNS

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS

**55.** The pronouns **je** and **nous** always refer to the speaker and are said to be of the *first person*. **Tu** and **vous** refer to the person addressed, and are called *second person*, **tu** being used only to an animal, a child, an intimate friend, or a near relative. **Il**, **ils**, **elle**, **elles**, refer to that of which we are speaking, and are said to be of the *third person*. Since these pronouns, unlike most others, have always the same "person" and so determine the "person" of their verbs, they are called *personal pronouns*. The pronouns mentioned are used as subject

of the verb; they have corresponding personal pronouns used as direct or indirect objects, and others used disjunctively, that is, not connected with any verb as subject or object.

Subject	je	tu	il	elle	nous	vous	ils	elles
Direct object	me	te	le	la	nous	vous	les	les
Indirect object	me	te	lui	lui	nous	vous	leur	leur
Disjunctives	moi	toi	lui	elle	nous	vous	eux	elles

**56.** No verb can have more than one direct object. An object that expresses the relation of *to* or *for*, as: *He gave me the book*, meaning *He gave the book to me*, or: *He bought them some peaches*, meaning *He bought some peaches for them*, is called an *indirect object*. Distinguish the objects and tell what pronouns to use in: *He taught us French*, *We wrote them a letter*, *He asked her a question*, *Tell us a story*, *Sell him your boat*. Learn with especial care the indirect objects **lui** and **leur**.

After verbs of thinking and verbs expressing motion, a disjunctive with **à** and not an indirect object pronoun is used, as, **allez à lui**, *go to him*; **pensez à moi**, *think of me*. **Penser** also takes **y**, chiefly of things, **pensez-y**, *think of it*.

### EXERCISE XIX

Give the French translations for words in italics:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>He sends her</i> to the library. | 9. Go to <i>them</i> .                         |
| 2. <i>He sends her</i> some flowers.   | 10. Speak to <i>them</i> .                     |
| 3. <i>She showed them</i> her books.   | 11. Tell <i>him</i> your name.                 |
| 4. <i>She showed them to him</i> .     | 12. Don't sell <i>her</i> your dog.            |
| 5. I gave <i>him</i> a dog.            | 13. She is a good dog; don't sell <i>her</i> . |
| 6. <i>He gave him</i> to Mary.         | 14. Ask <i>them</i> one question.              |
| 7. You wrote <i>me</i> a letter.       | 15. Who thinks of <i>them</i> ?                |
| 8. Come to <i>me</i> .                 |  |

---

Pronounce: ʒə, ty, il, el, nu, vu, il, el; mə, tə, lə, la, lə; lɥi, lœr; mwa, twa, ø.      aleza lɥi; pãseza mwa; pãsezi.



57. Est-ce *vous* qui dites cela? Non, ce n'est pas *nous* qui le disons, c'est *lui*. Allez-vous avec *moi* ou avec *eux*? *Moi*, je vais avec *toi*, mais *lui* va avec *eux*. Ce sont *elles*. Cette plume est à mon frère, elle n'est pas à *vous*.

The disjunctives are well termed "stressed forms," because they are always used when an emphatic or stressed pronoun is desired. Study especially the stressed pronouns of the third person. Notice that when emphatic those of the third person may be used as subject of the verb. Another way to emphasize the pronoun is to put it last, as, **ils ne vont pas, eux**. A stressed word is usually put at the end of its word-group.

### EXERCISE XX

Give the following sentences, substituting other pronouns for those in italics, as, *tu le crois, toi; il le croit, lui*, etc.:

*Je le crois, moi*. C'est *moi* qui le dis. Il parle de *moi*. Elle me voit. Il *me* parle. Il *m'écrit* souvent des lettres.

Repeat, making sentences negative.

58. Il *nous* regarde. Ne *le* regardez pas, regardez-*moi*. Elle *me* suit. Ne *la* suivez pas, suivez-*le*. Assieds-*toi*! Je vais *m'asseoir* près de la table.

Pronounce: es vu ki dit sɔla? nɔ̃, sɔ̃ nɛ pa nu ki lə dizɔ̃, sɛ lɥi. aɛ vuz avek mwa u avek ø? mwa, ʒə vez avek twa, mɛ lɥi va avek ø. sɔ̃ sɔ̃t el. sɛt plym ɛt a mɔ̃ frɛr, el nɛ paz a vu. il nɔ̃ vɔ̃ pa, ø.

ty lə krwa, twa; il lə krwa, lɥi; ʒə lə krwa, mwa; sɛ mwa ki lə di, sɛ twa ki lə di, sɛ vu ki lə dit; il parl də mwa, il parl də lɥi, il parl dəl, il parl də; el mɔ̃ vwa, el lə vwa; il mɔ̃ parl, il lɥi parl, il lœr parl; il mekri suvɔ̃ də letr, il lœr ekri suvɔ̃ də letr.

il nu rɛgard. nɔ̃ lə rɛgarde pa, rɛgarde mwa. el mɔ̃ sɥi. nɔ̃ la sɥivɛ pa, sɥivɛ lə. Asje twa! ʒə vɛ maswaɪr prɛ də la tabl.

Objective personal pronouns stand before the verb except with the imperative affirmative. Note that after the imperative the stressed forms **moi** and **toi**, not the unstressed forms **me** or **te**, are used at the end of a word-group.

### EXERCISE XXI

Give the following sentences, substituting other pronouns for those in italics:

Il *me* parle en *me* regardant. Elle *me* sourit en *m'appelant*. Asseyez-vous près de *moi*. Ils vont chanter avec *moi*. Elle va *me* ~~donner~~ des cerises. Tais-*toi*, ne *lui* dis pas cela. Mets-*toi* près de la porte. Envoyez-*moi* de vos nouvelles. Qui *me* voit?

**59.** In the third person, an objective pronoun referring to the subject of the verb is **se**, not **le**, **la**, **lui**, **les**, or **leur**.

Thus **il se voit** means *he sees himself*, **il le voit**, *he sees him*, i.e. *some other person*; **ils se lavent** means *they are washing themselves*, **ils les lavent**, *they are washing them*, i.e. *some other persons or things*. An objective pronoun referring to the subject of the verb is called "reflexive" and a verb that has such an object is called a reflexive verb. The present indicative and imperative of **s'asseoir**, *to seat oneself*, are

je <i>m'assieds</i>	nous <i>nous</i> asseyons	assieds- <i>toi</i> !
tu <i>l'assieds</i>	vous <i>vous</i> asseyez	asseyons- <i>nous</i> !
il <i>s'assied</i>	ils <i>s'asseyent</i>	asseyez- <i>vous</i> !
elle <i>s'assied</i>	elles <i>s'asseyent</i>	

*Pronounce:* il mə parl ā mə rəgərdā. ɛl mə suri ā mapələ. aseje vu prɛ də mwa. il vō šāte avek mwa. ɛl va mə done də səri:z. tɛ twa, nə lɥi di pɑ sɔla. mə twa prɛ də la pɑrt. ūvwaje mwa də vo nuvel. ki mə vwa?

il sə vwa; il lə vwa; il sə la:v; il lə la:v.

ʒə masje, ty tasje, il sasje, ɛl sasje; nu nuz asejō, vu vuz aseje, il sase:j, ɛl sase:j; asje twa, asejō nu, aseje vu.

What is the syntax of the first pronoun? of the second?  
Give the negative imperative; the present indicative interrogative.

**60.** French often uses a reflexive form where English uses a passive verb:

**Cela se voit souvent,** *that is often seen.*

**Cela se fait tous les jours,** *that is done every day.*

### EXERCISE XXII

Write both affirmatively and negatively the present indicative and the imperative of the following reflexives:

se mettre à table, se tenir debout, se laver les mains, s'asseoir à terre, s'appeler Henri, s'excuser d'arriver en retard, se sauver bien vite, se lever de bonne heure, se coucher tard, s'adresser à un sergent de ville.

**61.** Quand allez-vous à l'église? J'y vais le dimanche.

Revenez-vous de la poste? Oui, j'en reviens.

Avez-vous des sous? Je n'en ai pas.

Va-t-il à la banque? Il n'y va pas, il en revient.

Two little words, **y** and **en**, originally adverbs meaning *there* or *thither*, and *from there*, have come to be used as pronouns, or rather as pro-phrases. **y** replaces a phrase beginning with **à** or some similar preposition of location or direction (**dans**, **chez**); **en** replaces a phrase beginning

*Pronounce:* s(ə)la sə vwa suvā; səla sə fe tu le ʒur.

sə metr a tabl; sə tənir dəbu; sə lave le mē; saswaɪr a tɛɪr; sapəle ũri; sekskyze darive ũ rɛtaɪr; sə sove bjē vit; sə ləve də bən æɪr; sə kuʃe taɪr; s'adrese a æ sɛrʒū də vil.

kūt ale vuz a legliɪz? ʒi vɛ lə dimāɪʃ. rəvəne vu də la pɔst? wi, ʒū rəvjē. ave vu də su? ʒə nū ne pa. vatil a la bāik? il ni va pa, il ũ rəvjē.

with the preposition **de**. **En** and **y** have the position of objective personal pronouns.

In the preceding sentences what phrases do **y** and **en** replace?

### EXERCISE XXIII

#### I. Replace italicized phrases by **y** or **en**:

Voilà notre école; je vais à *l'école* à neuf heures du matin et je reviens *de l'école* à deux heures de l'après-midi.

C'est une banque; on va à *la banque* chercher de l'argent, et l'on revient *de la banque* la poche pleine.

C'est une bonne affaire; je pense à *cette affaire* tous les jours, et je parle *de cette affaire* souvent.

Quel beau jardin! Des rosiers fleurissent *dans ce jardin*, et l'on cueille *dans ce jardin* de jolis bouquets.

#### II. Translate:

1. I am going there and he is coming back from there.
2. Roses bloom there, and Mary picks some often.
3. They have horses, and we have none.
4. Are you going there? No, I am coming back from there.
5. Who thinks of that (*à cela*)? I think of it often and I speak of it every day.

**62.** Marie est contente, et je *le* suis aussi (*le*=content[e]).  
Pierre est malade, mais sa mère ne *le* sait pas (*le*=que Pierre est malade).

The invariable pronoun **le** is used in the predicate as a pro-adjective or pro-clause; that is, to take the place of an adjective or of a clause (English *so* or *it*).

*Pronounce:* vwala nɔtr ekɔl; ʒi vɛza nœv œr dy matɛ, e ʒɑ rœvjɛz a dœz œr də laprɛ midi. sɛt yn bɑ:k; ɔni va ʃɛrʃe də larʒɑ, e lɔ nɑ rœvjɛ la pøʃ plɛn. sɛt yn bœn afɛ:r; ʒi pɑ:s tu lɛ ʒur, e ʒɑ parl suvɑ. kɛl bɔ ʒardɛ! dɛ rozʒɛz i flœris, e lɔ ni kœ:rj də ʒɔli buke.

mari e kɔtɑ:t, e ʒə lə sɥiz osi. pjɛr e malad, mɛ sa mɛ:r nɔ lə sɛ pa.

## EXERCISE XXIV

I. In each of the following sentences replace a clause or an adjective by *le*:

Pierre est heureux, et nous sommes aussi *heureux*.

On dit qu'il va arriver ce soir, mais je ne crois pas *qu'il va arriver ce soir*.

Ce petit garçon va tomber; ne pensez-vous pas *qu'il va tomber*?

Marie est fort studieuse et sa sœur est aussi *studieuse*.

C'est lui qui sera (*will be*) nommé; on dit partout *que c'est lui qui sera nommé*.

II. Translate:

1. You are happy, and I am too.

2. People say so, but I don't believe it.

3. He is studious, but his brother is not.

4. Roses (*les roses*) are beautiful; violets are too.

5. He is going to come back, but don't tell his sister (*à sa sœur*).

**63.** Ce livre est à moi; donnez-le-moi; ne *le* leur donnez pas!

Cette plume est à Marie, donnez-la-lui; ne *me la* donnez pas!

Marie désire ces fraises; veuillez *les lui* porter!

Elle *va vous en* donner; donnez-nous-en aussi.

When two objective conjunctive personal pronouns are used with a verb, the one nearer the verb must be of the third person.

When both pronouns are of the third person, the direct object precedes the indirect; except that *se* precedes any other pronoun.

*Pronounce:* pjɛr et ɛrø, e nu læ sɔmz osi. ʒ di kil va arive sə swaɪr, mɛ ʒə nə læ krwa pa. sə pəti ɡarsɔ̃ va tɔ̃be; nə læ pɑ̃sə vu pa? mari ɛ fɔʁ stydʒøːz, e sa sœʁ lɛt osi. sɛ lɥi ki sɔra nɑme; ʒ læ di partu.

sə livr et a mwa; dɔne læ moi; nə læ læʁ dɔne pa. sɛt plym et a mari; dɔne la lɥi, nə mɔ la dɔne pa. mari deziʁ sɛ frɛz; vœʃe lɛ lɥi pɔʁte. el va vuz œ dɔne; dɔne nuz œ osi.

**64.** Pourquoi m'envoyez-vous à *lui*? Je ne vous envoie pas à *lui*. If the direct object is a personal pronoun other than *le*, *la*, or *les*, any indirect object, except *en* or *y*, is expressed by *à* and a disjunctive. What is the difference between *je vais vous présenter à elle* and *je vais vous la présenter*?

## EXERCISE XXV

Translate:

1. Who sends you to me?
2. Let us introduce ourselves to her.
3. Is he going to show himself to them?

**65.** Jean désire de l'encre, veuillez lui *en* donner.

Il n'y *en* a pas dans l'encrier.

Guillaume va au concert; mon père m'y mène aussi.

Menez-les-y; et s'ils désirent des oranges, achetez-leur-*en*!

*En* and *y* follow objective personal pronouns; and if used together *en* follows *y*.

## EXERCISE XXVI

(a) Complete the following sentences by inserting the complements indicated:

Des oranges; mon père va acheter (*them for me*).

Une plume; je donne (*it to you*).

Du pain; ma mère donne souvent (*some to them*).

Le concert; veuillez mener (*us there*).

Les livres; je vais montrer (*them to her*).

---

*Pronounce:* purkwa māvwaʒe vuz a lui? ʒə nə vuz āvwa paz a lui.  
 ʒā desir də lā:kr, vœʒe lui ā done. il nʒə na pa dā lākrʒe. giʒo:m  
 va o kōsɛ:r; mō peir mi mən osi. mənə lez i; e sil desir dəz orā:ʒ,  
 aʒote lœr ā.

dəz orā:ʒ; mō peir va vu lez aʒote. yn plym; ʒə la lui dən. dy pē;  
 ma meir mā dən suvā. lə kōsɛ:r; vœʒe lez i mənə. le li:vʀ; ʒə vɛ vu  
 le mōtre.

(b) Change the following sentences, giving successively all possible personal pronouns as direct objects in the first four and as indirect objects in the last four; repeat, making sentences negative:

- |                                   |                            |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Il <i>me</i> renvoie à elle.   | 5. Il <i>me</i> les prête. |
| 2. Il <i>m'en</i> chasse.         | 6. Il <i>me</i> la donne.  |
| 3. Il <i>m'y</i> aperçoit.        | 7. Parlez- <i>m'en</i> !   |
| 4. Donnez- <i>m'en</i> bien vite! | 8. On <i>me</i> l'a dit.   |

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

**66.** To take the place of a noun preceded by a possessive adjective we use possessive pronouns. Thus we may use

for <b>mon</b> crayon,	<b>le mien</b>	for <b>mes</b> crayons,	<b>les miens</b>
for <b>ma</b> plume,	<b>la mienne</b>	for <b>mes</b> plumes,	<b>les miennes</b>
for <b>ton</b> père,	<b>le tien</b>	for <b>tes</b> frères,	<b>les tiens</b>
for <b>ta</b> mère,	<b>la tienne</b>	for <b>tes</b> sœurs,	<b>les tiennes</b>
for <b>son</b> oncle,	<b>le sien</b>	for <b>ses</b> oncles,	<b>les siens</b>
for <b>sa</b> tante,	<b>la sienne</b>	for <b>ses</b> tantes,	<b>les siennes</b>
for <b>notre</b> jardin,	<b>le nôtre</b>	for <b>nos</b> jardins,	<b>les nôtres</b>
for <b>notre</b> maison,	<b>la nôtre</b>	for <b>nos</b> maisons,	<b>les nôtres</b>
for <b>votre</b> cheval,	<b>le vôtre</b>	for <b>vos</b> chevaux,	<b>les vôtres</b>
for <b>votre</b> règle,	<b>la vôtre</b>	for <b>vos</b> règles,	<b>les vôtres</b>
for <b>leur</b> jeu,	<b>le leur</b>	for <b>leurs</b> jeux,	<b>les leurs</b>
for <b>leur</b> poupée,	<b>la leur</b>	for <b>leurs</b> poupées,	<b>les leurs</b>

*Pronounce:* il mə rūvwa a el. il mū šas. il mi aperswa. dōne mū bjē vit. il mə le pret. il mə la dōn. parle mū. ɔ mə la di.

mō krejō, lə mjē, mə krejō, le mjē; ma plym, la mjen, mə plym, le mjen; tō peir, lə tjē, te freir, le tjē; ta meir, la tjen, te sœur; le tjen; sōn ɔ:kl, lə sjē, sez ɔ:kl, le sjē; sa tāt, la sjen, se tāt, le sjen; nōtr zardē, lə nōtr, no zardē, le nōtr; nōtr mezō, la nōtr, no mezō, le nōtr; vōtr šəval, lə vōtr, vo šəvo, le vōtr; vōtr regl, la vōtr, vo regl, le vōtr, lər ʒə, lə lœr, lər ʒə, le lœr; lœr pupe, la lœr, lœr pupe, le lœr.

Pronouns must have the gender and number of the nouns for which they stand. In comparing possessive adjectives and pronouns, note:

1. Adjectives are used *with* nouns, pronouns *instead* of nouns.
2. Adjectives are unstressed, pronouns are stressed.
3. Adjectives are short, pronouns generally longer forms.
4. The definite article is always used with the pronoun, but never with the adjective.

### EXERCISE XXVII

#### I. Replace possessive adjectives and nouns by pronouns:

Mes amis, tes amis, et leurs amis.  
 Vos plumes, ses plumes, et mes plumes.  
 Ton crayon, son crayon, et mon crayon.  
 Ta mère, sa mère, et leur mère.  
 Nos chevaux, ses chevaux, et vos chevaux.

#### II. Translate into French:

My house; yours, his, hers, theirs, ours.  
 Her garden; his, mine, yours, ours, theirs.  
 Your books; mine, hers, his, ours, theirs.  
 Their roses; his, ours, theirs, hers, yours.  
 My father and hers; his mother and mine.  
 Your cousins and ours; his sister and theirs.

---

*Pronounce:* mez ami, tez ami, e lærz ami; vo plym, se plym, e me plym; tɔ̃ krejɔ̃, sɔ̃ krejɔ̃, e mɔ̃ krejɔ̃; ta mœr, sa mœr, e lær mœr; no ʃəvo, se ʃəvo, et vo ʃəvo.



## DEMONSTRATIVES

**67.** Demonstratives, like possessives, may be Adjectives, used with a noun: **ce, cet, cette, ces**; or Pronouns, used instead of a noun: **ce, ceci, cela, celui**, etc.

*C'est elle. Ce ne sont pas eux. Ce doit être lui. Ce me semble. Tout ce qui reluit n'est pas or. Je sais bien ce que vous pensez. Ceci (this, emphatic) est pour lui, cela (that, emphatic) est pour elle. Voulez-vous ceci ou cela? Ce sont là mes bijoux.*

The uninflected pronoun **ce**, or one of its stressed forms, **ceci, cela**, must be used when no particular noun is in mind to determine gender and number.

Whenever stress is required, by contrast, position, etc., **ceci, cela, ce (être) là**, will be used.

The pronoun **ce** is unstressed, invariable (but **c'** before a vowel), and either subject of a verb or antecedent of a relative pronoun, as **ce qui, ce que, ce dont, ce à quoi**. The only verbs regularly used with **ce** are **être, sembler**, or a verb like **doit** or **peut** governing **être**.

*What*, meaning *that which*, is **ce**+a relative: **ce qui, ce que**, etc.

## EXERCISE XXVIII

Change the following sentences, and begin each with a demonstrative pronoun, e.g. **ce livre est à moi = c'est mon livre**. Which form stresses the possessor?

*Pronounce:* sə, set, set, se; sə, səsi, səla, səli. set el, sə nə sɔ paz ø. sə dwat ɛ:tr li. sə mə sɑ:bl. tu ski rəlɥi nə paz ɔ:r. ʒə se bjɛ skə vu pɑse. səsi ɛ pur li, səla ɛ pur el. vule vu səsi u səla? sə sɔ la mə ʒwajɔ.

sə li:vɾ ɛt a mwa; se mɔ li:vɾ.

Cette plume est à lui.

Ce chien est à elle.

Ce chapeau est à elle.

Ces chapeaux sont à vous.

Ces livres sont à toi.

Ces billes sont à nous.

Cette maison est à elles.

Ce jardin est à eux.

Repeat, making sentences (a) negative, (b) interrogative.

**68.** Voici deux beaux livres, voulez-vous *celui-ci* ou *celui-là*? Quelles belles roses! *Celle-ci* est rouge, *celle-là* est blanche. Voyez-vous ces enfants? *Ceux* qui jouent aux billes sont mes cousins, *ceux* qui courent sont mes neveux. Tous ces devoirs sont bien faits, mais *celui* de Jean est mieux écrit que *celui* de Marie.

Forms of the inflected pronoun, *celui*, not the uninflected *ce*, *ceci*, or *cela*, are commonly used to replace a particular noun that has been already expressed or is about to follow in a *de*-phrase. The principle is that a noun clearly in mind so impresses its gender and number as to require an inflected pronoun to replace it. However, as subject of *être*, with predicate noun, *ce* is used: *qui est ce monsieur?* *C'est mon ami X.*

**69.** Ce mouchoir-*ci* est plus cher que celui-*là*.

Cette dame-*ci* s'appelle Alice, celle-*là* s'appelle Marie.

The distinction made in English by having two demonstratives, *this* and *that*, is expressed in French by affixing *-ci* or *-là* to nouns or pronouns used with strong demonstrative force, where contrast or distinctive emphasis is required.

---

*Pronounce:* set plym et a lui; sə ʃjē et a el; sə ʃapo et a el; se ʃapo sôt a vu; se livr sôt a twa; se bi:j sôt a nu. set mezō et a el; sə zardē et a ø.

vvasi də bo livr, vule vu səlɥi si u səlɥi la? kel bel ro:z! sel si ɛ ru:ʒ, sel la ɛ blā:ʃ. vwaje vu sez āfā? sə ki ʒu o bi:j sō me kuzē, sə ki ku:r sō me nəvø. tu se dəvwɑ:r sō bjē fε, me səlɥi də ʒā ɛ mjøz ekri kə səlɥi də mari.

sə muʃwɑ:r si ɛ ply ʃε:r kə səlɥi la. set dam si sapel alis, sel la sapel mari.

**70.** Note that a form of **celui** will always be followed by one of three things:

One of the adverbs, **-ci** or **-là**,  
A phrase beginning with **de**, or  
A relative clause.

**71.** Of two objects, **-ci** indicates the nearer, **-là**, the more remote; therefore, of two things previously mentioned, **-ci** means the latter, **-là**, the former, as, **voilà une rose et un dahlia; celui-ci est plus gros, mais celle-là a plus de parfum.**

### EXERCISE XXIX

I. Fill blanks with demonstratives:

1. — sont deux beaux enfants; mais — enfant-là est moins beau que — qui joue à la balle.
2. — sont de beaux livres; je crois que — livres sont chers, et je pense que — -là sont plus chers que — -ci.
3. — est une belle bague; — bague est plus belle que — de Marie.
4. — sont de belles roses; — roses-ci sont blanches, — -là sont jaunes; et — qui sont sur la table sont rouges.
5. — est petit, — est grand; cependant — va tuer —; car — augmente et — diminue toujours.

---

*Pronounce:* vwala yn ro:z e ã dalja, səlqi si ε ply gro, mē səl la a ply də parfō.

sə sō də boz āfā, mē set āfā la ε mwē bo kə səlqi ki ʒu a la bal.  
sə sō də bo livr; ʒə krwa kə sē livr sō ʃe:r, e ʒə pās kə sōla sō ply  
ʃe:r kə sōsi. set yn bəl bag; set bag ε ply bəl kə səl də mari. sə sō  
də bəl ro:z; sē ro:z si sō blā:ʃ, səl la sō ʒo:n; e səl ki sō syr la tabl sō  
ru:ʒ. səsi ε pəti, sōla ε grū; səpādā səsi va tʃe sōla; kər səsi əgmā:t  
ε sōla diminy tuʒur.

## II. Translate:

1. This and that; this rose and that; this book and that; this is a rose and that is a book; this rose and that book.

2. Do you wish this or that? Is that a tree? Is this a flower? That tree is an oak. That is not an elm. That flower is a carnation. That carnation is pretty.

3. That elm is taller than this one; that carnation is white and this one is red; that pansy is prettier than this one.

4. These books and those; these pens and those; these pencils and those; these houses and those.

5. Those are roses; these flowers are violets; these carnations are prettier than Mary's; those pansies are not so pretty as Louisa's.

6. Gowns, handsome gowns, blue gowns, her gowns, yours, Mary's, my sister's, hers, the red (ones), the silk ones, the white (ones), the cotton ones, the ones which are on the table.

7. Gloves, handsome gloves, black gloves, her gloves, yours, Mary's, my sister's, hers, the red (ones), the silk ones, the white (ones), the cotton ones, the ones which are on the table.

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS

**72.** La lettre *qui* est arrivée. L'homme *que* vous avez vu. La plume avec *laquelle* vous écrivez. Le livre *auquel* je pense. Les outils avec *lesquels* nous travaillons. Les fleurs pour *lesquelles* elle vient. Est-ce vous *qui* dites cela? C'est moi *qui* le dis. Savez-vous ce *que* c'est?

A relative pronoun joins a clause to a noun or pronoun that is called the *antecedent* of the relative. A relative is equivalent to a conjunction and a personal pronoun. It has the gender, number, and person of its antecedent. What are the antecedents of the relatives in this section?

---

*Pronounce:* la letr ki et arive; ləm kə vuz ave vy; la plym avek lakel vuz ekrive; lə livr okel ʒə pās; lez utiz avek lekəl nu travajə; le flœr pur lekəl el vjē. ɛs vu ki dit sɛlə? sɛ mwa ki lə di. save vu skə sɛ?

**73.** The relatives most used are

As subject of the verb, **qui**.

As direct object of the verb, or as predicate nominative, **que**.

After prepositions, **lequel**, **laquelle**, **lesquels**, **lesquelles**.

The first part of **lequel** is the definite article, which is inflected, and which contracts with a preceding **à** or **de**, giving the forms **auquel**, **auxquels**, **auxquelles**, **duquel**, **desquels**, **desquelles**. The second part of **lequel** is the interrogative adjective **quel**, meaning *which*, *what*.

**EXERCISE XXX**

Translate:

1. The child who is crying; the child whom you see; the book which I hold, the book which is on the table, the book in which you are reading.

2. The lady who is singing; the lady to whom we listen (**écouter**, *with direct object*); the pen which pleases you; the pen which you desire; the pen with which you are writing.

3. The pupils at whom you are looking (**regarder**, *with direct object*); the pupils who are looking at you; the pupils with whom he is playing; the flowers which smell so sweet (**bon**, *invariable, since it is used adverbially*); the flowers which you give them; the flowers in which that occurs (**se trouve**).

**74.** **Lequel** may be used in any construction, but being longer than **qui** and **que** is not used as subject or direct object unless needed to avoid ambiguity, as, **c'est la sœur de notre ami, laquelle vous ne connaissez pas**, *it is our friend's sister, whom you do not know*. If **que** were used, it would refer to **ami** and not to **sœur**.

## EXERCISE XXXI

Translate:

1. My aunt's dog, which is always barking.
2. My uncle's house, which is very ugly.
3. Mr. Loubet's hens, which the neighbors hate.
4. Mrs. Duval's cat, which has only three feet.
5. Your brother's umbrella, which has an ivory dog's head (*tête de chien en ivoire*).

**75.** *Dont*, *whose*, *of whom*, *of which*, commonly replaces *de+lequel*, but is never used to modify the object of a preposition. It always begins its clause, and does not change the word-order, a noun which is direct object following the verb, as, *le monsieur dont nous parlons*; *un enfant dont je connais le père*; *la façon dont il m'a répondu*.

## EXERCISE XXXII

Translate:

1. Mr. Thiers, whose brother you know.
2. Mr. Carnot, of whom we are speaking.
3. Mr. Thiers, of whose books we are speaking.
4. Your brother, whose handwriting pleases me so much.
5. Your brother, whose head I see yonder.
6. Your brother, with whose pen I am writing.

**76.** In expressions of time and place, *où* is often used instead of *auquel* or *dans lequel*: *le jardin où (dans lequel) nous jouons*.

**77.** Referring to persons, *qui* may be used as the object of a preposition: *le monsieur dont (or duquel, or de qui) il parle*; *la dame à qui (or à laquelle) il pense*.

---

*Pronounce:* lə məsjø dɔ̃ nu parlɔ̃. œ nɑ̃fɑ̃ dɔ̃ ʒə kɔ̃nɛ lə pɛr. la fɑsɔ̃ dɔ̃ til ma repɔ̃dy.

lə ʒardɛ̃ u (dɑ̃ ləkɛl) nu ʒwɔ̃. lə məsjø dɔ̃t (dykɛl, dɔ̃ ki) il parl. la dam a ki (a lakɛl) il pɑ̃s.

78. *Lequel* is occasionally used as an adjective: *dix francs, laquelle somme* —, *ten francs, which sum* —.

79. The relative pronoun *quoi* is disjunctive, and used only after an indefinite antecedent, as, *ce à quoi je pense; voilà de quoi je désire vous parler; «Merci, monsieur!» «Il n'y a pas de quoi!»*

80. *Que* is used in clauses after *c'est . . .* to replace any complement, indirect as well as direct: *c'est de vous que je parle*, i.e. *je parle de vous*, *que*=*de vous*; *c'est à votre frère que je donne ce livre*, i.e. *je donne ce livre à votre frère*, *que*=*à votre frère*; *ce fut un grand jour que (fut) celui de ma première communion*, *que*=*un grand jour*. The effect of the *c'est . . . que* construction is to bring out the complement with great emphasis.

### EXERCISE XXXIII

Using the *c'est . . . qui, c'est . . . que* construction, translate:

1. *I say so.*
2. *I am speaking of her, and not (non) of her brother.*
3. *I bring it for you.*
4. *She is looking for you.*
5. *She is looking for you.*
6. *He lives in that house.*
7. *They desire those oranges.*
8. *They desire those oranges.*

---

*Pronounce:* di frā, lakel sòm.

sə a kwa ʒə pā:s. vwala də kwa ʒə dezi:r vu parle. mersi, məsjø.  
il nja pa də kwa.

sə də vu kə ʒə parl; set a votr frɛ:r kə ʒə dən sə livr.

sə fyt œ grā ʒu:r kə səlyi də ma prəmje:r kəmynjā.

## EXERCISE XXXIV

## I. (a) Distinguish between

Le chien qui nous regarde	and	Le chien que nous regardons.
La dame qui voit M. Duval	and	La dame que voit M. Duval.
La bête qui vous porte	and	La bête que vous portez.

## (b) Fill blanks with the proper ending:

Mes amis que je cherch—	Mes amis qui me cherch—
Le monsieur qui vous invit—	Le monsieur que vous invit—
Ceux que nous respect—	Ceux qui nous respect—

## (c) Fill blanks with relative pronouns:

Il n'aime ni ceux — il trompe ni ceux — le trompent.  
 Ceux — vous suivez n'en savent pas plus que ceux — vous  
 suivent. Ce — vous pensez m'intéresse beaucoup plus que ce  
 — vous dites. Dites-moi ce — vous amuse, et je vais vous  
 dire ce — vous êtes. Les livres — nous plaisent sont ceux  
 — nous achetons. L'homme — est malhonnête n'est pas  
 celui — il faut imiter. Si vous parlez de Jean en pensant à  
 Marie, celui — vous parlez n'est pas celle à — vous pensez.  
 Assez souvent ce — nous parlons n'est pas ce à — nous  
 pensons. Ce monsieur là-bas est celui — vous cherchez.  
 Cette petite — joue là-bas est celle — le frère est malade.

*Pronounce:* lə ʃjē ki nu rəɡard; lə ʃjē kə nu rəɡardə. la dam ki  
 vwa məsjø dyval; la dam kə vwa məsjø dyval. la bɛt ki vu pɔrt;  
 la bɛt kə vu pɔrtə.

mez ami kə ʒə ʃɛʁʃ; mez ami ki mə ʃɛʁʃ. lə məsjø ki vuz ɛvit; lə  
 məsjø kə vuz ɛvit. sə kə nu rɛspɛktə; sə ki nu rɛspɛkt.

il nɛm ni sə kil trɔ:p ni sə ki lə trɔ:p. sə kə vu sɥivɛ nɑ saiv pa  
 ply kə sə ki vu sɥiv. sə kə vu pɑsɛ mɛtɛrɛs boku ply kə skə vu dit.  
 dit mwa ski vuz amɥz, ɛ ʒə vɛ vu diʁ skə vuz ɛt. lɛ li:vʁ ki nu  
 plɛ:z sɔ sə kə nuz aʃɛtə. lɔm ki ɛ malɔnɛt nɛ pa sɛlɥi kil fot imite.  
 si vu parlɛ də ʒɑ ũ pɑsɑ ta mari, sɛlɥi dɔ vu parlɛ nɛ pa sɛl a ki vu  
 pɑsɛ. asɛ suvɑ sɑ dɔ nu parlɔ nɛ pa sɑ a kwa nu pɑsɔ. sə məsjø la  
 ba ɛ sɛlɥi kə vu ʃɛʁʃɛ. sɛt pɛtit ki ʒu la ba ɛ sɛl dɔ lə frɛr ɛ malad.



Ce petit — vous voyez est celui — je vous parle. Celle — chante est la dame — vous trouvez la voix si belle. Prêtez-leur les outils — ils ont besoin. Ce pauvre homme n'a pas de — vivre. «Merci, monsieur!» «Il n'y a pas de —!» Il ne sait pas de — il se mêle.

## II. Translate into French:

The bed on which he sleeps; the boy of whom we are thinking; the lady of whom they are speaking; the book in which she is reading; the oranges of which you are thinking; the roses of which he is speaking.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

**81.** *Qui dit cela? Qui regardez-vous? De qui parle-t-il? Qu'est-ce qui fait ce bruit? Que veut-il? De quoi parle-t-elle?*

The uninflected interrogative pronouns are

(a) Referring to persons, sometimes to animals,

*Qui*, used in all constructions.

(b) Referring to things,

*Qu'est-ce qui*, as subject of the verb,

*Que*, direct object of a verb or predicate nominative,

*Quoi*, disjunctive or stressed.

*Pronounce:* sə pəti kə vu vwaje e selʒi dɔ ʒə vu parl. sel ki ʃɑ:t e la dam dɔ vu truve la vwa si bel. prete lœ:r lez uti dɔt ilz ɔ bəzwɛ. sə po:vr əm na pa də kwa vi:vr. mɛrsi, mɛsjɔ. il nja pa də kwa. il nə se pa də kwa il sə mɛ:l.

ki di səla? ki rɛgarde vu? də ki parl til? kɛski fɛ sə brʒi? kə vɔt il? də kwa parl tɛl?

## EXERCISE XXXV

(a) Fill blanks with interrogative pronouns:

— vive? — dit-il? — remue là-bas? — voyez-vous? — va là? — nous regarde? — regardons-nous? — vous écoute? — écoutez-vous? De — parlez-vous? A — pensez-vous? A — s'occupe-t-il? Pour — apportez-vous cette poupée? — vous rend si triste?

(b) Translate:

- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1. Who does it?            | 10. Who prevents you from doing (de faire) that? |
| 2. What does it?           | 11. What prevents you from doing that?           |
| 3. What do you see?        | 12. What are you talking about?                  |
| 4. Whom do you see?        | 13. Of whom are you speaking?                    |
| 5. Who sees her?           | 14. What are you thinking of?                    |
| 6. Whom does she see?      | 15. Of whom are you thinking?                    |
| 7. What does she see?      |  |
| 8. Who is running yonder?  |  |
| 9. What is running yonder? |  |

82. *Lequel de ces livres voulez-vous?*

*Lesquels de ces crayons sont à vous?*

*Laquelle de ces cartes est la plus belle?*

«*Veillez m'apporter ces plumes.*» «*Lesquelles?*»

When a particular substantive is in mind, either already used or immediately following in a phrase beginning with **de**, an interrogative pronoun referring thereto must be the inflected pronoun **lequel**. The first syllable contracts with **à** or **de**, giving **auquel**, **duquel**, **desquels**, etc.

---

*Pronounce:* ki virv? kə diti? keski rəmy la bə? ki vwaje vu? ki va la? ki nu rəgard? kə rəgardə nu? ki vuz ekut? ki ekute vu? də kwa parle vu? a kwa pəse vu? a kwa səkyp ti? pur ki apərtə vu set pupe? keski vu rū si trist?

ləkel də se livr vule vu? ləkel də se krəjə sət a vu? lakel də se kart ə la ply bel? vœje mapərtə se plym. ləkel?

## EXERCISE XXXVI

## I. (a) Fill blanks with interrogative pronouns:

— de ces deux plumes voulez-vous? — de ces messieurs est son père? — sont ses oncles? — de ces dames est votre mère? — sont vos tantes? — de ces deux dessins donnez-vous la préférence? — de ces deux crayons avez-vous besoin?

(b) Ask, in French, questions to be answered by the words in italics:

1. *Pierre* lit. 2. Il lit *un livre*. 3. Il lit *le livre de Paul*.  
4. *Marie* est assise. 5. Elle est assise sur *une chaise*. 6. *L'arbre* tombe. 7. Il tombe près de *la maison*. 8. *Henri* pense. 9. Il pense à *sa mère*. 10. Il pense à *ses jouets*. 11. Ce jardin est à *mon oncle*. 12. *La pomme* est rouge. 13. *Cet arbre* porte des noix.

## II. Translate:

1. Which one of those pens do you wish?
2. Of which ones are you speaking?
3. Look at those men yonder! Which ones?
4. To which one of those cities is he going?
5. Of which is he speaking?
6. Of which is he thinking?
7. I like that picture. Which one?
8. Of which one are you thinking?
9. Of which one are you speaking?
10. Please close the window! Which one?

83. Qui est-ce qui pleure? Qui est-ce que vous appelez?  
Qu'est-ce qu'il dit? Qu'est-ce (que c'est) que cela (ça)?

*Pronounce:* pjɛr li. il lit œ li:vɾ. il li lə li:vɾ də pəl. mari et asi:z. ɛl et asi:z syr yn ʃe:z. larbr tɔ:b. il tɔb prɛ də la mɛzɔ. ɑri pɑ:s. il pɑ:s a sa mɛ:r. il pɑ:s a sɛ ʒwɛ. sɑ ʒardɛ et a mɔ nɔ:kl. la pɔm ɛ ru:ʒ. sɛt arbr pɔrt də nwa.

ki ɛs ki plœ:r? ki ɛs kə vuz apɔlɛ? kɛskil di? kɛskɔsɛkɔs(l)a?

In conversation periphrastic forms are common instead of the simpler **qui** or **que**. In these, the last **qui** or **que** is a relative pronoun; the first is an interrogative predicate nominative; any intermediate **que** is a relative predicate nominative; **ce** is subject of **être** and antecedent of the relative.

### INDEFINITES

**84.** A considerable class of words, some of them pronouns and some adjectives or adverbs, refer to no clearly defined person or thing, and so are called *indefinites*. They can best be learned from text or dictionary. The most common are:

**85. On.** Third singular subject pronoun, translated *I, we, you, they, people, folks, someone*, etc. Used whenever the speaker does not care to specify definitely who acts; especially frequent where English uses the passive voice: **on dit, it is said, they say, people say; on parle français, French is spoken.** Its corresponding object-pronoun is **vous, cela vous dégoûte, that disgusts one.**

The form **l'on** is commonly used instead of **on** after **et, ou, si, que**, unless the next word begins with **l**, as, **on fera ce que l'on voudra, they will do what they please.**

### EXERCISE XXXVII

Translate:

1. English is spoken.
2. She is often seen.
3. People don't say that.
4. That isn't done in France.

---

*Pronounce:* ɔ̃ di. ɔ̃ parl fr̥ɥse. sɛla vu degut. ɔ̃ fɛra skə lɔ̃ vudra.

5. People are looking at you.
6. Those things vex (*agacer*) one.
7. May one enter?
8. That is done every day in the United States.

**86.** *Quelque*, *some*; the plural *quelques* and the plural pronouns *quelques-uns*, *quelques-unes* are often translated *a few*. Note that *quelque* is affirmative; the negatives *aucun*, *pas un*, *nul*, meaning *no*, usually have *pas de* as their plural. Compounds of *quelque* are *quelqu'un*, *someone*, with its negative *ne . . . personne*; *quelque chose*, *something*, negative *ne . . . rien*; *quelquefois*, *sometimes*, negative *ne . . . jamais*. As a pronoun *personne* is masculine: *personne n'est plus adroit que lui*.

**87.** The indefinite adjective *chaque*, *each*, gives pronoun *chacun*.

The (reflexive) disjunctive referring to the indefinite subject of a verb is *soi*, as, *chacun pense à soi*. In modern French it is used only of an indefinite or general antecedent: *chacun travaille pour soi*, [*Jean travaille pour lui(-même)*]; *il ne faut pas trop parler de soi*, *one should not speak too much about himself*, [*Marie parle trop d'elle (-même)*].

**88.** The reciprocal pronouns *l'un* and *l'autre* are used together in many elliptical expressions, *l'un* being the subject and *l'autre* the complement of an omitted verb. *Ils se regardent l'un (regarde) l'autre*. *L'un et l'autre (both)*, *l'un ou l'autre*, *ni l'un ni l'autre*, *l'un (de, à, pour, etc.)*

---

*Pronounce:* ʃakœ pūs a swa. ʃakœ trava:j pur swa. ʒũ trava:j pur lui (mœ:m). il nə fo pə trə parle də swa. mari parl trə del (mœ:m.)

il sə rəɡard læ lotr. læ ne lotr; læ nu lotr; ni læ ni lotr.

*l'autre* are frequent combinations with obvious meanings. Both pronouns are plural if the sense requires, thus *l'un l'autre*, *each other*, would be used of two, while *les uns les autres*, *one another*, would be used where each group contains more than one.

### 89. Other indefinites are

<i>autre</i> , <i>other</i>	<i>certain</i> , <i>certain</i>
<i>autrui</i> , <i>others</i>	<i>différent</i> , <i>different</i>
<i>divers</i> , <i>various</i>	<i>maint</i> , <i>many</i> (a)
<i>même</i> , <i>self, same, very, even</i>	<i>plusieurs</i> (invariable), <i>several</i>
<i>quelconque</i> , <i>whatever</i>	<i>tel</i> , <i>such</i>
<i>tout</i> (m. plu. <i>tous</i> ), <i>all, every</i>	

(a) *Autre* means *other* in the sense of different; *other* in the sense of *more* is *encore*: *encore une orange*, *one more orange*; *encore des plaintes*, *more complaints*; *encore trois plumes*, *three more pens*.

In connection with *nous* or *vous*, as, *nous autres Américains*, *we Americans*, *vous autres Français*, *you Frenchmen*, *autre* is used simply to emphasize a distinction, and is not translated.

(b) *Autrui* is used only as the complement of a verb or of a preposition: *il faut aimer autrui*, *we should love others*; *le bien d'autrui*, *other people's property*.

(c) *Même*, used adverbially, is invariable, as, *les enfants même*, *the very children* or *even the children*; otherwise it agrees, as adjective or pronoun, with its substantive: *eux-mêmes*, *themselves*; *les mêmes enfants*, *the same children*; *ce sont les mêmes*, *they are the same ones*.

---

*Pronounce:* ākō:r yn ɔrū:ʒ; ākō:r də plēit; ākō:r trwa plym.  
 nuz otrz amerikē; vuz otr frāse.  
 il fot eme otrɔi; lə bjē dotrɔi.  
 lez āfā mē:m; ɔ mē:m; le mē:maz āfā; sə sɔ le mē:m.

(d) **Plusieurs** is either masculine or feminine: **plusieurs hommes et plusieurs femmes**.

(e) **Quelconque** follows its noun: **un livre quelconque**, *any book whatever, any sort of book*.

(f) Unlike the English word *such*, **tel** has the usual position of an adjective, and comes after the article: **une telle femme**, *such a woman*; **de tels hommes**, *such men*. It has various idiomatic meanings: **monsieur un tel**, *Mr. So and So*; **tel père tel fils**, *like father, like son; as the father, so is the son*; **tel rit, tel pleure**, *one man laughs, another cries*; **tel rit aujourd'hui qui pleurera demain**, *many a man laughs to-day who will cry to-morrow*; **je le prends tel quel**, *I take it such as it is*.

(g) **Tout** precedes the article: **tout le monde**, *everybody*; **toute la ville**, *the whole city*; **tout un peuple**, *a whole nation*; **tous les enfants**, *all the children*. **Tous**, when a pronoun, has the final **s** pronounced: **je les ai tous aimés**, *I have loved them all*.

As a substantive, **tout** means *all, everything, or the whole*: **tout est perdu**; **il veut tout**; **le tout est plus grand qu'une partie quelconque**, *the whole is greater than any portion whatever*.

### EXERCISE XXXVIII

Translate:

- I. 1. Il commence tout sans rien achever.
2. Il chancelle quelquefois, mais ne tombe jamais.
3. Quelques-uns sont blessés, mais personne n'est mort.
4. Avez-vous vu quelquechose? — Rien!

---

*Pronounce:* plyzjæ:rz ɔmz e plyzjæ:r fam.

œ livr kɛlkɔk.

yn tɛl fam; də tɛlz ɔm; mɔsjø œ tɛl; tɛl pɛ:r, tɛl fis; tɛl ri, tɛl plœ:r; tɛl rit ɔʒurdʒi ki plœ:rɛra dɛmɛ; ʒə lə prɑ tɛl kɛl.

tu lə mɔ:d; tut la vil; tut œ pœpl; tu lɛz ɑfɑ. ʒə lɛz e tus eme.  
tut e pɛrɔdʒ; il vø tu; lə tut e ply grɑ kyn parti kɛlkɔk.

5. Chante-t-il quelquefois? — Jamais!
6. Ils se regardent les uns les autres.
7. Ils se pardonnent l'un à l'autre.
8. Ils disent du bien l'un de l'autre.
9. Ces pommes me coûtent cinq sous chacune.
10. Prenez cette plume, j'en ai encore trois.
11. Telle est sa bonté qu'il se fait aimer de tous.
12. Pourquoi portez-vous de tels souliers?

- II. 1. One can't (**ne saurait**) think of everything.
2. It is said that no one is perfect.
  3. All languages are spoken here.
  4. All the children are asking for another story.
  5. Tell them a few more, Mary.
  6. Here are a few apples; does anyone wish them?
  7. He has no money, not a cent.
  8. Nobody speaks, everybody is silent.
  9. We have something for you, but we have nothing for him nor for her.
  10. Be silent at times, but never lie.
  11. I hear someone yonder, but I see no one.
  12. Every man looks at his neighbor without saying anything. (Is the thought affirmative or negative here?)
  13. They speak of each other, they think of each other, they work for each other, they love each other.
  14. Neither one likes me, and I detest them both.
  15. Several of these sentences have the same mistakes.
  16. Don't desire other people's property (**le bien**).
  17. Such a man, such a woman, and such children are not found (**rencontrer**) every day.
  18. Many a man shouts, "Each for himself!" without adding (**ajouter**) "and God for all!"
  19. I find in it (**y**) certain things which displease me.
  20. They have different talents and are of divers opinions.



## CHAPTER IV

PAST AND FUTURE TENSES OF THE  
INDICATIVE

**90.** In French the past tense commonly used in conversation is formed by using a past participle with the present tense of **avoir** or **être**, as, **j'ai écrit**, *I wrote*, **je suis venu**, *I came*. The tense is called the *past indefinite*. A tense which, like the past indefinite, is formed by using a past participle with an auxiliary verb (**avoir** or **être**) is called a *compound* tense. Tenses formed of a single word, like the French present indicative, are called *simple* tenses. Since the past indefinite is formed with the present tense of the auxiliary, it is sometimes called the "compound of the present." The past indefinites of **rompre** and of **aller** are

j'ai rompu	nous avons rompu	je suis allé	nous sommes allés
tu as rompu	vous avez rompu	tu es allé	vous êtes allés
il a rompu	ils ont rompu	il est allé	ils sont allés
elle a rompu	elles ont rompu	elle est allée	elles sont allées

**91.** Marie est *venue* avec son frère.

Ils sont *allés* à la poste.

J'ai *vu* la maison que Charles a *achetée*.

J'ai des poires; mon père me les a *apportées*.

Elle s'est *acheté* des gants.

Elle a *perdu* les gants qu'elle s'est *achetés*.

Except in the case of reflexive verbs, a past participle conjugated with **être** agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb.

A past participle conjugated with **avoir**, and the past participle of a reflexive verb, agree in gender and number

with a preceding direct object. If there is no direct object, or if the direct object follows the past participle, the past participle remains invariable. The principle seems to be that a substantive so impresses its gender and number on the mind as to cause a following past participle, directly relating to it, to take the corresponding form.

In Old French the past participle of reflexive verbs agreed with the subject, and the agreement in cases like **elle s'est souvenue de, ils se sont aperçus de, ces maisons se sont bâties rapidement** is undoubtedly a survival of old usage and shows agreement with the subject.

**92.** Most verbs are conjugated with **avoir**; those conjugated with **être** are

1. All reflexive verbs, as, **s'asseoir, se laver les mains**, etc.
2. Some intransitive verbs, most of them expressing change of place, as, **aller, arriver, entrer, sortir, partir, monter, descendre, tomber, rester; venir** and its compounds; **naître** and **mourir**.

### EXERCISE XXXIX

(a) Write the past indefinite tense of the verbs just mentioned as conjugated with **être**; also of the other verbs in §§ 38, 44, 45, and 48.

(b) Change the following from present to past time, beginning, «**Ce matin Pierre s'est levé . . .**»

Pierre se lève de bonne heure, il va à la fenêtre, il remonte le store, il regarde le ciel et il écoute un peu les oiseaux. Puis il verse de l'eau dans la cuvette, il se lave les mains et la figure et il se brosse les dents et les cheveux. Il s'habille bien vite, il met ses souliers, il prend son chapeau, il descend l'escalier et il va faire un petit tour au jardin avant de déjeuner.

Repeat, substituting for **Pierre, Marie, je, tu, vous, nous.**

Repeat, substituting **Paul et Henri** for **Pierre**. Repeat, substituting **Marie et Louise** for **Pierre**.

Note that certain verbs like **remonter** and **descendre** are sometimes transitive and sometimes intransitive. What difference does this make in the auxiliary verb?

- 93.**            **Comme elle parlait, Paul entra.**  
                   *As she was speaking, Paul entered.*

Besides the past indefinite, to express action in past time the French have in the indicative two simple tenses, the *imperfect* (**parlait**) and the *past definite* (**entra**).

**94.** The imperfect indicative may be formed by changing the ending **-ant** of the present participle into **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient**. Thus the imperfect indicative of **finir**, present participle **finissant**, is

<b>finissais</b>	<b>finissions</b>
<b>finissais</b>	<b>finissiez</b>
<b>finissait</b>	<b>finissaient</b>

The imperfect indicative of **écrire**, present participle **écrivant**, is

<b>écrivais</b>	<b>écrivions</b>
<b>écrivais</b>	<b>écriviez</b>
<b>écrivait</b>	<b>écrivaient</b>

The imperfect indicative is used to express a past action which the speaker wishes to represent as customary, repeated, or continuous. It paints the background of a word-picture, describing the permanent features upon which successive events stand out. It has been called the "descriptive past." It shows neither the beginning

nor the end of the action, which appears as in a frame that hides beginning and end, showing only a period of continuance. So in the illustrative sentence, we perceive neither that she began to speak nor that she ceased speaking, but merely her continuing to speak at the moment when Paul entered. It provides the descriptive background on which Paul's entrance stands out vividly.

### EXERCISE · XL

Write the imperfect indicative of the verbs in §§ 38, 44, 45, and 48.

**95.** The only common verbs whose imperfect indicatives do not follow the rule of formation are **avoir** and **savoir**. Learn the first singulars as **avais** and **savais**, and write the tenses, the endings being always regular.

**96.** The first singular past definite is the fifth principal part. In **-er** verbs it ends in **-ai**, in all other verbs, in **-s**. The rest of the tense may be formed by substituting successively the proper endings, the endings of the tense being

in **-er** verbs, **-ai**, **-as**, **-a**, **-âmes**, **-âtes**, **-èrent**;  
in all other verbs, **-s**, **-s**, **-t**, **^mes**, **^tes**, **-rent**.

Note that in the first and second persons plural, the stressed vowel always has the circumflex accent.

### EXERCISE XLI

Write the past definite of the verbs in §§ 38, 44, 45, and 48.

**97.** The past definite is distinctly a "book tense," and is said by Paul Passy to be "absolutely dead in the spoken language of Northern France."<sup>1</sup> Conversation and familiar correspondence use instead the past indefinite.

The past definite expresses a past act entirely performed within the period of past time that we are considering. We see the act begun, performed, and finished; and the tense often calls especial attention to the beginning, so much so that it has been called an inceptive tense. It is also called the "past historical," and the "narrative past," from its frequent use in historical and narrative passages. It is also called the "simple past" (*passé simple*) in contrast to the "compound past" (*passé composé*) or past indefinite. It is used in series, where each verb is a link in the chain of events that follow in succession, each action beginning and ending before the next begins. The inceptive force appears in such expressions as

**Il eut, he received or obtained, i.e. began to have.**

**Il sut, he learned, i.e. began to know.**

**Il s'en fut, he went off, i.e. began to be away.**

Note the "links" in such a series as

«Il prit son parti, tourna son pied droit autour de son pied gauche, se dressa sur son pied gauche, et étendit le bras . . . ; mais au moment où il touchait le mannequin, son corps, qui n'avait plus qu'un pied, chancela sur l'esca-beau, qui n'en avait que trois; il voulut s'appuyer au mannequin, perdit l'équilibre, et tomba.» (Victor Hugo.) "*He made his decision, twisted his right foot around his left, rose upon*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Dictionnaire phonétique de la langue française*, by H. Michaelis and P. Passy. *Introduction*, p. xiv.: «passé défini; temps absolument mort dans le langage parlé des Français du Nord.»

*his left foot, and stretched out his arm . . .; but at the moment when he was touching the dummy, his body, poised upon one foot, tottered upon the three-legged stool; he tried to support himself by the dummy, lost his balance, and fell."*

In the following description of what happened at the climax of the Reign of Terror, compare the imperfects that tell what had been customary, with the past definites that tell what began to be the state of affairs:

**«On observait encore quelques formes; on les supprima. Les accusés avaient des défenseurs; ils n'en eurent plus. On les jugeait individuellement; on les jugea en masse. Les jurés avaient pour règle de leur détermination la loi; ils n'eurent plus que leur conscience.»** (Mignet.) *"They still were accustomed to observe certain forms, these they suppressed; the accused were formerly allowed attorneys, they had them no longer; they had been tried separately, now they were tried in a body; the juries had been basing their decision upon the law, now they consulted only their own consciences."*

## EXERCISE XLII

(a) Use the proper tense, imperfect or past definite, of the verbs indicated:

Le vaisseau l'Orion (*être*) mouillé près de l'Arsenal. Un matin la foule qui le (*contempler*) (*être*) témoin d'un accident. Un gabier (*perdre*) l'équilibre. On le (*voir*) chanceler, la multitude (*jeter*) un cri, la tête (*emporter*) le corps, l'homme (*tourner*) autour de la vergue, (*saisir*) au passage le faux marchepied et y (*rester*) suspendu. La mer (*être*) au-dessous de lui à une profondeur vertigineuse. L'homme (*aller*) et (*venir*) au bout du marchepied comme la pierre d'une fronde.

Aller à son secours, c'(*être*) courir un risque effrayant. Aucun des matelots n'(*oser*) s'y aventurer. Cependant le mal-

heureux gabier se (*fatiguer*); on ne (*pouvoir*) voir son angoisse sur son visage, mais on (*distinguer*) dans tous ses membres son épuisement. Ses bras se (*tordre*). Il ne (*crier*) pas de peur de perdre de la force. On n'(*attendre*) plus que la minute où il lâcherait la corde.

Tout à coup, on (*apercevoir*) un homme qui (*grimper*) dans le gréement avec l'agilité d'un chat-tigre. Cet homme (*être*) vêtu de rouge, c'(*être*) un forçat; il (*avoir*) un bonnet vert, c'(*être*) un forçat à vie. Un coup de vent (*emporter*) son bonnet et (*laisser*) voir une tête toute blanche; ce n'(*être*) pas un jeune homme.

En un clin d'œil il (*être*) sur la vergue. Il s'(*arrêter*) quelques secondes et (*paraître*) la mesurer du regard. Ces secondes, pendant lesquelles le vent (*balancer*) le gabier à l'extrémité d'un fil, (*sembler*) des siècles à ceux qui (*regarder*). Enfin le forçat (*lever*) les yeux au ciel et (*faire*) un pas en avant. La foule (*respirer*). On le (*voir*) parcourir la vergue en courant. Parvenu à la pointe, il y (*attacher*) un bout de la corde qu'il (*avoir*) apportée et (*laisser*) pendre l'autre bout, puis il se (*mettre*) à descendre avec les mains le long de cette corde, et alors, au lieu d'un homme suspendu sur le gouffre, on en (*voir*) deux.

(Adapted from Victor Hugo.)

Translation: The ship Orion was at anchor near the Arsenal. One morning the crowd which was watching it witnessed an accident. A topman lost his balance. They saw him totter, the crowd screamed, his head overbalanced his body, the man swung around the yard, seized the foot-rope as he fell, and hung there. Below him, at a dizzy depth, lay the sea. Like a stone in a sling, the man swung back and forth, at the end of the foot-rope.

To go to his assistance meant running a frightful risk. Not one of the sailors dared venture. Meanwhile the unlucky topman was growing tired; they could not see the agony on his face, but exhaustion was manifest in every limb. His arms twisted. He did not shout for fear of losing strength. Men looked for the moment when he would let go the rope.

Suddenly a man was seen climbing up the rigging with the agility of a tiger-cat. This man was dressed in red, he was a convict; he wore a green cap, he was in for life. A gust blew off his cap and showed a head quite white; he was not a young man.

In a twinkling he was on the yard. He stopped a few seconds, and seemed to be measuring it with his eye. These seconds, during

which the wind swayed the topman at the end of his thread, seemed centuries to those watching. At last the convict looked up and took a step forward. The crowd breathed again. They saw him run along the yard. Reaching the end, he made fast to it one end of the rope he had brought; let the other hang, then began to go down the rope hand over hand. Then instead of one man, two were seen hanging over the abyss.

(b) Translate into French:

A poor topman was climbing into the rigging when he lost his balance and fell. The crowd that was watching him uttered a cry. The man caught the foot-rope as he passed it, but he had not the strength to pull himself up (**se hisser**) as far as the yard. As he swung back and forth at the end of the foot-rope, a convict seized a rope and in a twinkling they saw him on the yard. He was dressed in red; he had a ~~green~~ cap; people recognized (**reconnaître**) that he was a life-convict. For a few seconds he seemed to be hesitating (**hésiter**); at last he made up his mind and ran along the yard. The unhappy topman was getting tired; he was not screaming, but one saw his agony in (**sur**) his face. The convict tied his rope to the yard, went down the rope hand over hand, securely lashed (**amarrer solidement**) the topman's body, got up again (**remonter**) on the yard, hauled (**haler**) the sailor up (**y**), seized him in his arms, and carried him to (**dans**) the cross-trees (**la hune**) where he left him in the hands of his comrades.

## FUTURE INDICATIVE

98. Je *lirai* ce livre demain.

Quand vous y *arriverez*, vous vous *coucherez* aussitôt.  
S'il arrive ce soir, il *recevra* notre lettre.

The future tense in French is formed by adding to the infinitive **-ai**, **-as**, **-a**, **-ons**, **-ez**, **-ont** (the endings of the present indicative of the verb **avoir**). Verbs in **-oir** except **prévoir** and **pouvoir**, all in **-re**, and a few in **-ir** drop the vowel of the infinitive ending.



Thus the first singular futures of **donner**, **finir**, **devoir**, and **dire** are **donnerai**, **finirai**, **devrai**, and **dirai**. Let the pupil complete the tense in each case.

## EXERCISE XLIII

(a) Write the future tense of **recevoir**, **parler**, **rompre**, **mourir** (**mourr-**), **courir** (**courr-**), **boire**, **écrire**, **vivre**, **mouvoir**, and **prendre**.

(b) Translate, giving two translations for the English past tense:

1. I receive, I received (*two ways*); I was receiving; I shall receive.

2. (*Addressing a child*) You are speaking, you spoke, you were speaking, you will speak.

3. He is breaking, he broke, he was breaking, he will break.

4. She runs, she ran, she was running, she will run.

5. People die, they died, they were dying, one will die.

6. We drink, we drank, we were drinking, we shall drink.

7. You write, you wrote, you were writing, you will write.

8. They take, they took, they were taking, they will take.

**99.** Dropping the vowel of the infinitive ending sometimes brings together consonants that do not blend well, such as two liquids (**l**, **n**, **r**), and this requires further changes in the stem. Learn the first singular future of **aller**, **irai**; **asseoir**, **assiérai**; **avoir** and **savoir**, **aurai**, **saurai**; **conquérir**, **conquerrai**; **cueillir**, **cueillera**; **envoyer** and **voir**, **enverrai**, **verrai**; **être**, **serai**; **faire**, **ferai**; **pouvoir**, **pourrai**; [**falloir**], **valoir** and **vouloir**, [**faudra**], **vaudrai**, **voudrai**; **tenir** and **venir**, **tiendrai**, **viendrai**. Write the complete tense of each of these verbs. Which one has only the third person singular?

Adding the future endings to certain infinitives in **-er** gives a mute **e** in both penult and antepenult. In such cases, to avoid two successive mute syllables, the antepenult is regularly strengthened, either by the grave accent, as in **mènerai**, **gèlerai**, **achèterai**, or by doubling the following consonant, as in **jetterai**, **appellerai**. Write the future tense of each of these verbs; also of **peier** (**pèl-**), **semer**, **amener**, **promener**.

**100.** Dès qu'ils arriveront, nous partirons.

Quand vous viendrez chez nous, nous nous amuserons bien.

S'il pleut, nous n'irons pas chez eux.

Si vous voulez y aller, j'irai avec vous.

Subordinate clauses referring to future time take the future tense, except after **si**, meaning *if*, which requires the present or imperfect indicative (or their compound tenses).

**101.** Instead of the future tense, the present indicative of **aller** with a dependent infinitive is often used to express action in the immediate future, as, **elle va chanter**, *she is about to sing*; **nous allons partir**, *we are just going to start*.

### EXERCISE XLIV

(See text in § 97)

#### I. Using **aller**, translate:

1. The convict will fall from the yard.
2. He will let go the rope.
3. He will take a step forward.
4. He will go down that rope.
5. He will tie it to the yard.

## II. Translate:

1. When the topman lets go the rope, he will fall into the sea.
2. The crowd will breathe again when the convict takes a step forward.
3. As soon as the topman loses his balance, the crowd will scream.
4. As soon as he begins to go down you will see two men hanging over the abyss.
5. When he is on the yard, he will measure it with his eye.

Repeat, substituting *if* for *when* or *as soon as*.

## COMPOUND TENSES

**102.** For every simple tense there is a corresponding compound tense, formed by using the simple tense of an auxiliary with the past participle of the verb. We have already learned the past indefinite, formed with the present tense of the auxiliary. From the other tenses of the indicative we get

Compound of the imperfect, the pluperfect, *j'avais été, j'étais allé;*

Compound of the past definite, the past anterior, *il eut parlé, elle fut venue;*

Compound of the future, the future anterior, *j'aurai dit, je serai revenu.*

## EXERCISE XLV

Write the pluperfect tense of the verbs in § 38; the past anterior of the verbs in § 44; the future anterior of the verbs in § 45.

**103.** Il lit le livre que son père lui a donné.

Il lisait le livre que son père lui avait donné.

Il lira le livre que son père lui aura donné.

The compound tenses express action previous (anterior) to the time expressed by the corresponding simple tense. Thus the compound of the present expresses action previous to the present, at the present time entirely completed. So, if we were using the imperfect to tell of what was happening at noon yesterday, the compound of the imperfect would express action previous to noon yesterday, and at that time entirely completed; if we use the future tense with reference to noon to-morrow, the compound of the future will express action previous to noon to-morrow, action which, by noon to-morrow, will have been entirely completed.

Since the compound tenses all express *completed* action, action *continuing* at the time in mind must be expressed by a *simple tense*: *I have been here ten minutes (and am still here)* must be **je suis ici depuis dix minutes**, or, **il y a (voilà) dix minutes que je suis ici**; *I had been studying an hour*, implying that the speaker was still continuing to study, must be **j'étudiais depuis une heure**, or, **il y avait une heure que j'étudiais**.

**104.** The compound of the past definite, the past anterior, is but little used, and only

(a) after an adverb of time, in the subordinate clause of a complex sentence,

(b) expressing the less prominent of two acts,

(c) when the main verb is in the past definite.

Thus in the sentence, **quand Marie fut entrée, Jean ferma la porte**, the important statement is that John closed the door, Marie's having previously entered being mentioned incidentally; but if we said **quand Jean ferma la porte, Marie était entrée** the important statement would be that Marie had entered, after which John closed the

door. We note that the past anterior is in the subordinate clause introduced by the adverb of time, **quand**, and that the main verb is in the past definite. Unless the three conditions specified are all fulfilled, the compound of a past tense should be the pluperfect and not the past anterior.

### EXERCISE XLVI

(See text in § 97)

Translate:

1. When he had made his decision, he rose upon his right foot.
2. As soon as he had stretched out his hand, he lost his balance.
3. The crowd had been watching the topman for five minutes when the convict climbed up into the rigging.
4. The topman had been swinging back and forth for two minutes when the convict began to go down the rope hand over hand.
5. We have been studying French for three months.

### PASSIVE VOICE

**105.** Passive constructions when used in French correspond exactly to similar English constructions, the auxiliary being **être**, the past participle agreeing in gender and number with the subject of the verb, and the agent being introduced by **par** or **de**. **Par** is used commonly with the agent of a material act, and **de** with the agent of mental action: **elle est aimée de ses parents; ils furent vaincus par leurs ennemis.**

Formerly **de** was more generally used, and it still appears where the agency is expressed rather as incidental or descriptive than as having definite purpose, as, **suivi**

de ses trois enfants; un papier signé du roi; un arbuste battu des vents de mer; brûlé du soleil; autant vaut être mordu du chien que de la chienne (*as well be bitten by the dog as by his mate*).

On the other hand, to express vigorous, volitional agency **par** occurs where we might expect **de**, as, **haï par les grands, aimé par le peuple; estimé par les savants.**

### EXERCISE XLVII

Translate:

1. Those ladies are respected by all.
2. That invasion was dreaded by everyone.
3. Is he known to (**de**) you?
4. Do you fear to (**de**) be forgotten by us?
5. He will be punished by his father.
6. She will be punished for (**de**) her faults.
7. The topman was saved by the convict.
8. The rope will be broken by the sailor.

**106.** Passive constructions are less frequent in French than in English, being usually avoided by the use of **on** (see § 85), by the use of a reflexive verb (see § 60), or by turning the agent into the subject of an active verb, as, **ses affaires le retiendront à Paris**, instead of **il sera retenu à Paris par ses affaires.**

### EXERCISE XLVIII

Translate, not using the passive form in French:

1. The door is opened but no one is seen.
2. That isn't said; such expressions are avoided.
3. Has that book been translated?
4. I am told that his book is selling well (is selling itself well).

**107.** An English past passive participle dependent on a verb of causation or perception is rendered in French by an active infinitive with some indefinite subject understood, as, **je l'ai fait appeler**, *I have had him called*, i.e. *I have had (someone) call him*; **je l'ai vu frapper**, *I have seen him struck*, i.e. *I have seen (somebody) strike him*. The latter sentence may also mean *I have seen him strike* and should therefore be avoided where ambiguity might exist.

### EXERCISE XLIX

Translate:

1. Do you wish to have your shoes mended?
2. He has had that ugly dog killed.
3. I saw it burned.
4. Have you heard it said often?
5. Have them called at once.

## CHAPTER V

### VERB-FORMS OTHER THAN THE INDICATIVE

#### THE INFINITIVE

**108.** The infinitive is a word combining the functions of a verb and those of a noun; that is, it may have any construction that a noun may have, be subject or complement of a verb, or object of a preposition, while at the same time it expresses action. What is the construction of the following infinitives?

**Vouloir, c'est pouvoir.**

**Mieux vaut mourir que perdre l'honneur.**

**Il aimait mieux boire que manger.**

**Je ne crois pas pouvoir y aller.**

**Faites, sans raisonner.**

**109.** The simple (present) infinitive expresses action at the time referred to by the context; the compound (past) infinitive expresses action anterior to that of the main verb; hence after **après** the past infinitive is regularly used: **je jure de m'y trouver demain; après avoir dit cela, il sortit.**

For the preposition that sometimes introduces an infinitive, see §§ 202-219.

### EXERCISE L

Translate into French:

1. Knowledge is power.
2. Death is better than living without friends.
3. Do you like swimming better than skating?
4. He does not think he can come.
5. Go there at once, without answering him.
6. After going out, he called his friend.

### THE PARTICIPLE

**110.** A part of a verb that may modify a substantive, i.e. that combines the functions of the verb and of the adjective, "participating" in both, is called a participle.

The verb-form ending in **-ant**, generally called the present participle, includes forms and uses derived from the Latin gerund as well as those coming from the present participle. The gerund constructions include a considerable variety of circumstantial complements, and are frequently preceded by the preposition **en**. In elementary work, it does not seem wise to emphasize the distinction, as many students know no Latin, and are only concerned with the actual uses of the form which they know as the present participle. More advanced



students, especially those familiar with Latin, may prefer to divide the class of present participles into gerunds; present participles in the restricted sense of those derived from the Latin participle, still retaining verb-force, and commonly invariable; and verbal adjectives. The gerund (*gérondif*) is the *-ant* form used as an indefinite noun.

To express the less prominent of two acts done at the same time by the same subject, we commonly use the present participle, as,

**On apprend bien des choses en lisant.**

**«Parlez,» dit-elle, en le regardant.**

**Ouvrant les yeux, il vit son frère.**

The preposition **en**, the only one in French that governs the present participle, expresses a close connection between the participle and the main verb, such as is often indicated in English by *while, by, on, when*, etc.: **on devient soupçonneux en vieillissant**, *one becomes suspicious by growing old or as he grows old*.

The present participle may also refer to the direct object of a verb; and it is occasionally found in other constructions, as,

**On les trouve errant (or errants) dans les bois.**

**Lui chantant, personne ne bougera.**

**L'appétit vient en mangeant.**

**111.** English present participles expressing a position are generally translated by past participles in French, as, *sitting before a little table*, **assis devant une petite table**; *leaning against the wall*, **appuyé au mur**; *leaning from the window*, **penché à la fenêtre**; *hanging from the branches*, **suspendu aux branches**.

The present participle in similar sentences would express simultaneous action, not position, as, *s'asseyant devant une petite table*, *taking a seat in front of a small table*; *s'appuyant au mur*, *bracing himself against the wall*, etc.

**112.** English present participles are often translated by a relative clause, as, *I found him waiting for me*, *je le trouvai qui m'attendait*; *a sleeping child*, *un enfant qui dort*.

**113.** When a preceding substantive is described by a past participle, the adjective force usually predominates, and the participle, like other adjectives, takes the gender and number of the substantive, as,

*C'est une plume cassée.*

*Cette plume est cassée; c'est Jean qui l'a cassée.*

*Voilà la plume que Jean a cassée.*

*Combien de plumes avez-vous cassées?*

When no preceding substantive is described by a past participle, action outweighing description, the verbal force predominates and the participle is invariable, i.e. it does not change its form to agree in gender and number with any substantive, as,

*Marie n'a pas cassé la plume.*

*Combien avez-vous cassé de plumes?*

## EXERCISE LI

I. Substitute participles for the infinitives in parentheses.

Ce matin nous nous sommes (*lever*) de bonne heure, nous avons (*déjeuner*), nous sommes (*aller*) à la gare, nous avons (*prendre*) des billets pour Versailles, et après les avoir (*payer*),

nous sommes (*entrer*) dans la salle d'attente. Quand on a (*appeler*) les voyageurs, nous sommes (*sortir*), nous sommes (*monter*) dans le train, et nous avons (*présenter*) nos billets au contrôleur qui les a (*poinçonner*) et nous les a (*rendre*).

En (*arriver*) à Versailles, nous sommes (*descendre*) du train, nous avons (*remettre*) nos billets à la porte de sortie, et nous avons (*héler*) un cocher qui nous a (*conduire*) au palais, où nous avons beaucoup (*admirer*) ces magnifiques tableaux historiques que vous avez sans doute déjà (*voir*).

Repeat, substituting *Marie* for *nous*.

Repeat, substituting *Marie et Louise* for *nous*.

Repeat, substituting successively for *nous* the other subjective personal pronouns.

## II. Translate into French:

1. Close the door as you go out.
2. She broke her arm (**se casser le bras**) as she fell.
3. Saying that, she went away.
4. When I came in, I saw the flowers you had left for me.
5. He went to bed very late, and when he awoke he saw John writing a letter.

## THE CONDITIONAL

**114.** A tense formed by adding to the infinitive the endings of the imperfect indicative, **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient**, is called the *present conditional*. As in forming the future, verbs in **-oir** except **pourvoir** and **prévoir**, all in **-re**, and a few in **-ir**, drop the vowel of the infinitive ending. The tense might therefore be said to have the stem of the future and the endings of the imperfect indicative, a statement true for every verb in the language. The compound of the present conditional is called the past conditional.

x

## EXERCISE LII

Write the present conditional of the verbs of which the future was asked in §§ 98 and 99.

**115.** Study the tenses in the following sentences:

Pierre répond, «S'il pleut, je n'irai pas.»

Pierre répond que s'il pleut, il n'ira pas.

Pierre répondit que s'il pleuvait, il n'irait pas.

In the first sentence, the words of Pierre are quoted just as he spoke them; this is called *direct discourse*.

In the other two sentences, the substance of what Pierre replied appears, but introduced by the conjunction **que**, and with **je** changed to **il**. This is called *indirect discourse*. In the second sentence, the verb **répond** is in the present tense, and the tenses following are the same as in the direct quotation, present and future. In the third sentence, the verb introducing the indirect quotation, **répondit**, is a past definite, and the following tenses are not the same as in the direct discourse, the present indicative **pleut** changing to **pleuvait**, an imperfect; and the future **irai** changing to a conditional, **irait**. The past tenses, and usually the present conditional, require such a change in the tense of a subordinate verb, and are called *secondary* tenses. The present and future indicative require no change in the tense of a subordinate verb and are called *primary* tenses. Note that the English construction is quite similar to the French.

One of the two great uses of the conditional is to replace the future in subordinate clauses that depend upon a secondary tense. This conditional has been called the **futur dans le passé** and denotes action to follow a moment of past time, just as the future denotes action to follow the present moment.

## EXERCISE LIII

I. In the following sentences, change the main verb from present to past definite or imperfect indicative, and make necessary changes in the subordinate verbs:

1. Il répond qu'il nous en saura gré, tant qu'il vivra.
2. Je pense que celui qui a fait cela pourra bien faire davantage.
3. Ils savent que celui qui n'étudie pas, ne saura pas sa leçon.
4. Espérez-vous qu'ils viendront s'il fait beau temps?
5. Ils disent que nous serons les bienvenus si nous voulons leur faire visite.

What happens if we change the main verb to a future tense?

What happens if we change the main verb to a present conditional?

## II. Translate:

1. He did not believe she would come.
2. She kept saying that they would do it soon.
3. You knew you would be welcome.
4. Did you think we should be late?
5. We hoped he would find his watch again.

**116.** The second use of the conditional is its use in a *then* clause (*apodosis*) to tell what would be if . . . , implying non-fulfilment of a condition. The *if* clause (*protasis*) regularly has the imperfect indicative, or its compound (the pluperfect).

**Si vous étiez tombé** (but you did not fall), **vous vous seriez cassé la jambe** (but you did not), *if you had fallen, you would have broken your leg.* **Je voudrais bien le voir** (but I do not see him), *I should like to see him.* **Si Pierre venait, nous**

irions ensemble faire la pêche aux truites (but Peter has not come, and our trout fishing seems improbable), *if Peter should come, we should go trout fishing together.*

## EXERCISE LIV

I. Translate into French:

1. If we had apples, we should give you some.
2. If you had apples, should you give us any?
3. They would die if they ate those mushrooms.
4. If I had a carriage, I should go to Versailles.
5. He would come back to-morrow if it should rain.

II. Replace by the proper tense the infinitives in parentheses:

1. Si Paul mange des fruits verts, il (*être*) malade.
2. Si Paul mangeait des fruits verts, il (*être*) malade.
3. Si je vois votre frère, je lui (*donner*) de vos nouvelles.
4. Si je voyais votre frère, je lui (*donner*) de vos nouvelles.
5. Si les chats sont absents, les souris (*danser*).
6. Quand les chats (*être*) absents, les souris danseront.
7. Si les chats étaient absents, les souris (*danser*).

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE

**117.** Some statements it is well not to make too positive, either because our knowledge is incomplete, or because the nature of the fact makes it desirable not to declare it too positively. In subordinate clauses, French puts such statements in the subjunctive mode. In the following sentences

1. Je souhaite qu'il *retrouve* sa montre.  
*I wish him to find his watch.*
2. Je ne crois pas qu'il *vienne*.  
*I do not believe he is coming.*

3. **Je regrette qu'il soit malade.***I am sorry he is ill.*4. **Je suis heureux qu'il soit rétabli.***I am glad he is well again.*

**retrouve, vienne, and soit** are subjunctives. *I wish him to find his watch* — but I cannot tell positively that he will or will not; *I do not believe he is coming* — but cannot say positively that he is or is not; *I am sorry that he is ill* — but am reluctant to state positively so unpleasant a fact; *I am glad he is well again* — but hardly dare be too sure of it. The subjunctive seems always to imply some such mental reservation as, “so far as I can judge,” “if I am correctly informed,” “to the best of my knowledge,” “judging from appearances,” “yet I may be in error.”

**118.** The essential characteristics of the three great modes are, then,

Indicative, positiveness.

Conditional,

(a) in subordinate clauses, supplies a secondary tense for the future, “a future in the past,”

(b) in principal clauses, implies some unfulfilled condition.

Subjunctive, mental reservation, lack of positiveness in statement, absence of speaker's guarantee.

**119.** Some of the expressions which usually require the verb of a dependent clause to be in the subjunctive are

1. Expressions of wish, command, purpose, concession, approval, necessity, etc., in which the implication of futurity makes positive statement impossible. Events do

not always turn out as we wish, command, plan, or think right or necessary.

2. Expressions of emotion; perhaps because belief or sentiment, rather than fact, is recognized as the cause of emotions.

3. Negative or interrogative expressions implying uncertainty as to the statement in the subordinate clause.

4. Absolute negations, superlatives, and exclusives like **seul**, **unique**, **premier**, where a positive statement would imply omniscience.

5. Most impersonal expressions, like **il faut**, **il est bien**, etc., come under 1 or 2, and require a subjunctive unless a dependent infinitive is used.

In the following sentences the verbs in italics are in the subjunctive. Study them and tell why.

1. **Il est juste qu'il soit puni; il faut qu'il se conduise bien.**  
*It is right for him to be punished; he must behave well.*

2. **Je veux que vous disiez toujours la vérité.**  
*I wish you to speak the truth always.*

3. **Je crois qu'il est parti, mais je ne crois pas que sa sœur soit partie avec lui.**  
*I believe he has gone, but I do not believe that his sister went with him.*

4. **Je dis qu'il le fera, mais je ne dis pas qu'il le fasse volontiers.**  
*I say he will do it, but I do not say he will do it willingly.*

5. **C'est le meilleur homme que je connaisse.**  
*He is the best man that I know.*

**120.** In subjunctive clauses dependent on a primary tense (present or future) we use the present subjunctive or its compound (the past subjunctive), as in the five



preceding sentences. The present subjunctive may be formed by changing the *-ant* of the present participle into *-e*, *-es*, *-e*, *-ions*, *-iez*, *-ent*. The present subjunctive of *écrire*, present participle *écriv<sup>ant</sup>*, is therefore *écrive*, *écrives*, *écrive*, *écrivions*, *écriviez*, *écrivent*.

## EXERCISE LV

Write the present subjunctive of

donner, finir, rompre, connaître, lire, ouvrir, plaindre, conduire, savoir, s'asseoir, vivre.

**121.** In the singular and third plural of the present subjunctive the endings are mute, and the voice-stress (tonic accent) therefore comes on the stem, which in these persons usually strengthens its last vowel (*stem vowel*) whenever the first singular present indicative has a strengthened stem vowel. So in *mourir*, *mourant*, *meurs*; *venir*, *venant*, *viens*; *mener*, *menant*, *mène*; *céder*, *cédant*, *cède*; *devoir*, *devant*, *dois*; the close stem vowel of the present participle strengthens to an open vowel in the first singular of the present indicative; we therefore expect a similar strengthening in the mute-ending forms of the present subjunctives which are: *meure*, *meures*, *meure*, *mourions*, *mouriez*, *meurent*; *vienn<sup>e</sup>*, *viennes*, *vienn<sup>e</sup>*, *venions*, *veniez*, *viennent*; *mèn<sup>e</sup>*, *mènes*, *mèn<sup>e</sup>*, *menions*, *meniez*, *mènent*; *cèd<sup>e</sup>*, *cèdes*, *cèd<sup>e</sup>*, *cédions*, *cédiez*, *cèdent*; *doiv<sup>e</sup>*, *doives*, *doiv<sup>e</sup>*, *devions*, *deviez*, *doivent*.

## EXERCISE LVI

Write the present subjunctives of

recevoir, boire, acquérir, mouvoir, envoyer, fuir, prendre, concevoir, croire, apercevoir, voir. .

Note the following forms of **avoir**: **aie**, **ait**, **ayons**; and of **être**: **sois**, **soit**, **soyons**. What persons are these? Write the whole tense.

Two verbs, **faire** and **pouvoir**, have irregular stems **fass-** and **puiss-** throughout the tense. Write in full. The present subjunctive of **savoir** is formed in accordance with the rule, although the stem of the present participle, **sachant**, is peculiar.

Four verbs, **aller**, **falloir**, **valoir**, and **vouloir**, have a liquid **l** (ill) before mute endings in the present subjunctive, the third persons singular being **aille**, **faille**, **vaille**, and **veuille**. Which of the verbs occurs only in the third singular? Write the tense in full for the others.

**122.** In subjunctive clauses dependent on a secondary tense (past tenses, and regularly the present conditional), we use the imperfect subjunctive or its compound (the pluperfect subjunctive). The imperfect subjunctive may be formed for every verb in the language by changing the last letter of the first singular past definite into **-sse**, **-sses**, **-t**, **-ssions**, **-ssiez**, **-ssent**. In the five sentences at the end of § 119, if we used imperfect indicatives instead of present indicatives for the main verbs, we should have to change all the dependent subjunctives from presents to imperfects, and the sentences would become

1. Il était juste qu'il *fût* puni; il fallait qu'il se *conduisit* bien.
2. Je voulais que vous *dissiez* toujours la vérité.
3. Je croyais qu'il *était* parti; mais je ne croyais pas que sa sœur *fût* partie avec lui.
4. Je disais qu'il le *ferait*; mais je ne disais pas qu'il le *fît* volontiers.
5. C'était le meilleur homme que je *connusse*.

The forms of the imperfect subjunctive, especially those in -ss-, seem obnoxious to most Frenchmen and are almost invariably avoided in conversation. Instead of the "book French" of 5 a Frenchman might say, *c'était le meilleur homme de ma connaissance*, or *je ne connaissais pas de meilleur homme*, or *je ne connaissais personne de si bon que lui*.

## EXERCISE LVII

Write the imperfect subjunctives of the sixteen verbs in § 38.

**123.** The present subjunctive is used with the force of an imperative, expressing wish, exhortation, or command, in certain clauses introduced by **que** or some compound of **que**. These are sometimes regarded as clauses dependent on some verb of wish or command that is omitted; but historically many are independent constructions, coming from Latin subjunctives with imperative force. Thus,

(*Je veux, j'ordonne*) *Qu'il vienne!* *Let him come!*

(*Je serai content*) *Pourvu qu'on l'attrape!* *Only let them catch him!*

**124.** A few subjunctive forms, — **sois, puisse, veuille, garde, vive, plaise, plût, dût**, — are used without **que** in similar optative or imperative clauses:

*Plût à Dieu qu'il fût ici!* *Would to God that he were here!*

*Vive le roi!* *Long live the king!*

*À Dieu ne plaise!* *God forbid!*

*Ainsi soit-il!* *So let it be!*

**125.** A pluperfect subjunctive may be used in either clause of those conditional sentences that regularly have the pluperfect indicative in protasis and the past condi-

tional in apodosis. So instead of *s'il était venu plus tôt, on l'aurait pris*, we might find *fût-il (s'il fût) venu plus tôt, on l'eût pris*. Some grammarians call this a "secondary form of conditional," although it looks like a pluperfect subjunctive. This use is wholly literary.

## EXERCISE LVIII

(See text in § 97)

Translate into French:

1. I wish them to suppress these formalities.
2. I wish they would suppress these formalities.
3. They would suppress these formalities if they still observed them.
4. They would have suppressed these formalities if they had still observed them.
5. Let them suppress these formalities; do you wish us to observe them forever?
6. If he had made a decision, he would have raised himself upon his left foot.
7. Let him twist his left foot around his right foot.
8. It is unfortunate that the stool has but three legs.
9. It was unfortunate that the stool had but three legs.
10. I am sorry that he stretched out his arm.
11. I am sorry that he is losing his balance and falling.
12. I am sorry that he lost his balance and fell.
13. I was sorry for him to lose his balance and fall.
14. I was sorry that he had lost his balance and fallen.
15. Let him support himself by the dummy! God forbid that he fall!
16. The topman must seize the foot-rope.
17. The topman had to seize the foot-rope.
18. I am glad the topman seized the foot-rope.
19. I was glad the topman had seized the foot-rope.
20. The convict must climb up the rigging.

21. The convict had to climb up the rigging.
22. It is well the convict climbed up the rigging.
23. It was well the convict had climbed up the rigging.
24. The convict is the first who climbed up the rigging.
25. The convict was the first who had climbed up the rigging.
26. The topman is the only one who has fallen from the yard.
27. The topman was the only one who had fallen from the yard.
28. Let the topman go down the rope hand over hand.
29. Order the convict to go to his assistance.

## CHAPTER VI

MORE ABOUT SUBSTANTIVES AND THEIR  
SUBORDINATES

## GENDER OF NOUNS

**126.** The best way to master the gender of nouns is to associate each with an article that shows the gender, as, **un incendie, un lycée, une dent, une souris.** Most of the many rules sometimes given for gender are forgotten before they are used. The following appear to be the most helpful ones, and all that it is worth while for most students to memorize. Even to these there are many exceptions that must be learned by experience.

Assume a noun to be masculine, unless you know it to be feminine. The endings **-age, -ège, -aire, -iste, and -ice** are almost always masculine. Most feminines are included in the following classes:

1. Nouns denoting females.
2. Nouns derived from Latin feminines and from neuter plurals in **-a**.

## 3. Nouns ending in

-ace,	-ade,	-ude;	
-ale,	-ole,	-ule;	
-ise,	-ose,	-use;	
-ance,	-anse,	-ence,	-ense;
-ane,	-ine,	-ière,	-ure.

Learn these by pronouncing and by writing them. Learn as exceptions **un grade**, **un prélude**, **le silence**, **un murmure**.

4. Nouns ending in mute -e preceded by a vowel or a double consonant. Learn as exceptions **un lycée**, **un musée**, **un incendie**, **un génie**, **un parapluie**.

5. Nouns ending in -son or -ion, and abstracts in -té, -tié, -oire, and -eur. Learn as exceptions **le poison**, **le bonheur**, **le malheur**, **un honneur**, **le labeur**.

6. **Clef** (clé), **soif**; **faim**; **façon**, **leçon**, **rançon**; **fin**, **main**; **chair**, **cour**, **tour** (*tower*); **cuiller**, **mer**; **brebis**, **souris**, **oasis**, **vis**; **fois**; **dent**, **dot**, **forêt**, **mort**, **nuit**, **part**; **paix**, **chaux**, **faux**, **croix**, **noix**, **poix**, **voix**, **perdrix**, **toux**; **syllabe**, **justice**, **cage**, **image**, **nage**, **page**, **plage**, **rage**; **fanfare**, **guitare**, **lyre**; **neige**, **tige**; **fourmi**, **foi**, **loi**; **eau**, **peau**, **tribu**, **vertu** are also feminine. Study the nouns in a chapter of the text you are reading and see what per cent of them are explained by this section.

7. **Gens** is feminine; but combinations like **gens de lettres**, **jeunes gens**, **tous les gens sages** are masculine. Moreover, a pronoun referring to **gens**, and an adjective which begins its word-group or which follows **gens**, will usually be masculine: **ceux de ces bonnes gens que j'ai connus**; **instruits** or **instruites** **par l'expérience**, **les vieilles gens sont prudents** or **prudentes**.

**127.** Some nouns use an entirely different word for the feminine, as, **homme, femme; frère, sœur; oncle, tante; bouc, chèvre; taureau, vache;** others have a feminine derived from the same word, but slightly different in form, as, **empereur, impératrice; canard, cane; compagnon, compagne; serviteur, servante; loup, louve.** Many change the masculine ending to **-esse**, sometimes slightly modifying the stem of the word, as, **comte, comtesse; maître, maîtresse; prince, princesse; duc, duchesse; dieu, déesse; enchanteur, enchanteresse; pêcheur, pécheresse.**

**128.** Adjectives, and most nouns not coming under § 127, form their feminine

1. By adding **-e** to the masculine, as, **grand, grande; cousin, cousine; meilleur, meilleure;** but

Words ending in **-e** in the masculine, as **sage, artiste,** remain unchanged.

On adding **-e** for the feminine, the stem changes its final consonant as follows:

(a) **f to v: bref, brève; attentif, attentive; veuf, veuve.**

**x to s: heureux, heureuse; jaloux, jalouse; époux, épouse.**

**c to ch or qu: blanc, blanche; public, publique; turc, turque.**

**g to gu: long, longue.**

**n to gn: in bénin, bénigne; malin, maligne.**

**r to s: in adjectives in -eur like menteur, menteuse, trompeur, trompeuse,** which have the same stem as present participles in **-ant, mentant (mentir),** and **trompant (tromper).**

(b) Final **l, n, s,** and **t** are often doubled, especially after **e**, as, **cruel, cruelle; mortel, mortelle; gentil, gen-**

tille; nul, nulle; bon, bonne; chien, chienne;  
paysan, paysanne; gros, grosse; épais, épaisse;  
sot, sotté; poulet, poulette; chat, chatte.

Remember to write the grave accent over an *e* which ends its syllable and is followed by a mute syllable, as in *cher, chère; complet, complète; secret, secrète; étranger, étrangère; sec, sèche*.

2. By changing *-teur* to *-trice* if there be no present participle having the same stem and the ending *-ant*, as, *acteur, actrice; créateur, créatrice*; but *flatteur* gives *flatteuse*, since we have a present participle *flattant*. Note as exceptions *inspectrice, inventrice, executrice, persécutrice*.

3. By adding *-ine*, as, *tsar, tsarine; Victor, Victorine. Héros* drops *s*, forming *héroïne*.

**129.** Irregular forms are *favori, favorite; frais, fraîche; tiers, tierce; doux, douce; faux, fausse; grec, grecque*.

Note also the adjectives with two forms in the masculine singular mentioned in § 25. *Jumeau, jumelle*, has a feminine formed like that of *beau* and *nouveau*.

### EXERCISE LIX

Write the feminine of the following words:

*ami, jeune, cousin, frère, marquis, oncle, franc, actif, beau, frais, héros, gris, muet, prêt, pareil, lion, idiot, exprès, mou, ancien, vieux, dieu, berger, inquiet, favori, supérieur, empereur, directeur, vendeur, majeur, danseur, accusateur, chanteur.*

Write the masculine nouns corresponding to

*mère, femme, princesse, servante, compagne, ambassadrice, abbesse, tigresse, Suissesse, négresse.*



## INVARIABLE FORMS

**130.** Uninflected parts of speech, although used as substantives, proper nouns, certain adjectives like **demi**, **nu**, **plein**, **feu** when they precede their substantives, and adjectives used as adverbs, are usually invariable, as, **Les non étaient nombreux. Avez-vous vu les Duval? Elle était nu-pieds pendant une demi-heure** (but *une heure et demie*). **Elle parlait haut.** In many of these cases, and in the treatment of compound nouns and adjectives, usage allows considerable latitude; and common sense, guided by the principle that, except for the agreement of a verb with its subject, nouns and adjectives are the only proper variables, is the best substitute for that personal feeling for what is right which comes only with long and careful attention to good French models. Study the following sentences:

**Ces fleurs sentent bon, mais elles ne coûtent pas cher. Ce sont des sourds-muets. Elle était court-vêtue. Il trouva de jolies perce-neige. Ce sont des chefs-d'œuvre. Avez-vous un cure-dent? Lisez les cinquième et sixième chapitres.**

Certain words like **aurore**, **jonquille**, **marron**, **orange**, **paille**, **ponceau**, **pourpre** were originally nouns, hence when used to denote the color of an object, they remain invariable, the words **couleur de** being perhaps understood, as, **des rubans (couleur de) paille**, *straw-colored ribbons*; **des étoffes marron**, *brown cloths*.

Any word of color if modified by an adjective like **clair**, *light*, **foncé**, *dark*, is invariable, as, **des fleurs (d'un) bleu foncé**, **des robes jaune clair**.

**131.** Although used adverbially, **frais** in **fraîche cueillie**, **grand** in **grande ouverte**, and **tout** before a fem-

inine word beginning with a consonant are inflected like adjectives: **des fleurs fraîches cueillies; une fenêtre grande ouverte; elle était tout étonnée et toute confuse.**

### AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

**132.** An adjective referring to more than one substantive must be plural, and is masculine if either of the substantives is masculine. If the substantives are of different genders, it is desirable that the one nearest the adjective be masculine. **Marie et Jean sont arrivés. Cette viande et ces fruits sont bons.**

Two adjectives referring to the same substantive agree with it in gender; but if the thought of the adjective be singular it need not agree in number with a plural noun, as, **les nations anglaise et française.**

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

**133.** Except for the three adjectives **bon, meilleur, le meilleur; petit, moindre, le moindre; mauvais, pire, le pire;** and the corresponding adverbs **bien, mieux, le mieux; peu, moins, le moins; mal, pis, le pis** French adjectives and adverbs are compared by means of the adverbs **plus, aussi, and moins,** expressing respectively superiority, equality, and inferiority, as, **plus grand(e), taller; aussi grand(e), as tall; moins grand(e), not so tall.** The two terms of the comparison are always connected by **que,** although English uses sometimes *than* and sometimes *as*.

**Jean est plus studieux que Jules et aussi studieux que Pierre, mais il est moins studieux que Guillaume. Jean court plus vite que vous.**

**134.** In comparisons of inequality, the first clause being affirmative, a verb in the second clause is usually preceded by *ne*: *il est plus riche qu'il ne le paraît*, *he is richer than he seems*.

**135.** The superlative, in French, is merely the comparative made definite by prefixing the definite article or some limiting adjective, as, *tout est pour le mieux dans le meilleur des mondes*; *elle portait sa plus jolie robe*.

A phrase limiting a superlative, generally introduced in English by *in*, begins with *de* in French, as, *le plus grand arbre du jardin*, *the tallest tree in the garden*.

One definite article answers for both noun and adjective when the superlative precedes its noun, as, *la plus jolie fille de la classe*; but when the adjective follows its noun each must have its own definite article, as, *l'élève le plus studieux de la classe*; *les livres les plus intéressants que j'aie lus*.

#### EXERCISE LX

Translate:

1. Paris is the largest city in France, but London (*Londres*, *m.*) is larger than Paris.
2. London is the largest city in the world.
3. Is Berlin larger than Paris? No, Berlin is smaller (*less large*) than Paris.
4. The dog is man's most faithful friend.
5. That apple-tree is the tallest tree in the garden.
6. The pear-trees are as tall as the cherry-trees, and taller than the rose-bushes, but they are not so tall as (*are less tall than*) the walnut-trees.
7. I like roses better than pinks.
8. Which is the best of those grammars?
9. That one is easier than it appears.
10. That one is harder than you think it.

## USE OF THE ARTICLE

**136.** An article, or some limiting adjective, is the proper attribute of every French noun that is used with independent substantive force. When the noun loses its independent substantive force and blends with a verb into a verbal word-group like **avoir faim, prendre garde, faire attention**; or fades into a mere adverb or adjective as a modifier of a verb or of some more prominent substantive as **se mettre à table, monter à cheval, roi de France, un morceau de pain, un quart d'heure, il est avocat, sans peur**, etc., it loses its article.

Vagueness in the substantive concept, such for instance as characterizes its use with the preposition **en** or in a general negation, or mere adjective force, as in apposition, — **en France, pas de livres, Vivette, petite-fille du meunier**, etc., — allows the article to drop away. In many cases it is correct to use or to omit the article according to the degree of definite substantive force desired, as **par chemin de fer**, where the phrase has mere adverbial force, and **par le chemin de fer**, where we feel **chemin de fer** as a definite independent substantive.

Names of countries omit the article after **de** in common adjective phrases referring to the ruler, form of government, great institutions, and wars: **le royaume, le roi, la cour, le parlement d'Angleterre; l'Institut de France; les guerres d'Italie**; in adverbial phrases after **sortir, revenir**, etc.: **sortir de France, revenir d'Amérique**; *feminine* countries omit the article in similar phrases referring to the products and geographical features of the country: **la carte d'Afrique, les monts d'Auvergne, la porcelaine de Saxe, les vins d'Espagne** (but **monts du Limousin, vins du Portugal**).

Nevertheless, if the conventional form of the expression is broken by introducing an unusual element — *comtes de Forez*, *comtes amovibles du Forez* — or if the proper noun stands out with dominant substantive force — *les montagnes de la Suisse* — the article appears.

### 137. Certain noteworthy cases are

1. The use of the indefinite article with an abstract noun that is modified by an adjective, as, *une bonne santé*, *un courage à toute épreuve*, *une patience admirable*.

2. The use of the definite article.

(a) With a generic noun, that is, a noun used in a general sense, meaning *all*, *every*, *in general*, as, *le fer et le plomb sont des métaux*, *il n'aime pas les chiens*, *nous apprenons le français*.

(b) With distributive nouns of weight, measure, etc., after expressions of price: *dix sous la livre*; *trois sous la pièce*; *trois francs la douzaine*.

(c) With proper nouns accompanied by an adjective or a title, as, *le petit Henri*, *le roi Édouard*, *le père Simon*.

(d) With most geographical names, except those of cities, as, *la France*, *l'Italie*, *le Rhin*, *les Alpes*, *le mont Cervin*.

(e) Instead of a weak possessive adjective, especially of parts of the body, an indirect object pronoun often occurring to show the possessor, as, *il leva la tête*; *il s'est cogné la tête*; *il m'a écrasé le pied*; *elle lui donna la main*; *il m'a barré le passage*.

(f) After *bien* and *la plupart*: *bien des hommes*, *la plupart du monde*.

## WORD-ORDER

**138.** The French language is periodic, fond of a climax; the tonic accent comes on the last pronounced syllable; the stressed, emphatic, prominent word comes at the end of its word-group, where a dramatic pause can follow it. Everything leads up to this finale, this key-word that tells what the rest is about. This basal principle of the language puts unstressed words like **ne** and the objective personal pronouns out of the way before the verb, — **je ne le lui dirai pas**; places weak adverbs and pronouns before the participle of a compound tense, — **il a trop bu, nous n'avons rien vu**; develops expressions like **c'est lui qui l'a fait, ce n'est pas l'intelligence qui lui manque, qu'est-ce que c'est?** or **qu'est-ce que c'est que ça?** to bring the prominent stressed word at the end of a word-group; and furnishes the only trustworthy guide to the position of a qualifying adjective. The adjective that is weak, hackneyed, unemphatic, yields the coveted group-end place to its substantive; but the adjective that is stressed, rare, long, possessed of verbal force, or otherwise entitled to prominence, acquires it by coming after its substantive at the end of its word-group. So **le bleu ciel, une blanche vestale, une profonde vallée, un doux parfum** gain little from the adjective; skies are blue, vestals white, valleys deep, perfumes sweet, as a matter of course; but if we see **un oiseau bleu, une robe blanche, un lac profond, une odeur douce** we are impressed by the blueness of the bird, the whiteness of the gown, the depth of the lake, the sweetness of the smell. Overworked common words then, like **beau, bon, grand, gros, jeune, joli, long, mauvais, meilleur, petit, vieux, vilain**, usually precede the noun; adjectives used figuratively precede: **une éclatante victoire**,

**une verte vieillesse**; while an adjective strengthened by a phrase or a long adverb, or joined by a conjunction to an important adjective, must follow the noun, as, **un bon-homme vieux et rusé, des êtres infiniment petits, un homme meilleur que ses voisins.**

Study the position of adjectives found in your text until you feel the force of group-end position.

A favorite way of bringing a particular word or phrase into prominence is to put **c'est** before it and a relative pronoun between it and the following statement, as, **c'est à vous que je donne le livre; c'est moi qui vous donne le livre; c'est le livre que je vous donne**; where the expressions in italics have more stress than in the normal sentence, **je vous donne le livre.**

The tendency to put the most prominent thing last also appears in the order of the complements that follow a verb. Of two equally important, the longer one will follow the shorter.

Not only does the pause in language lend prominence to the preceding word or word-group which it gives us time to comprehend before we go further, it also makes prominent the word or word-group immediately following, which introduces some new subject to a mind refreshed by the pause and ready to pass to a new thought. Next in importance to the end, then, is the beginning of the French sentence or verse; and in place of the subject, which regularly occupies this position, an important adverbial modifier is often put here, as,

**Jamais je ne me battrai avec vous.**

**Déjà la nuit tombait.**

**Bientôt il revint.**

**Ce matin même il me l'a dit.**

## CARDINAL NUMBERS

## 139.

DIGITS.	DIGITS + 10.	DIGITS × 10.
1. un, une	11. onze	10. dix
2. deux	12. douze	20. vingt
3. trois	13. treize	30. trente
4. quatre	14. quatorze	40. quarante
5. cinq	15. quinze	50. cinquante
6. six	16. seize	60. soixante
7. sept	17. dix-sept	70. soixante-dix
8. huit	18. dix-huit	80. quatre-vingts
9. neuf	19. dix-neuf	90. quatre-vingt-dix

When the numeral modifies a following substantive, the final consonants of the numbers from 2 to 19, inclusive, are silent before a consonant sound, as, **deux livres, trois crayons, cinq fils, six garçons, sept plumes, huit petits agneaux, neuf jolies maisons**; while before a vowel sound liaison occurs, **f** softening to **v** and **s** or **x** to **z** in pronunciation, as, **deux hommes, trois enfants, cinq élèves, six arbres, dix-neuf agneaux**. Elsewhere the pronunciation is as indicated, as, **le cinq janvier, sept pour cent, page neuf**. Liaison or elision never occurs with **onze**.

From 21 to 69, inclusive, the multiples of ten are combined with the digits, the conjunction **et** being replaced by a hyphen except before **un(e)**, as,

---

*Pronounce:* ã, yn, dɔ, trwa, katr, sɛk, sis, set, ɥit, nœf, dis, ɔːz, duz, treiz, katorz, kɛːz, seːz, dis set, diz ɥit, diz nœf, vɛ, vɛt e ã, vɛd dɔ, vɛt trwa, vɛt katr, vɛt sɛk, trɛːt, karɛːt, sɛkɛːt, swasɛːt, katrɔ vɛ, katrɔ vɛ ã, katrɔ vɛ dɔ, katrɔ vɛ ɔːz, sã, sã ã, dɔ sã, dɔ sã ã, mĩl, mĩl ã, mĩl nœ sã katrɔ vɛ diz ɥit, trwa mĩl.

dɔ liːvr, dɔz ɔm, trwa krejɔ, trwaz ãfã, sɛ fis, sɛk elɛːv, lə sɛk ʒãvje, si garsɔ, siz arbr, lə sis avrĩl, se plym, set pur sã, ɥi pɛtiz apɔ, nuz etjɔ ɥit, nœ ʒoli mezɔ, diz nœv apɔ, paːʒ nœf.



21. vingt et un(e)	31. trente et un(e)
22. vingt-deux	32. trente-deux
23. vingt-trois	41. quarante et un(e)
24. vingt-quatre	43. quarante-trois
25. vingt-cinq	51. cinquante et un(e)
26. vingt-six	54. cinquante-quatre
27. vingt-sept	61. soixante et un(e)
28. vingt-huit	65. soixante-cinq
29. vingt-neuf	69. soixante-neuf

From 69 the series continues "sixty-ten," "sixty-eleven," etc., to "four-score," "four-score-one," "four-score-eleven," "four-score-ten-nine" (= ninety-nine):

71. soixante (et) onze	81. quatre-vingt-un(e)
72. soixante-douze	89. quatre-vingt-neuf
73. soixante-treize	91. quatre-vingt-onze
74. soixante-quatorze	97. quatre-vingt-dix-sept
75. soixante-quinze	99. quatre-vingt-dix-neuf

Higher numerals are

100. cent	1000. mille
101. cent un(e)	1215. mille deux cent quinze
200. deux cents	1998. mille neuf cent quatre-vingt-dix-huit
209. deux cent neuf	3000. trois mille

**Cent** and **vingt** must take a final **s** when multiplied and not followed by another numeral, as, **trois cents**, **quatre-vingts**, etc.; yet not when used as ordinals, as, **l'an cinq cent**, **page trois cent**, **page quatre-vingt**, etc. Other cardinal numbers are invariable, except **un**.

Unlike the numeral adjectives the nouns **un millier** (1000), **un million** (1,000,000), and **un milliard** (1,000,000,000) always take an **s** in the plural, and may be modified by an article.

For dates between 1001 and 1999 A.D., inclusive, **mil** is used instead of **mille**, as, **mil huit cent douze** (or **dix-huit cent douze**).

### ORDINAL NUMBERS

**140.** The numbers that denote order in a series are

1st. <b>premier(s)</b> , fem. <b>première(s)</b>	3d. <b>troisième(s)</b>
2d. <b>second(e)(s)</b> when a third is not implied	5th. <b>cinquième(s)</b>
<b>deuxième(s)</b> when a third is implied	9th. <b>neuvième(s)</b>
etc.	10th. <b>dixième(s)</b>

the others all being formed by adding **-ième(s)** to the last consonant of the corresponding cardinal.

### COLLECTIVE NUMERAL NOUNS

**141.** The following feminine nouns are used to denote approximately the number indicated by the corresponding cardinal: **une huitaine**, *eight*; **une dizaine**, *a half-score*; **une douzaine**, *a dozen*, etc., many others being formed by adding **-aine** to the last consonant of the corresponding cardinal. The following are masculine, and (except **millier**) used with greater precision: **un cent**, **un millier**, **un million**, **un milliard**, etc.

### FRACTIONS

**142.** Fractions are commonly formed by using a cardinal number for the numerator, and an ordinal for the denominator, as,  $\frac{3}{7}$ , **trois septièmes**;  $\frac{9}{103}$ , **neuf cent-troisièmes**, etc. The following are exceptions:  $\frac{1}{2}$ , **un demi**,

une demie, la moitié;  $\frac{1}{3}$ , un tiers;  $\frac{1}{4}$ , un quart. Trois demi(e)s et trois sixièmes font deux entiers, *three halves and three sixths make two wholes (units)*. Deux tiers et trois quarts font dix-sept douzièmes, c'est-à-dire un (entier) et cinq douzièmes, *two thirds and three fourths make seventeen twelfths, that is, one (unit) and five twelfths*.

Fractions limited by a definite substantive take the definite article themselves, as, **la moitié du temps**, les deux tiers de ces hommes-là, il n'en veut que le quart.

### EXERCISE LXI

I. (a) Give the tables for addition and multiplication according to the following models:

Deux et un font trois, deux et deux font quatre, deux et trois font cinq, etc.

Une fois deux fait deux, deux fois deux font quatre, trois fois deux font six, etc.

(b) Write the following questions and the answers in French:

1. How many are two thirds and one fourth?
2. How many are two fifths less one third?
3. How many are seven twelfths and three fourths?
4. By (de) how much is a half (demi) greater than a sixth?

II. Translate:

1. Mary has eaten half an apple.
2. Little John has eaten half (la moitié) of his apples.
3. They have only written three fourths of those sentences.
4. We have written some thirty (une trentaine) of them.
5. This time there were thousands of them.
6. Three eighths is half of three fourths.

## TIME

## 143.

Quelle heure est-il?	<i>What time is it?</i>
Il est minuit.	<i>It is twelve o'clock (midnight).</i>
Il est minuit (et) dix (minutes).	<i>It is ten minutes past twelve.</i>
Il est une heure.	<i>It is one o'clock.</i>
Il est une heure (et) un quart.	<i>It is quarter past one.</i>
Il est deux heures.	<i>It is two o'clock.</i>
Il est trois heures (et) vingt (minutes).	<i>It is twenty minutes past three.</i>
Il est quatre heures et demie.	<i>It is half past four.</i>
Il est cinq heures trente-sept.	<i>It is twenty-three minutes of six.</i>
Il est six heures moins vingt-trois minutes.	
Il est sept heures moins un (le) quart.	<i>It is (a) quarter to seven.</i>
Il est onze heures moins dix minutes.	<i>It is ten minutes to eleven.</i>
Il est onze heures précises.	<i>It is exactly eleven.</i>
Il est midi.	<i>It is twelve o'clock (noon).</i>
Il est midi et demi.	<i>It is half past twelve.</i>

## DATES AND TITLES

**144.** To tell the day of the month cardinal numbers are used except for the first, as,

Le premier janvier s'appelle le jour de l'an.	<i>January first is called New-year's-day.</i>
Le deux février.	<i>February second.</i>
Le trois mars.	<i>The third of March.</i>
C'est aujourd'hui (le) lundi, quatre avril.	<i>To-day is Monday, April fourth.</i>
C'était hier (le) mardi, cinq mai.	<i>Yesterday was Tuesday, May the fifth.</i>

Ce sera demain (le) mercredi,  
six juin.

C'était avant-hier (le) jeudi,  
sept juillet.

Ce sera après-demain (le)  
vendredi, huit août.

Il y a huit jours c'était (le)  
samedi, neuf septembre.

D'aujourd'hui en quinze ce  
sera (le) dimanche, dix oc-  
tobre.

Très souvent on écrit 7<sup>bre</sup>,  
8<sup>bre</sup>, 9<sup>bre</sup> et X<sup>bre</sup> au lieu  
de septembre, octobre, no-  
vembre et décembre.

*To-morrow will be Wednesday,  
June sixth.*

*Day before yesterday was Thurs-  
day, July seventh.*

*Day after to-morrow will be Fri-  
day, August eighth.*

*A week ago (it) was Saturday,  
the ninth of September.*

*A fortnight from to-day will be  
Sunday, October tenth.*

*Frequently people write 7<sup>bre</sup>,  
8<sup>bre</sup>, 9<sup>bre</sup>, and X<sup>bre</sup> instead of  
September, October, Novem-  
ber, and December*

Similarly in titles the cardinal numbers are used, ex-  
cept for *first*, as, **Henri premier**, **Charles deux**, **Pie neuf**.  
But note as exceptions **Charles-Quint** and **Sixte-Quint**,  
*Charles V* (of Spain) and (Pope) *Sixtus Fifth*.

Note that days and months begin with small letters,  
not capitals.

## AGE

### 145.

Quel âge avez-vous?

J'ai seize ans; mon frère a  
vingt ans, et ma petite sœur  
en a dix; donc j'ai six ans  
de plus que ma sœur, et je  
suis de quatre ans moins  
âgé que mon frère; j'ai  
aussi une sœur mariée qui  
est plus âgée que moi de  
sept ans; elle est donc âgée  
de vingt-trois ans.

*How old are you?*

*I am sixteen; my brother is  
twenty, and my little sister  
ten; so I am six years older  
than my sister and four years  
younger than my brother; I  
also have a married sister who  
is seven years older than I;  
so she is twenty-three.*

## DIMENSION

## 146.

Cette salle est longue de trente pieds et large de vingt-quatre pieds, elle est haute de douze pieds; c'est-à-dire, elle a trente pieds de long (longueur) sur vingt-quatre de large (largeur) et douze de haut (hauteur); elle est de huit pieds moins longue que la salle voisine qui est une salle de trente-huit pieds de longueur.

*This room is thirty feet long, twenty-four feet wide, and twelve feet high; that is, it is thirty by twenty-four by twelve; it is eight feet shorter than the next room, which is thirty-eight feet long.*

## EXERCISE LXII

## I. Translate:

1. The class begins at exactly ten o'clock.
2. The teacher comes into the room at two minutes of ten.
3. Until ten minutes past ten we read aloud (**lire à haute voix**) all together after the teacher.
4. From quarter past ten to half past ten we translate from French into English.
5. From half past ten till quarter of eleven we translate from English into French.
6. Until five minutes of eleven we study the verbs.
7. Sometimes we write a short (**petit**) dictation from ten minutes of twelve until noon, or until five minutes past twelve.

II. Write the following questions and their answers in French:

1. How many days are there from Christmas until New-year's-day?
2. How many days were there from February 3, 1908, until March 7, 1909?

3. When were you born? (*Use past indefinite.*)
4. What day is it to-day?
5. What day was it yesterday?
6. What day was it day before yesterday?
7. What day will it be to-morrow?
8. What day will it be day after to-morrow?
9. What day was it a week ago?
10. Mary is fifteen years old; how much older are you than Mary?
11. John is seventeen; how much older are you than John?
12. A class room (*classe, f.*) was thirty-two feet long and twenty-five feet wide; how much longer and wider is our class room than that one?
13. An elm-tree was eighty feet high, and an oak was sixty-five feet high; how much higher was the former than the latter?

## CE AND IL AS SUBJECT

**147.** *Ce* is vague, indeterminate, *il* is definite, determinate; *it*, then, referring to some definite noun already named must usually be *il* or *elle*. *Regardez ce tableau, il est bien beau. Va me chercher ma plume, elle est sur l'encrier.*

*It*, implying some object the name of which is not already clearly before the mind, or referring to an infinitive or a word-group, must be *ce*, as, *qu'est-ce que c'est? C'est un étiau. Il n'est pas arrivé; c'est fâcheux. Savoir c'est pouvoir.*

The use of a pronoun, a proper noun, or a determinate substantive in the predicate after *être* (or *devoir, pouvoir, saurait+être*) usually shows that the subject was not already sufficiently definite, and *ce* is used, as, *c'est lui, ce doit être mon frère, ce sont des singes; être* being plural when the substantive immediately following is

plural and of the third person, as, **ce sont eux** (but **c'est nous, c'est Jean et son frère**).

For impersonal *it*, as subject of **être**, with a predicate adjective or indeterminate substantive, use **il** if the adjective be followed by **de**+infinitive, or by a **que** clause, as, **il est facile de faire cela, il est bien que vous soyez venu, il est temps de partir**. If no such word-group follows the adjective, the subject is **ce**, as, **c'est évident, ce sera à faire demain, ce n'est pas plus difficile que ça!** In short colloquial sentences, and generally when the predicate adjective expresses emotion, **ce** often replaces **il**, as, **c'était pitié de la voir, c'est malheureux que vous soyez tombé**.

Certain common parenthetical expressions do not follow this rule, as, **ils sont revenus, il est vrai; vous avez bien fait, ce me semble**. **Il** is always used to tell the time of day. See § 143.

### LE IN PREDICATE

**148.** The predicate **le** (see § 62) is variable only when referring to a definite substantive, as, **êtes-vous la mère de cet enfant? Non, je ne la suis pas**. (But, **êtes-vous mère? Non, je ne le suis pas**.) **Êtes-vous ses frères? Oui, nous les sommes**. (But, **êtes-vous frères? Oui, nous le sommes**.)

### LE PLUS

**149.** **Le**, before **plus** or **moins**, is variable when an adjective follows, but only when there is comparison between different objects. **De ces deux robes, celle-ci est la plus jolie, mais celle-là est le (or la) plus à la mode. C'est le soir que celle-là me paraît le plus jolie, that one**



*seems to me prettiest in the evening.* (The gown is not compared with another, but with itself at different times. Here **le plus** = **surtout**.)

## EN INSTEAD OF A POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE

**150.** Especially when referring to things, **en** translates an English possessive adjective when the possessor is named in the preceding clause and when the name of the thing possessed is direct object of a verb, or subject of **être**, or predicate nominative, as, **Je n'aime pas cette ville, mais j'en admire la propreté. Voyez ce couteau, le manche en est fort joli. Je connais bien le Canada, Ottawa en est la capitale.**

### EXERCISE LXIII

Translate:

1. There are some ladies. They are my neighbors. They are very well dressed (**mis**).

2. Bring me my pen, it is on the ink-well; take this pencil, it is not well sharpened (**taillé**).

3. He doesn't study much, it is true, and it is very unfortunate.

4. What time is it? It is midnight. It is the hour of the fairies.

5. It is easy to swim; we learned this summer, and it is not hard at all.

6. Are those ladies artists? No, they are not.

7. Are they the friends whom you expect? Yes, they are.

8. She is always pleasing (**gentil**), but it is when she smiles that she is prettiest.

9. She is the youngest of the family, but she is also the most intelligent.

10. It is a handsome house, but I don't like its color. Does its color please you?

## CHAPTER VII

## MORE ABOUT VERBS

## INVERSION

**151.** Jean étudie sa leçon. Jean étudie-t-il sa leçon? Est-ce que Jean étudie sa leçon? Que fait Jean? or Jean que fait-il? Pourquoi Jean ne joue-t-il pas? Est-ce que votre frère parle français? Qui le dit?

The normal order is subject, verb, complement, modified by the tendency of an emphatic word to end its group. Putting the verb before its subject is termed inversion. Unless the subject is an interrogative pronoun, inversion occurs regularly in questions; when **est-ce que** is used, the inversion occurs in that expression and in the following clause the subject precedes the verb. If the subject of the question is a noun, it generally precedes its verb, and the inversion is obtained by the use of a "pleonastic" subject-pronoun after the verb. An interrogative word or phrase begins its clause.

**152.** Inversion also occurs

1. In parenthetical expressions like **dit-il, répondit-il**, included in direct quotations. «**Allons, dit-il, il est temps de partir.**»

2. Often when the clause begins with a predicate adjective, an objective relative pronoun, or certain adverbs, among which are **ainsi, à peine, aussi, au moins, bientôt, encore, ici, là, où, peut-être, toujours**. **Telle était cette route. Aussi ne l'avons-nous pas fait. Voici ce que m'a dit votre frère.**

3. Less commonly in other constructions, usually to bring a stressed subject at the end of the word-group. *Vive le roi! Avait-il de l'argent, il en jetait par les fenêtres. C'est là qu'était dressé l'échafaud. Vient un autre qui dit le contraire.*

### AGREEMENT

**153.** With a composite subject or a singular collective subject the sense must determine the number of the verb. If the subject is conceived as a single mass or whole, the verb is singular; if the components are thought of as separate individuals, the verb is plural. *Une nuée de barbares désolèrent tout le pays. Une nuée de traits obscurcit l'air. Une troupe de montagnards écrasa son armée. Une foule d'enfants couraient dans la rue.*

**154.** With a limiting phrase, the number of the complement often prevails. *Plus d'un enfant voudrait l'avoir. Moins de deux ne valent rien. La plupart du monde est égoïste. La plupart des citoyens le détestent. La plupart, with no complement, always takes a plural verb. La plupart le croient.*

### EXERCISE LXIV

Translate:

1. Most men speak without thinking.
2. Most of the people wish to leave the city.
3. Most were afraid of a siege.
4. Most of the senate wished to remain.
5. Most of my books are at home.
6. Most (of them) are bound.
7. More than one poor man will be happier than he.

8. Less than two gloves are useless.
9. The army of the barbarians was vanquished.
10. A crowd of children were shouting and laughing around her.

**155.** With two singular subjects joined by **ou** or **ni**, the verb in French is usually plural unless the activity is plainly restricted to one only, although with *either* or *neither* English regularly uses a singular verb. If the subjects differ in person, their order of importance in determining the person of the verb is: first, second, third.

**Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous rendent heureux.**

**Ni l'un ni l'autre n'iront à la chasse.**

**Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sera votre mari.**

**Le temps ou la mort sont nos remèdes.**

**Vous ou moi parlerons.**

**Vous ou lui parlerez.**

**Son père ou son oncle sera nommé ambassadeur à Rome.**

### EXERCISE LXV

Translate:

1. My brother and I shall be blamed.
2. You and your brother will be praised.
3. You or I will be sent to the bank.
4. Neither you nor John will be sent to the post-office.
5. Either she or her sister is that child's mother.

### GOVERNMENT

**156.** Verbs transitive in English are often translated by French intransitive ("neuter") verbs, while English intransitives often correspond to French transitive ("active") verbs.

*to approach something, s'approcher de quelque chose.*  
*to leave Paris, partir de Paris.*  
*to remember something, se souvenir de quelque chose.*  
*to use something, se servir de quelque chose.*  
*to enjoy good health, jouir d'une bonne santé.*  
*to obey someone, obéir à quelqu'un.*  
*to please someone, plaire à quelqu'un.*  
*to listen to something, écouter quelque chose.*  
*to look at something, regarder quelque chose.*  
*to pay someone for something, payer quelque chose à  
quelqu'un.*

This "government" of verbs should be carefully observed in texts and dictionaries. Only verbs alike in government can take a common complement, as, *il aime et respecte son père, il entend et suit sa mère*; but *il aime son père et lui obéit, il entend sa mère et lui répond*.

## EXERCISE LXVI

Translate:

1. He remembers and loves you.
2. He will leave and forget that little village.
3. He approached and seized the table.
4. Use and carefully study your grammar.
5. Those who enjoy good health enjoy skating.
6. We must obey and listen to our parents.
7. His manners did not please my aunt, but she paid him for his apples.
8. Look at that bird and listen to him.

## COMPLEMENT

**157.** A French verb can have but one direct object, other objective substantives being either indirect object pronouns or joined to the verb by a preposition. So we

say, *payez-le*, *pay him*; but *payez-lui ce que vous lui devez*, *pay him what you owe him*, *payez-lui ses marchandises*, *pay him for his goods*.

**158.** *Faire* and a dependent infinitive are in this respect treated as a single verb: *faites-la chanter*, *faites-lui chanter cette chanson*, *faites-le lire*, *faites-lui lire cette lettre*, *il me l'a fait voir*, *he showed it to me* (both pronouns preceding *faire*).

*Entendre* commonly has the same construction, and *laisser*, *voir*, *ouïr* often do. *Je lui ai entendu dire cela*, *laissez-lui lire ce livre*; but we may also give each of these verbs (*not faire*) a direct object of its own and say *laissez-le lire ce livre*, *je l'ai vu frapper l'enfant*.

**159.** Such constructions as *je fais lire ce livre à l'enfant* are ambiguous and may mean either *I make the child read that book*, or *I make (someone) read that book to the child*, i.e. *I have that book read to the child*. In case of possible doubt the second is the more probable meaning, but ambiguity may be avoided by saying, *je fais qu'on lise ce livre à l'enfant*, or *je fais que l'enfant lise ce livre*, *j'oblige l'enfant à lire ce livre*, *je fais lire ce livre par l'enfant*.

**160.** The reflexive object of an infinitive dependent on *faire* is usually omitted: *faites asseoir ce petit*. A similar omission sometimes occurs after *laisser*, *entendre*, *voir*, etc.

#### EXERCISE LXVII

Translate:

1. I see him coming.
2. Let him speak.
3. I had him go to bed at once.

4. I had him take off his wet clothes.
5. Make her hold her tongue.
6. Make her answer my question.
7. Make her open her desk.
8. Allow them to go out.
9. Have him pay well for those oranges.
10. Have him paid well for those oranges.

**161.** Some verbs have a substantive complement that is neither direct nor indirect object, but an adverbial modifier expressing time, distance, weight, price, etc.

**Recommencer trois fois**, *to begin three times.*

**Marcher deux jours**, *to walk two days.*

**Peser cinq kilos**, *to weigh five kilograms.*

**Valoir dix francs**, *to be worth ten francs.*

**162.** The complement of **devoir**, **pouvoir**, **vouloir**, **oser** is often an implied infinitive: in such cases, as with **valoir**, **peser**, **marcher**, etc., just mentioned, note that a past participle is invariable:

**Les deux jours qu'il a marché.**

**Les dix francs que cela a valu.**

**Il a écrit les exercices qu'il a dû (écrire).**

**J'ai apporté toutes les pommes que j'ai pu (apporter).**

#### EXERCISE LXVIII

Translate:

1. Pay him now; we have not yet paid him for his apples.
2. I shall make him hold his tongue (**se taire**).
3. Have them run to the post-office.
4. Have them drop (**jeter**) these letters into (**à**) the box.
5. Have her read; but don't have her read such novels (**roman**).
6. I don't regret the ten dollars that cost me.

7. Think of all the times you have begun again.
8. The ten hours she has walked have quite exhausted her.
9. The twenty pounds it weighed at first seem like (**en paraître**) forty.
10. Have you corrected all the mistakes you could?

### SPECIAL USES OF THE FUTURE

**163.** The future is sometimes used like an imperative.  
**Tu ne tueras point, *thou shalt not kill.***

**164.** The future states what the speaker regards as the probable explanation of facts previously mentioned.

**S'il n'est pas venu, c'est qu'il sera malade** (i.e. **il doit être malade, sans doute il est malade, il faut qu'il soit malade, je crois qu'il est malade**). **Il aura oublié la clé, *he has probably forgotten the key.***

### SPECIAL USES OF THE CONDITIONAL

**165.** Instead of **si** with an imperfect indicative, we sometimes find with the notion of extreme concession or great improbability:

(a) an inverted conditional. **Et pleuvrait-il, j'irais tout de même.**

(b) a conditional after **quand (même), dans le cas où, a** relative pronoun, etc.

**Quand (même) cela serait vrai, qu'importe?**  
**Dans le cas où il viendrait, que feriez-vous?**  
**Celui qui ferait cela, serait un scélérat.**

(c) a conditional followed by **que** and another conditional.

**Cela serait vrai que je ne sortirais pas d'ici.**



**166.** The conditional gives what the speaker regards as a possible, but unconfirmed truth — “conditional of dubious assertion.”

**D’après les journaux, il serait mort, according to the papers, he is dead. Seriez-vous son frère? Can you be his brother?**

**167.** The conditionals of **vouloir, devoir, pouvoir, and savoir** present certain difficulties, because certain English forms commonly used in translation are the same for positive assertions about past time and for conditional assertions implying improbability and relating to present or future time. *I could not do it* may be a positive assertion about past time, **je ne pouvais [n’ai (pas) pu] le faire, I was not able to do it;** or it may mean a conditional assertion about present or future time, **je ne pourrais le faire, I should be unable to do it (now or to-morrow), if . . .**

So, *one ought to tell the truth* may be a general statement of fact, made positively, **on doit dire la vérité;** or it may imply *but does not always do so*, in which case we say, **on devrait dire la vérité.**

**Je veux qu’il apprenne sa leçon** expresses the speaker’s positive wish, almost determination, **je voudrais qu’il apprît sa leçon** emphasizes the improbability of the wish being gratified.

Instead of the present indicative of **pouvoir** the negative conditional of **savoir**, with **ne** alone as negation, meaning literally *I should not know how to* often translates English *I cannot*, where the inability is mental, **je ne saurais vous répondre.**

A similar use of the interrogative often occurs, **sauriez-vous me le dire? can you tell me?**

**168.** Where English uses a past infinitive with these verbs, French uses the present infinitive and puts the past

thought into the tense of the main verb. *I could have done it,—you ought to have done so,—I should like to have seen him,* would be *j'aurais pu le faire, vous auriez dû le faire (il fallait le faire), j'aurais voulu le voir.*

## EXERCISE LXIX

Translate:

1. I could not do it yesterday.
2. I could not have done it yesterday.
3. I could not do it now.
4. I could not do it to-morrow.
5. You ought to do so now.
6. You are to do it now.
7. You must do it to-morrow.
8. You will have to do it to-morrow.
9. You ought to do so to-morrow.
10. You ought to have done so yesterday.
11. I had to do it yesterday.
12. I wish him to be silent.
13. I wish he would be silent.
14. I wish he had been silent.
15. I should have liked him to be silent.
16. I can't learn all that before noon.

## IMPERATIVE

**169.** The imperative singular, although it has the form of the first singular present indicative, is really a second person, and the *s* which usually ends a second person singular is inserted before *en* or *y* when the imperative singular ends regularly in a vowel, as, **coupez-en, vas-y, portes-y, donnes-en.** This *s* is not used before the preposition *en*, as, **souffre en patience.**

The missing persons of the imperative are supplied by the present subjunctive, as,

[Permettez] que je vous conte une réponse qui m'a fait plaisir! *let me tell you a reply that pleased me!*

[J'ordonne] qu'il parte à l'instant! *let him start at once!*

[Je demande] qu'elles reviennent demain! *let them return to-morrow!*

[Je souhaite] que je vous retrouve à mon retour modeste, douce, timide, docile, *on my return let me find you still modest, gentle, retiring, obedient.*

Compare with the implied threat in: que je te retrouve sur cet escalier! *just let me catch you on these stairs again!*

**170.** In classical French, when two imperatives are connected by **et** or **ou**, an objective personal pronoun may precede the second imperative. **Trouvez-le, et lui portez trois cents francs. Payez-les et les laissez partir.** This is no longer customary, and formerly in this construction both imperatives were required to be of the same person and number; hence Molière's lines, *Finissons votre affaire et me dites qui est celle que vous aimez, Laissons cela, et me dis . . .* have been criticized as less correct than *Finissons et dites-moi, Laissons cela et dis-moi.*

## DIFFICULTIES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

**171.** Clauses introduced by the indefinite relatives **qui que** [ce soit qui (que)], **quoi que** [ce soit qui (que)], **quel que**, **où que**, **si . . . que**, **quelque . . . que**, **pour . . . que** (English *who—, what—, where—, how—ever*) take the subjunctive.

**Qui que vous soyez, si en colère que vous sembliez, quelque grief que vous ayez, quoi que vous vouliez, tout sanglant que vous êtes, entrez!**

**172.** With *tout . . . que*, in relative clauses, and after superlatives, negative or interrogative expressions, and exclusives, the indicative is used to express positive assertion of fact, and the subjunctive avoids such positive assertion. Thus relative clauses with an indefinite antecedent, after verbs of wishing, striving, commanding, etc., or after negations, interrogations, or conditions, commonly have the subjunctive.

- Je cherche une maison qui me plaise.
- J'ai trouvé une maison qui me plaît.
- Demandez un livre qui soit bien imprimé.
- Je viens d'acheter un livre qui est bien imprimé.

**173.** After the present conditional, the past indefinite, or the imperfect indicative after *si*, when present or future time is in mind, we commonly use primary (the present or its compound) subjunctives.

- Je partirais demain s'il fallait que vous vous en alliez.
- Serait-il possible qu'il n'ait pas reçu ma lettre?
- Je n'ai pas dit qu'il soit méchant.

**174.** When the time of the subordinate verb is independent of that of the main verb the usual rules for sequence do not apply.

Il me donna le premier livre que j'aie jamais vu, *he gave me the first book I ever saw.*

**175.** A very common case is the use of a secondary (imperfect or pluperfect) subjunctive to replace the conditional of corresponding clauses that do not require the subjunctive.

- Je crois qu'il pourrait le faire s'il était ici.
- Je ne crois pas qu'il pût le faire s'il était ici.

## EXERCISE LXX

Translate:

1. Whoever you are, speak!
2. However rich she is, it is unfortunate that she is proud and impolite.
3. Of all his books, it is the only one he has read.
4. Of all those books, he chose the plainest (*it is the least handsome that he chose*).
5. Is there a man who can do that?
6. I know a man who can do it to-morrow.
7. I do not think he will come if it rains.
8. I do not think he would have come if it had rained.
9. That is the first thing he told me.
10. Is he the first who has failed to keep his word (*manquer à sa parole*)?
11. It is his best horse which is dead.
12. It is the best horse that ever ran.
13. Is it your last letter that she did not receive?
14. You are reading the last letter she wrote.
15. It is the youngest of my brothers whom you know.

## INFINITIVE

**176.** The infinitive preceded by **de** (historical infinitive) is sometimes used, in narration, instead of an indicative.

**Il se sauva et Rigolette de rire**, *he ran away and Rigolette burst out laughing.*

**177.** The infinitive is used with imperative force in brief directions and references.

**Agiter le flacon**, *shake the bottle.*

**Voir page cent deux**, *see page one hundred two.*

**178.** The active infinitive, with an indefinite subject understood, is used after **faire**, **laisser**, and verbs of per-

ception, where English has a passive construction. A similar use occurs in adjective phrases beginning with *à*.

**Je l'ai entendu dire**, *I have heard it said*.

**Il s'est fait bâtir une maison**, *he had a house built for himself*.

**Elle était bien à plaindre**, *she was much to be pitied*.

### EXERCISE LXXI

Translate:

1. Here are some chairs I have had made.
2. We heard the Marseillaise (*Marseillaise*, f.) sung.
3. There were dangers to be avoided.
4. There will be nothing to be said.
5. I saw the door broken in.

### PARTICIPLES

**179.** It is sometimes hard to determine whether the form in *-ant* is verbal, and so invariable, or used with adjective force, and so required to agree in gender and number with its substantive. Always after *en*, and usually when accompanied by an objective or adverbial complement, the word is invariable.

**180.** Invariable are the past participles of

(a) Impersonal verbs (see § 181):

**Les difficultés qu'il y a eu**, *the difficulties there have been*.

**La belle journée qu'il a fait**, *the fine day it has been*.

**Les efforts qu'il lui a fallu**, *the efforts necessary for him*.

(b) **Marcher, coûter, valoir**, etc., with a noun complement that is not really a direct object (see §§ 161, 162):

**Les dix francs que cela m'a coûté.**

**Les trois milles que j'ai couru.**

(c) Verbs with a complementary infinitive that has no subject expressed; and **fait** with any complementary infinitive:

**La dame que j'ai entendu(e)<sup>1</sup> chanter.**

**La chanson que j'ai entendu chanter.**

**La voiture que j'ai vu(e)<sup>1</sup> venir.**

**La voiture que j'ai fait venir.**

## IMPERSONAL VERBS

**181.** An impersonal verb is one used in the third singular only with indefinite **il**, *it*, *there*, as subject.

**Il pleut**, *it is raining.*

**Il faut**, *it is necessary.*

**182.** Many verbs are only occasionally impersonal.

**Il vint des médecins**, *there came doctors.*

**Il vaudra mieux se taire**, *it will be better to say nothing.*

**Il s'agit de votre couronne**, *your crown is at stake.*

**Il y va de votre vie**, *you risk your life.* (It is a question of your crown, your life.)

**183.** **Faire** is used impersonally of time and weather, or with certain complements composed of an adjective followed by an infinitive.

**Il fait beau (temps)**, *it is fine weather*, but **le temps est beau**.

**Il fait chaud**, *it is warm*, but **l'été a été bien chaud cette année**.

**Il se fait tard**, *it is growing late.*

**Il fait bon y vivre par un tel temps**, *it is pleasant to live there in such weather.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Agreement desirable, but optional.

**184.** **Avoir**, preceded by **y**, is used in many idiomatic expressions (see § 180a):

**Il y a, il y a eu, il y aura, y a-t-il, y avait-il, etc.,** *there is (are), there have been, there will be, are there, was there, etc.*

**Il n'y en a pas eu cette année,** *there have not been any this year.*

**Combien (de temps) y a-t-il que vous êtes ici?** *how long have you been here? (Depuis quand êtes-vous ici?)*

**Combien (de milles) y a-t-il de Boston à Springfield?** *how far is it from Boston to Springfield?*

**Il y a une centaine de milles,** *it is about a hundred miles.*

**Il est arrivé il y a huit jours,** *he arrived a week ago. (Il est arrivé depuis huit jours.)*

**185.** Do not confuse **il y a**, which is declarative, with **voilà**, which is demonstrative and exclamatory, used only when showing or pointing out.

**Voilà votre livre!** *here (there) is your book!*

**Il y a un livre sur mon bureau; est-ce le vôtre?** *there is a book on my desk; is that one yours?*

**186.** **Falloir** expresses external or material necessity as distinguished from **devoir**, moral obligation or intention. The distinction is not always observed. With complementary infinitive an unstressed subject is commonly omitted.

**Il faut partir,** (*I, you, we, he, etc.*) *must go.*

When the subject of English *must* would be a personal pronoun, two constructions are possible with **falloir**: *they must go, il leur faut partir*, or, *il faut qu'ils partent*; but *il faut que Jean parte, il fallait que son frère partît*.

English *to need* is commonly translated by **falloir** with indirect object.



*I need a pen, il me faut une plume.*

*That little king would need a kingdom, il faudrait un royaume  
à ce petit roi.*

### EXERCISE LXXII

Translate:

1. The point is to find out what they have done.
2. His happiness is at stake.
3. It would be better to stay here.
4. What sort of weather is it?
5. The weather was very cold yesterday.
6. It is expensive living in New York.
7. I wrote to her three days ago.
8. How far is it from here to the post-office?
9. You need half an hour to go there on foot.
10. That door needs a key.

NOTE. The student desiring a fuller treatment of the French verb is referred to larger grammars or to special books, one of the best of which is *Syntax of the French Verb*, by E. C. Armstrong, Henry Holt and Company, New York.

## CHAPTER VIII

### UNINFLECTED PARTS OF SPEECH

#### ADVERBS

**187.** Position. An adverb commonly follows its verb immediately; but interrogatives stand at the beginning of the clause, and others may be put there for emphasis or to give stressed words their proper position.

*Il marchait lentement. Elle ne viendra pas aujourd'hui.  
Quand viendra-t-elle? Demain vous la verrez.*

With an infinitive or a participle, a common, short, unstressed adverb usually precedes; a long or stressed adverb will follow.

**Il ne faut pas trop parler. Il faut parler distinctement.  
Il l'ai bien vu. Il s'est vite apaisé. Je l'ai vu hier.**

Otherwise an adverb commonly precedes the word or phrase it modifies: **très souvent, bien facile, tout d'abord.**

**188.** Derivation from adjectives. Many adverbs are formed by adding **-ment** to the feminine of an adjective: **grand, grandement; heureux, heureusement; sec, sèche-ment.**

The inflectional **-e** of the feminine is omitted if the masculine singular ends in a vowel: **joliment, résolument, décidément**; but **gaîment** (or **gaiement**), **assidûment**, and a few others indicate the omission by a circumflex accent.

**189.** Certain adverbs of four or more syllables have **-ément** instead of **-ement**: **aveuglément, confusément, précisément**, etc. (Compare the substantive **aveuglement**.)

**190.** With the exception of **lent, présent, and véhément** (**lentement, présentement, véhémentement**) adjectives in **-ant** or **-ent** add **-ment** to the masculine and assimilate **-nt** to **-m**: **constamment, galamment, méchamment, récemment, prudemment**. The ending is always pronounced as if spelled **-ament**.

**191.** **Beaucoup**, comparative **plus**, may be added to the adverbs mentioned in § 133 as irregularly compared. After **plus** or **moins**, a complementary substantive preceded by a numeral is introduced by **de** not **que**. .

**Ce tigre a mangé plus d'un enfant**, *that tiger has eaten children,*  
— *more than one.*

If the substantive belongs in a different clause (with verb expressed or understood) and is not itself the complement of **plus**, use **que**.

**Ce chien mange plus qu'un enfant** (*ne mange*), *that dog eats more than a child (eats)*.

## NON, OUI, SI

**192.** Except with a verb, the common negation is **non**; the common affirmation is **oui**. **Le ferez-vous, oui ou non? Non seulement lui, mais aussi sa femme. Une maison non meublée.**

**Non** may be strengthened by **pas** or **point**. **Voulez-vous le faire? Non pas!**

**193.** Affirmation in reply to an implied or expected negative is **si** sometimes strengthened by repetition or by adding **fait**.

«**Il n'est pas venu. — Si, si, il est ici.**»

«**Vous ne m'écoutez pas. — Si, monsieur, je vous écoute.**»

«**Je crois qu'il n'est pas venu. — Si fait, il est là.**»

**194.** **Monsieur, madame**, etc., are commonly used with **oui, non**, etc., in polite conversation; frequently also with nouns of relationship or titles: **monsieur votre oncle, madame votre mère, monsieur le capitaine**.

**195.** **Oui, non**, or **si** is often used after **que** to replace an entire clause: **je pense que non, il répond que si, je dis que oui**, *I think not, he replies yes, I say yes*.

**196.** **Négation**, with a verb, is expressed by **ne**. **Ne** alone as negation occurs:

(a) Often with **savoir** and **bouger**; and with **pouvoir**, **oser**, or **cesser**, followed by an infinitive. (**Ne** alone always in **je ne saurais, je ne sais quoi**, etc.):

**Il ne pouvait (pas) répondre**, *he could not answer.*

**Elle ne cesse (pas) de larmoyer**, *she is always sniveling.*

**Je ne saurais vous le dire**, *I can't tell you.*

**Il répondit je ne sais quoi**, *he answered something or other (I know not what).*

**Je ne sais que dire**, *I know not what to say.*

(b) In dependent clauses after expressed or implied negation:

**Je ne veux rien, si ce n'est ce fusil**, *I will have nothing except that gun.*

**Il n'y a personne qui ne le croie**, *everybody believes him.*

**Prenez garde qu'on ne vous voie**, *take care they don't see you.*

(c) In inverted conditions and occasionally in others:

**N'eût été cette petite, j'étais mort**, *but for that child, I should have been a dead man.*

**Si je ne me trompe (pas)**, *if I mistake not.*

(d) After **que** meaning *why*, and usually after **qui** or **que** in rhetorical questions:

**Que n'étiez-vous là?** *Why weren't you there?*

**Qui ne le voit?** *Who doesn't see it?*

(e) Often in proverbial and set expressions:

**N'importe**, *no matter.*

**Il n'est pire eau que l'eau qui dort**, *still waters run deep.*

**Je n'avais garde de l'éveiller**, *I took care not to wake him.*

(f) With compound tenses after **il y a, voilà, depuis**:

**Il y a six mois que je ne lui ai parlé**, *I haven't spoken to him for six months.*

Voilà un mois que je ne l'ai vu, *I haven't seen him for a month.*  
 Depuis que je ne vous ai vu, *since I saw you* (I have not  
 seen you during the time mentioned).

Il avait bien changé depuis que je ne l'avais vu.

But with a simple tense use **ne . . . plus**, **ne . . . pas**,  
**ne . . . point**:

Depuis deux jours je ne sors plus (pas).

Voici un mois que je ne le vois plus (pas).

Depuis que je ne vous vois plus (pas).

Il y avait longtemps que nous ne nous voyions point.

### PLEONASTIC NE

**197.** A **ne** so weak in force that we do not translate it and that the negative value seems to have faded almost entirely away is generally used but is not now required:

(a) With a finite verb in the second member of a comparison expressing inequality, unless the first member expresses or implies negation: *elle est plus jolie que vous ne la croyiez, she is prettier than you thought her; but elle n'est pas plus jolie qu'elle l'était. Il est plus habile qu'il ne le paraît, but il n'est pas plus habile qu'il le paraît.*

In such a sentence as *il est plus habile que lorsque vous l'avez connu* note that the real second term of the comparison is omitted, the full expression being *qu'il ne l'était lorsque vous l'avez connu.*

(b) With dependent subjunctives commonly:

1. After affirmative expressions of fearing: *je crains qu'il ne revienne, I fear he will return. I fear he will not return* would be, *je crains qu'il ne revienne pas. Ne*

**craignez-vous pas qu'il ne revienne?** *do you not fear that he will return?* In the last example negation and interrogation neutralize each other, resulting in affirmative force, while alone neither would have **ne**: **craignez-vous qu'il revienne?** **Je ne crains pas qu'il revienne.**

2. After **empêcher**, **éviter**, **à moins que**, rarely **avant que**, and after negative expressions of doubt or denial, including **douter**, **nier**, **s'en falloir**, etc., as,

**Empêchez qu'il ne parte aujourd'hui**, *keep him from starting to-day.*

**Il ne le devinera pas à moins que vous ne lui en ayez dit quelque chose**, *he won't guess it unless you have told him something about it.*

**Je ne doute pas qu'il n'arrive ce soir**, *I doubt not that he will come this evening.*

**Peu s'en est fallu qu'il ne m'ait dit votre nom**, *he almost told me your name* (he lacked but little, — **peu** has negative force here). But **il s'en faut de beaucoup que la somme y soit**, *the sum is far from being here.*

**198.** Except as specified in §§ 196, 197, **ne** is usually strengthened by an adverb or substantive like **pas** or **point** (**brin**, **goutte**, **miette**) placed after the verb, as, **je ne vais pas**, **elle ne reviendra point**, **ne . . . point** being a stronger negative than **ne . . . pas**. Common combinations are **ne . . . pas**, **ne . . . point**, *not*; **ne . . . guère**, *hardly*; **ne . . . jamais**, *never*; **ne . . . plus**, *no more*; **ne . . . que**, *only*; **ne . . . personne**, *no one*; **ne . . . rien**, *nothing*. The use of any word that gives negative force to the clause, like **aucunement**, **nullement**, **nul**, **ni . . . ni**, etc., requires the verb to be preceded by **ne**. In compound tenses **pas** precedes the participle; it may follow **avoir** or **être**, but precedes other infinitives.

**199.** Certain adverbs like **tant**, **si**, take the prefix **au** (**autant**, **aussi**) when used with comparative force, especially when affirmative. In **aussi** the **s** is doubled to preserve the sharp (surd) sound between two vowels. **Il a bu autant que son frère**, *he drank as much as his brother*; but with absolute force: **il but tant qu'il en mourut**, *he drank so much that he died from it*.

**200.** **Davantage** is a strong adverb and stands last in its word-group. It is not to be used in comparisons, and except for loss of force might always be replaced by **plus**. In which of the following sentences might **davantage** have been used?

**Cela m'intéresse encore plus. N'en parlez plus.**

**J'ai gagné plus de dix francs. Elle est de beaucoup plus habile que lui.**

**Vous avez de l'argent, mais il en a plus.**

**201.** *Only*, referring to a word which is predicate nominative or an objective complement of the verb, is generally **ne . . . que**.

**Ce n'est que Jean**, *it is only Jean*.

**Je ne veux que ce livre-là**, *I will have that book only*.

**Il ne pense qu'à sa sœur**, *he thinks of his sister only*.

**Seulement** may replace **ne . . . que** in any construction, or may be used to strengthen **ne . . . que**, and is used where **ne . . . que** could not be, when *only* refers to a **que** clause or to a word which is not a predicative complement of the verb. When *only* refers to the subject, French often uses an adjective or the paraphrase **il n'y a que . . . qui**, as, **lui seul le savait**, or **il n'y a que lui qui le savait**.

## PREPOSITIONS

**202.** *À*, apart from its use as the sign of an indirect object, or “dative,” expresses location at a point or motion toward a point. Compare *à Paris*, *à la maison*, with *en France*, *dans Paris*, *dans la maison*. The first expresses simply location or direction. One may be *à Paris* whether within or without the walls; your father is *à la maison* when standing at the gate, or sitting on the piazza, or watering the flowers in his garden; but only the man within the walls is *dans Paris*, only inside the door is one *dans la maison*. While a city is a mere point on the map, a place *at* which, a country with its greater extent is thought of as a region *within* which, and we say *à Londres*, *à Rome*, *à Berlin*, but *en Angleterre*, *en Italie*, *en Allemagne*, *en Portugal*,<sup>1</sup> *en Danemark*.<sup>1</sup> Newly discovered and far-away lands probably impressed the ancient Frenchman as mere points on the earth’s surface, and he said *au Japon*, *au Mexique*, *au Canada*, *aux États-Unis*, forms which, once established, have remained. Feminine countries outside of Europe, however, follow the analogy of European countries and use *en*, not *à* and the definite article, as *en Afrique*, *en Asie*, *en Amérique*.

A similar use of *à* with a definite, *en* with an indefinite, noun appears in the time expressions, *au printemps*, *en été*, *en automne*, *en hiver*.

Compare *penser à quelque chose*, *to think of something*, meaning the direction of one’s thought, with *penser quelque chose de . . .*, meaning *to have a certain opinion concerning . . .*

Probably the notion of location explains an expression

---

<sup>1</sup> From analogy with other masculine names of countries, *au Danemark*, *au Portugal* are now often heard.



like quelle heure est-il à votre montre? *What time is it by your watch?*

**203.** À introduces many adverbial phrases of manner and adjective phrases of characteristic: **parler à haute voix, acheter à tout prix, s'amuser aux dépens de quelqu'un, faire à la main, vendre à la douzaine, au poids, prendre un domestique à l'année, ce garçon aux yeux noirs, l'homme au nez rouge, ce géant aux larges épaules.**

**204.** Many verbs require à to introduce a dependent infinitive: **aimer à jouer, apprendre à lire, avoir à travailler, cherchez à comprendre.** Some of the most common of these are

aider	avoir	s'exposer	pousser
appeler	chercher	inviter	réduire
s'appliquer	condamner	montrer	réussir
apprendre	conduire	parvenir	songer
s'attendre	encourager	porter	tenir

Some, like the following, may take à or may govern the infinitive directly: **aimer, descendre, laisser, penser, prétendre, venir.**

Many, like the following, take sometimes à and sometimes **de**:

aimer	décider	forcer	prier	tâcher
commencer	demander	hésiter	refuser	tenter
consentir	déterminer	obliger	résoudre	venir
continuer	essayer			

When a verb has more than one possible construction with a complementary infinitive, as, **venir faire quelque chose, to come and do something; venir de faire quelque chose, to have just done something; venir à faire quelque chose, to happen to do something,** there are usually differ-

ences in meaning corresponding to the different prepositions. The best way to learn these is from the text in which they occur, or by careful study of the particular verb in a good dictionary. This grammar, therefore, makes no attempt to distinguish such uses.

**205.** Adjective phrases beginning with *à* often express tendency, destination, purpose: *un moulin à vent, une tasse à thé, du bois à brûler, une salle à manger, un penchant à mentir.*

Complementary phrases, with similar force, follow many adjectives: *bon à manger, prêt à partir, facile à faire, utile à savoir.* The infinitive in such phrases often has the force of an English passive infinitive. So also after certain verbs: *elle est à plaindre, la question reste à discuter* (see § 178), *il n'y a que ça à voir ici.*

*À* with *être* is used to affirm possession: *ce livre est à moi, ce cheval est-il à votre frère?*

Note the use of *à* with verbs of thinking: *je ne pense pas à elle, il songe à cela* (see § 202).

**206.** *À* with an infinitive often has a force similar to that of *en* with a present participle (gerund): *il a gagné cent dollars à vendre des moutons, il s'amuse à patiner, je me suis essoufflé à courir si vite.*

**207.** *Avant, devant.* *Avant* denotes time or order, *devant* is used of place: *devant la maison, il était arrivé avant nous, il était assis devant nous.* *Avant* is the opposite of *après, devant* of *derrière.*

**208.** *Avec* translates *with* expressing companionship or instrumentality: *il est venu avec son père, il écrit avec un crayon, il travaille avec ces outils.*

**209. Chez**, literally *at the house of*, may also refer to the place where one is commonly found or employed: **chez Marie**, *at Mary's (house)*; **chez le dentiste**, *at the dentist's (office)*. It is sometimes translated *among*: **chez les Grecs**, *among the Greeks*; or *in*, **chez elle**, *l'étrangeté sauvait la gaucherie*, *in her, quaintness saved from awkwardness*.

**210. Dans, en.** Both denote interiority, but **dans** stresses especially the notion of bounds or limits of a definite, enclosed space: **dans la maison**, **dans la rue**, **dans Paris**, **dans le jardin**; while **en** stresses the notion of a certain place or space as distinguished from others, **en France**, as distinguished from **en Italie** or **en Espagne**; **en l'air**, as distinguished from **dans l'eau**; **en ville**, as distinguished from **à la campagne**; **en famille**, as distinguished from **en société** or **dans le monde**; **en voiture**, not **en bateau** or **à pied**. **Dans** is definite and is felt as the opposite of **hors**; as regards its noun it is relatively emphatic: **lui dans le jardin**, **moi dehors**. **En** is general and unemphatic, and the contrast felt is a contrast of substantives rather than of prepositions. Hence in modern French **en** is rarely found before a definite article except where the article has been retained in certain common expressions, usually before a vowel sound, as, **en l'air**, **en l'an**. In Old French **en** was more generally used.

In expressions of time, **dans** means *at the end of*, **en** means *in the course of*: **je partirai dans une heure**; **en quinze minutes je vais d'ici à B.**; **en une heure je fais le trajet de B. à C.**, où j'arriverai donc **dans deux heures (et) un quart**. *I shall start in an hour; in fifteen minutes I can go from here to B.; in an hour I can make the journey from B. to C., where I shall arrive, therefore, in two hours and a quarter from now.*

**211. De.** The root meanings of *de* are origin or possession, *of*, and separation, *from*. *C'est le fils de ma voisine, Paris, capitale de la France, un morceau de fromage, de quoi parlent-ils? aller de la banque à la poste, sortir de la maison.*

Where the notion of agency or instrumentality is weak, *de* has a force similar to unstressed *par* or *avec*: *aimé de vos parents, frappé de cette ressemblance, suivi d'une troupe d'esclaves, écrire de la main droite.* Compare with *puni par ses parents, frappé par un assassin, poursuivi par ses ennemis, écrire avec une plume (à la plume, if adverbial clause of manner).* Note that with a passive verb *de* commonly introduces the agent of mental action and *par* the agent of a material act. *Avec* governs the immediate instrument, — while the *de*-phrase shades into an adverbial phrase of manner rather than instrument: *frapper avec un bâton, des deux mains, de toutes ses forces, de jour ou de nuit, d'une manière étonnante, sauter tout d'un coup, arriver d'un bond.*

In many phrases *de* occurs correlative with *à* or *en*: *de la page cinq (jusqu')à la page dix, de jour en jour, d'aujourd'hui en quinze, a fortnight from to-day.*

**212.** Many adjectives and participles, especially those expressing a sentiment, take *de* before their complement, as, *heureux de vous voir, étonné de sa réponse, digne d'une récompense.*

**213.** Nouns commonly require *de* before a dependent infinitive: *le temps de chercher mes gants, la permission de parler, avoir honte de revenir.*

**214.** Most impersonal verbs take *de* before an infinitive which is the logical subject of the clause: *il est*

bien de savoir cela; peu m'importe de tomber, *little care I if I fall.*

**215.** After **que**, in the second member of a comparison, **de** is used before an infinitive, unless the clause is very short: **j'aime mieux rester que de partir seule, mieux vaut être que paraître.**

**216.** A very large number of verbs commonly require **de** to introduce a dependent infinitive. Some of the most common are

achever	dire	ordonner
s'apercevoir	douter	oublier
avertir	écrire	pardonner
blâmer	empêcher	se passer
cesser	éviter	persuader
charger	feindre	promettre
commander	finir	punir
conseiller	se hâter	réprimander
convenir	louer	sommer
craindre	menacer	supplier
défendre	offrir	se vanter

For those taking sometimes **de** and sometimes **à**, see § 204.

These lists might be greatly extended, but the only satisfactory way to understand the different meanings which verbs have with various complements is to note carefully their use in texts and to study each verb in a dictionary complete enough to give numerous examples of its use with different prepositions or with a direct infinitive complement.

**217.** **Envers, vers.** **Envers** is figurative, **vers** is literal. **Marchons vers cette lueur, nous partirons vers**

(les) onze heures, il s'est bien conduit envers nous, il n'a pas été juste envers nous.

**218. Pour.** Cause or destination seem to be the root meanings of **pour**. **Pour** is used with an infinitive to express purpose. (Compare the use of **pour que** with the subjunctive.) The infinitive construction is used when the subject of a main verb and dependent infinitive is the same: **je vous écris pour vous dire**; **il est venu pour vaincre, mais il est parti vaincu**, *he came to conquer, but went away conquered*. The subjunctive construction is used when the subject changes: **je vous écris pour que vous sachiez**.

Compare the use of **aller** and **venir** with the pure infinitive, indicating actual performance of the second action: **il est venu vaincre ses ennemis**, *he came and conquered his enemies*; **je suis allé voir son père**, *I went and saw his father*.

**Pour** translates English *for* with expressions of future time: **j'ai pris cette maison pour trois ans**, *I have taken that house for three years*.

**Pour** also translates *for* meaning *in behalf of*. **J'ai acheté cela pour vous** (compare with **je vous ai acheté cela**).

Note also such expressions as: **partir pour Paris, essayer pour la dernière fois, dent pour dent, pour lors, pour sûr, jour pour jour, pour la plupart, venir pour affaires**, *to come on business*. **Mort pour mort, j'aime mieux être fusillé; il n'en est pas plus riche pour cela**, *he is no richer on that account*.

**219.** Certain idiomatic uses of prepositions appear in the following expressions:

tenir à voir, *to be determined to see.*

à mon avis, *in my opinion.*

à l'avenir, *in the future.*

s'il vient à tomber, *if he happens to fall.*

à temps, *in time.*

c'est bien bon à vous, *it is very kind in you.*

boire dans un verre, *to drink from a glass.*

prendre dans une boîte (un tiroir), *to take from a box (drawer).*

d'après (selon, suivant) sa lettre, *according to his letter.*

il vient de partir, *he has just gone away.*

cet enfant tient de sa mère, *that child takes after his mother.*

changer de direction, *to change direction.*

se tromper de chemin, *to miss one's way.*

il est plus âgé que moi de deux ans, et plus grand de trois centimètres, *he is two years older and an inch taller than I.*

menuisier de son état, *a carpenter by trade.*

cette bague est en or, *that ring is of gold.*

docteur en médecine, bachelier ès (en les) lettres, *doctor of medicine, bachelor of arts.*

entrer (sortir) par la porte (fenêtre), *to come in (go out) through the door (window).*

commencer (finir) par dire, *to say first (last).*

par la pluie, *in the rain.*

par le passé, *in the past.*

tomber à terre, *to fall to the ground (from above).*

tomber par terre, *to fall (over) on the ground.*

avoir sous la main, *to have at hand.*

sous les yeux, *before one's eyes.*

sous le règne de, *in the reign of.*

avoir de l'argent sur vous, *to have money about you.*

deux fois sur cinq, *two times in five.*

cinq mètres sur trois, *five meters by three.*

**220.** Repetition. **À**, **de**, and **en** are regularly repeated before each governed substantive, others are re-

peated for emphasis or contrast, but regularly need not be repeated:

elle pense à Jean et à Henri,	avec Jean et Henri,
pour Jean et Henri,	en France et en Espagne,
sur terre et sur mer,	sans peur et sans reproche,
entre Pierre et Jean,	les parents de Pierre et de Jean.

**221.** Many phrases compounded with **de** or **à** are used as prepositions. Some of them are

à cause de, *because of*.

à travers, *through*.

au-dessus de, *above*.

autour de, *around*.

en face de, *opposite*.

par delà, *beyond*.

par-dessus, *over*.

quant à, *as for*.

à côté de, *beside*.

au-dessous de, *below*.

au lieu de, *instead of*.

auprès de, *(very) near*.

jusqu'à, *until, as far as*.

par-dessous, *under*.

près de, *near*.

vis-à-vis de, *opposite*.

## CONJUNCTIONS

**222.** Conjunctions implying futurity, purpose, concession, or negation are followed by the subjunctive. The most common of these are

afin que, pour que, *in order that*.

avant que, *before*.

pourvu que, *provided that*.

à moins que, *unless*.

bien que, quoique, *although*.

sans que, *without*.

The verb introduced by **sans que** is not preceded by **ne**: **sans que personne le sache**.

Some conjunctive expressions take the subjunctive when purpose or tendency is expressed and the indicative with statements of fact. Such are

à condition que, *on condition that*.

de façon (manière) que, } *so*  
de (en) sorte que, } *that*.

au (dans le) cas où, *in case*.

jusqu'à ce que, *until*.

que, *that*.



**223.** Use **ni**, and not **et** or **ou**, in negative expressions.

**Sans pain ni viande**, *without bread or meat.*

**Ni menaces ni prières ne l'émeuvent**, *threats and prayers have no effect on him.*

Note that with **ni** each finite verb must be preceded by **ne**:

**Il ne chante, ne rit, ni ne pleure**, *he neither sings, nor laughs, nor cries.*

**224.** Use **quand**, not **lorsque**, in questions, direct or indirect. **Savez-vous quand il va revenir? J'étais ici quand (lorsque) vous êtes arrivé.** Do not use **quand** as a relative pronoun:

**Au moment où (not quand) cela se fit**, *at the moment when that took place.*

**225.** In contrasts, use **tandis que**, not **pendant que**. **Pendant que** expresses simultaneous action without contrast. **Il travaillait tandis que vous jouiez**, *he was working while you were playing*; but **il est parti pendant que vous jouiez**, *he went away while you were playing*. **Maintenant il est riche, tandis que son ancien patron n'a rien**, *now he is rich while his former employer has nothing*; but **il est devenu riche pendant que nous étions absents**, *he grew rich while we were away*.

**226.** **Depuis que** has reference to time; **puisque** introduces a statement of cause or reason:

**Il n'a pas plu depuis que vous êtes ici**, *it hasn't rained since you have been here.*

**Comment quitter l'île puisque nous n'avons pas de bateau?**  
*how leave the island since we have no boat?*

**227.** Distinguish carefully between conjunctions and corresponding prepositions:

<i>after</i> ,	preposition,	<b>après;</b>	conjunction,	<b>après que.</b>
<i>before</i> ,	"	<b>avant;</b>	"	<b>avant que</b> , with in-
				finitive, <b>avant de.</b>
<i>for</i> ,	"	<b>pour;</b>	"	<b>pour que (car).</b>
<i>since</i> ,	"	<b>depuis;</b>	"	<b>depuis que.</b>
<i>until</i> ,	"	<b>jusqu'à;</b>	"	<b>jusqu'à ce que.</b>
				etc.

**228.** **Que**, conjunction or pronoun, must not be omitted as English *that* often is:

*I think he will come, je pense qu'il viendra.*

**Que** is often used to avoid repeating another conjunction:

**Pourvu que j'en aie le temps et que vous le vouliez**, *provided I have the time and you wish it.*

**Si vous le voulez, et que j'en aie le temps**, *if you wish it and I have time enough.*

**Que** used for **si** always takes the subjunctive; otherwise **que** governs the mode which would be used after the conjunction replaced.

**Depuis que nous sommes ici et que je ne la vois plus.**

**229.** Note the word-order which places the emphatic adjective or adverb at the end of the word-group in exclamations after **que** or **comme**:

**Que ces fleurs sont belles! Comme vous dessinez bien!**

## INTERJECTIONS

**230.** Among those most commonly used are

**Ah!** **Ah!** (expressing joy, grief, or surprise).

**Aïe!** **Oh!** (pain).

**À la bonne heure!** All right! (approval, satisfaction).  
**À moi! au secours! au feu! à l'assassin! au voleur!**  
 Help! Help! Fire! Murder! Thieves!  
**Allons!** Come on! (encouragement).  
**Allons donc!** Nonsense, don't tell me! (incredulity).  
**Bis! Again! Repeat! Encore!**  
**Bon! Bien! Good!**  
**Chut!** (whispered) Hist!  
**Comment!** What! (surprise).  
**Comment donc!** Why, certainly!  
**En avant!** Forward!  
**Fi (donc)!** Oh fie! (disapproval).  
**Gare!** Look out (for)!  
**Ouf!** expresses suffocation or relief and exhaustion.  
**Par exemple!** Indeed! Nonsense! (denial, refusal).  
**Que si! Yes, I say! Que non! No indeed!**  
**Tiens!** Why! (surprise).  
**Voyons!** Come, now! (encouragement).

**231.** In a sentence, **comme** is exclamatory, **comment** interrogative (direct or indirect question).

**Comment chante-t-elle?** *How does she sing?*  
**Comme elle chante bien!** *How well she sings!*

## ABBREVIATIONS

**232.** The following are the commoner abbreviations used in French:

c.-à.-d. = c'est-à-dire, <i>that is.</i>	in-f° = in-folio, <i>folio.</i>
C <sup>ie</sup> or C <sup>e</sup> = compagnie, <i>company.</i>	J.-C. = Jésus-Christ, <i>Jesus Christ.</i>
etc. = et cætera.	M. = Monsieur, <i>Mr.</i>
fr. or f. = francs, <i>francs.</i>	MM. = Messieurs, <i>Messrs.</i>
h. = heure, <i>hour.</i>	M. R. = Monsieur R., <i>Mr. R.</i>

M<sup>d</sup> = marchand, *merchant*.

M<sup>e</sup> (pl. M<sup>es</sup>) = maître, *is used with names of lawyers instead of monsieur*.

M<sup>gr</sup>. (pl. NNSS.) = monseigneur, *my lord*.

M<sup>lle</sup> (pl. M<sup>lles</sup>) = Mademoiselle, *Miss*.

M<sup>me</sup> (pl. M<sup>es</sup>) = Madame, *Mrs*.

M<sup>n</sup> = maison, *house, firm*.

ms. (pl. mss.) = manuscrit, *manuscript*.

N.-D. = Notre-Dame, *Our Lady*.

N.-S. = Notre-Seigneur, *Our Lord*.

n<sup>o</sup> = numéro, *number*.

R. S. V. P. = Répondez s'il vous plaît, *an answer is requested*.

S. A. R. = Son Altesse Royale, *His Royal Highness*.

s.-ent. = sous-entendu, *understood*.

S. Exc. = Son Excellence, *His Excellency*.

S. M. (pl. LL. MM.) = Sa Majesté, *His (Her) Majesty*.

S. S. = Sa Sainteté, *His Holiness*.

s. v. p. = s'il vous plaît, *if you please*.

V<sup>e</sup> = veuve, *widow*.

I<sup>er</sup> (in titles) = premier, *the First*.

II (in titles) = deux, *the Second*.

Le XV<sup>e</sup> siècle, etc. = le quinzième siècle, *the 15th century*.

1<sup>er</sup> (fem. 1<sup>ère</sup>) = premier, *first*.

2<sup>e</sup> = deuxième, *second*.

1<sup>o</sup> = primo, *firstly*.

7<sup>bre</sup> = septembre, *September*.

X<sup>bre</sup> = décembre, *December*.

# TEXTS AND EXERCISES



## SELECTIONS FROM FRENCH HISTORY

Adapted from E. LAVISSE: *Première Année d'Histoire de France*

### I. GUERRE CONTRE LES ANGLAIS — JEANNE D'ARC

La France eut des guerres à soutenir contre ses voisins. La principale guerre fut contre les Anglais.

Un des grands seigneurs de France, le duc de Normandie, avait conquis l'Angleterre en 1066. En devenant roi d'Angleterre, il resta duc de Normandie. Ses successeurs acquirent encore d'autres provinces françaises, si bien que les ducs de Normandie, rois d'Angleterre, devinrent plus puissants en France que les rois de France.

Aussi nos rois firent-ils la guerre aux rois d'Angleterre. Une de ces guerres dura cent ans. Elle commença en 1336, lorsque le roi d'Angleterre, Édouard III, prétendit devenir roi de France.

Ce fut une guerre terrible. Les rois et les chevaliers de France y combattirent vaillamment, mais très mal, sans discipline, à la façon des anciens Gaulois. Au contraire, les Anglais combattirent avec beaucoup d'ordre et de sang-froid, comme autrefois les Romains. Les Anglais furent vainqueurs à Crécy (1346), à Calais, dont ils s'emparèrent (1347), à Poitiers (1356) où le roi Jean le Bon fut fait prisonnier après s'être défendu héroïquement. Les Anglais furent encore vainqueurs à Azincourt (1415).

Aux désastres de la guerre avec les Anglais vinrent s'ajouter les horreurs de la guerre civile des Armagnacs

et des Bourguignons; de sorte que, à l'avènement de Charles VII, en 1422, la France était ruinée et presque tout entière au pouvoir des Anglais.

Mais les Français, en combattant contre l'Angleterre, comprirent qu'ils étaient un seul et même peuple.

Ils eurent la haine de l'étranger et l'amour de la France. Ces sentiments inspirèrent Jeanne d'Arc, notre grande et sainte héroïne nationale. Elle battit les Anglais, délivra Orléans, une des villes que possédait encore le roi de France et que les Anglais voulaient lui prendre. Elle rendit confiance aux Français et fit sacrer Charles VII à Rheims, pour qu'il fût reconnu de tous comme roi de France, car les rois avaient coutume de se faire sacrer dans cette ville.

Jeanne fut faite prisonnière à Compiègne. Les Anglais la brûlèrent à Rouen en 1431. Mais cette abominable cruauté ne leur rendit pas la victoire. Charles VII les chassa du royaume, où ils ne gardèrent plus que Calais (1453).

### ARTICLES AND PARTITIVES

(See §§ 136-137; §§ 33-37)

France, Poitiers, England, Calais, Normandy, Agincourt. The king of France, the king of England, the duke of Normandy; love of Normandy, hatred of England, the victories of France.

Good John, holy Jeanne, great Charles, mighty Edward. Discipline, coolness, war, order, confidence, cruelty. With abominable cruelty, with admirable coolness, with astonishing confidence; without hatred, without order, with great love for France; against king Edward, against duke Charles.

Powerless, loveless, fearless; without king John, without duke Charles; John, the king of England; Charles, the king of France; Edward, the victor at Poitiers; Jeanne, the prisoner of the English.



To make war, to fight against England, to ruin Normandy; conquerors fight heroically, good kings defend their people.

In Calais, in England, in Poitiers; a war against foreigners, the custom of English kings.

Wars, terrible wars, great wars, abominable wars, many wars, no wars, civil wars, all wars. Some cities, no cities, great cities, ruined cities, other cities, to burn cities, such (**tel**) cities, such wars.

Englishmen, no Englishmen, Frenchmen, no Frenchmen, all Frenchmen, some foreigners, no foreigners, many foreigners (*use both **beaucoup** and **bien***), most foreigners, most cities, most Frenchmen, most Romans, all Romans.

No Romans, in the manner of ancient Romans, Roman conquerors, some old Gauls, other Gauls, no Gauls, many Gauls, all Gauls.

More (***encore**, not treated as an adverb of quantity*) wars, more Englishmen, more French prisoners, more great lords, more disasters, more horrors. No more (**plus**) civil wars, no more confidence, no more lords, no more dukes, no more conquerors, no more kings.

Provincial cities, conquered provinces, provincial wars, provincial knights, many knights, Norman knights, all provinces, all knights.

So many (**tant**) ruined cities, so many undisciplined knights, so many prisoners, so many horrors, so many disasters. A sort of national heroine, a sort of great lord, a sort of hatred, a sort of love, a sort of kingdom, all heroines, all disasters, all hatreds, all kingdoms.

Such Romans, such kings, such (**de si**) good kings, such great cities, such customs, such a custom, such horrible customs, such confidence, such great confidence, such cruelty, such abominable cruelty, such horrors, such great horrors, such heroines, such holy heroines.

## II. LES TROIS ÉTATS

Le mot État signifie condition, profession, métier (comme, par exemple, dans l'expression: *état militaire*). Il y avait en France trois états ou conditions: l'état du clergé, qui comprenait les prêtres, évêques et archevêques, les moines et les abbés; l'état de la noblesse, qui comprenait tous les seigneurs; et le troisième état, ou tiers état, qui comprenait les bourgeois des villes. On appelait États généraux la réunion des députés du clergé, de la noblesse et du tiers état. Les États généraux furent réunis pour la première fois sous le règne de Philippe le Bel. La première assemblée célèbre est celle de l'an 1302.

Les rois réunissaient les États généraux pour leur demander aide et conseil, c'est-à-dire de l'argent, des soldats, et l'approbation de leurs actes. Les États généraux auraient donc pu devenir une assemblée nationale qui aurait voté l'impôt, fait les lois et gouverné la France avec le roi.

Malheureusement il n'en fut pas ainsi. Les rois, qui aimaient mieux gouverner seuls, convoquèrent les États généraux le moins souvent possible. Puis les trois ordres ne surent pas s'entendre pour empêcher le roi de devenir trop puissant. Le clergé et la noblesse avaient des privilèges qu'ils voulaient garder; ils avaient l'orgueil de leur condition et ils dédaignaient le tiers état. Le roi continua donc à faire ses volontés, et la France ne devint pas alors un pays libre.

## POSSESSIVES AND DEMONSTRATIVES

(See §§ 66-71)

Those lords, those are lords, his lord, her lord, our lord, their lord, their lords, that lord, this lord or that lord.

Those liberties, your liberties, ours, his, theirs, yours, mine,

hers, the citizens', the monks', our liberties, these or ours, ours or the third estate's.

That soldier, those soldiers, these, the king's, Philip's, her soldier, the silver one.

That money, his, your money, mine, her money, theirs, the king's, that of the States General, that is money, that money is mine (*à moi*), that money is his, that money is hers, that money is ours.

That condition and this one, those lords and these, these cities and those, our bishops and yours, this meeting and that one, this time and that one, this tax and that one, his approval and yours, her approval and the king's, her pride and the king's, my will and his, his will and mine, her will and the archbishop's.

That assembly, that pride, that approval, that tax, that law, that state, that example, that bishop, that abbot, that law, that order, that reign, that aid, that advice, that act, that privilege, that country.

This assembly, the first one, the last one, the French one, the one of Philip's reign, the one we demand, that of the year 1300.

That is a large city, that city is large, those are citizens of Paris, those citizens are going to Paris, that is a meeting of the three orders, that meeting is famous, that is the king of France, that king is famous.

That is my trade, that business is better (*valoir mieux*) than mine, that is his condition, that condition is better than his, that is our city, this city is larger than ours, those are your soldiers, those soldiers are the king's, those soldiers are yours, those soldiers are more famous than the king's, those soldiers are not so (*moins*) famous as ours and theirs.

The king says this, the bishop says that, the citizens like this better than that, the lords demand this, the clergy demands that.

The nobility despises what the citizens love; the king does not understand what the nobility is doing; do you understand what is doing that?

Do you understand what we are doing? Do you understand

what the third estate might have become? Do you understand what keeps the nobility from becoming too powerful?

Do you know what makes a free country? Do you know what the deputies are asking? That is what we do not understand.

### III. FRANÇOIS PREMIER ET CHARLES-QUINT

En 1515 François I<sup>er</sup> semblait le plus puissant roi du monde; mais on vit bientôt en Europe un prince plus puissant que lui: c'était Charles d'Autriche. Le père de Charles d'Autriche était Philippe le Beau, fils de Maximilien, empereur d'Allemagne, et de Marie de Bourgogne. Philippe le Beau possédait les Pays-Bas, l'Artois, et la Franche-Comté. Il mourut jeune encore et son fils Charles d'Autriche hérita de ces belles provinces.

La mère de Charles d'Autriche était Jeanne la Folle, fille de Ferdinand le Catholique et d'Isabelle de Castille, qui possédaient à eux deux l'Espagne, le Roussillon, le royaume de Naples et d'immenses territoires en Amérique. Du côté de sa mère, Charles eut donc l'Espagne, le Roussillon, Naples, les territoires d'Amérique.

En 1519, Maximilien, empereur d'Allemagne, mourut. Charles d'Autriche, qui était son petit-fils, fut élu empereur et prit le nom de Charles-Quint, ce qui veut dire Charles Cinq. Charles-Quint possédait donc une grande partie de l'Europe et de l'Amérique; c'était un prince très instruit et très réfléchi, quoiqu'il fût très jeune.

François I<sup>er</sup> fut très irrité de l'élection de Charles-Quint comme empereur d'Allemagne, car il avait espéré lui-même être élu empereur. Il fit la guerre à Charles-Quint. Il n'avait pas autant d'États que Charles, mais il était bien obéi dans son royaume, où il trouvait autant d'argent et de soldats qu'il voulait. Il eut pour alliés des

princes italiens, qui trouvaient Charles-Quint trop puissant en Italie, et des princes allemands, qui le trouvaient trop puissant en Allemagne. Il fit aussi alliance avec Soliman, le sultan ou empereur des Turcs. Avec le secours de ces alliés, François I<sup>er</sup> put résister à Charles-Quint.

## INTERROGATIVES AND COMPARATIVES

(See §§ 51-53, 81-83; §§ 133-135, 191)

Who seemed the most powerful king in the world? Who inherited the finest provinces in Europe? Whom did you see in Paris? Who was more powerful than Francis First?

Was Francis I less powerful than Charles V? Was the emperor as powerful as Francis I? Who was father of Charles of Austria? What king died young? What provinces had he inherited?

Whose son was Charles? Whose father was Maximilian? From whom did Charles inherit the Low Countries? To whom did Philip leave Artois?

Are you younger than Philip? Is Charles as young as Francis? Who is younger than Mary? Maximilian is not so young as you.

What means "Charles Fifth"? Do you know what Charles-Quint means? What does he mean? Do you know what means "Crazy Jane"? Who did that? What did that? What do you see? Whom do you see?

Who was the most learned prince in Germany? What name did he take? What territories did he possess? Against whom did Francis I make war? Who had as many states as Charles?

What made him so powerful? With what was he able to resist Charles? Of what are we speaking? Of what are you thinking? What do you think of Charles V?

Which of those provinces is the finest in Europe? Of which are you thinking? Of which are you speaking? Which of those princes are as thoughtful as Philip?

Which of those kingdoms is the most powerful? Of which are you thinking? Of which are you speaking? What territories did Charles possess? Of which are we thinking? Of which is the Sultan speaking?

#### IV. HENRI QUATRE

Henri III étant mort sans enfants, l'héritier de la couronne fut Henri de Navarre, qui devint le roi Henri IV (1589-1610).

Depuis son enfance, le futur Henri IV était aux armées. Il avait assisté à bien des batailles et à bien des prises de ville, et toujours on l'avait vu combattre au premier rang.

La plupart des provinces avaient pour gouverneurs des nobles du parti de la Ligue. Le chef de la Ligue était Mayenne, frère du duc Henri de Guise. Ces gouverneurs ne voulaient pas reconnaître Henri IV pour roi. Ils recevaient du roi d'Espagne, Philippe II, de l'argent et des troupes. Henri IV demanda des secours à la reine d'Angleterre, Élisabeth, et à quelques princes d'Allemagne; mais il compta surtout sur lui-même.

Mayenne vint l'attaquer en Normandie avec une grande armée. Un moment, Henri se crut perdu, mais à la fin il fut vainqueur, et l'armée de Mayenne s'enfuit devant la petite troupe du roi de France.

Henri pardonna à tous ceux qui s'étaient révoltés contre lui. Il voulut que ses sujets s'aimassent les uns les autres, et qu'il n'y eût plus jamais de guerres civiles en France. Il aimait beaucoup les paysans. Il aurait voulu que chacun d'eux pût mettre le dimanche «la poule au pot.» Il honora de son amitié Olivier de Serres, qui était, comme Sully, un grand ami de l'agriculture. Mais il

aimait aussi les ouvriers. Il créa des fabriques de draps, de tapis, de verres, de cristaux.

On ne fabriquait plus d'étoffes de soie en France, et pourtant les nobles et les riches bourgeois en portaient. Il fallait aller acheter de la soie en Italie. Henri IV voulut qu'on élevât en France des vers à soie; il fit planter des mûriers, dont la feuille nourrit le ver à soie.

On lui envoya la première paire de bas de soie qui fut fabriquée dans le royaume. Il la mit tout de suite et il la faisait voir à tout le monde. Il était aussi fier ce jour-là que s'il avait remporté une victoire.

Car ce grand roi n'était pas seulement un guerrier; il aimait tout ce qu'un prince doit aimer, l'agriculture, le commerce, l'industrie, qui enrichissent le pays.

## DISJUNCTIVE PERSONALS AND RELATIVES

(See §§ 55, 57; §§ 72-80)

A. Translate each expression, and repeat, inflecting, e.g. moi, qui les vois; toi, qui les vois; lui, qui les voit; elle, qui les voit; nous, qui les voyons, etc.

I, who see them; you, whom he sees. I, who have been present at many battles. We, who fight in the first rank.

He, whom they will not recognize as king. You, from whom they receive money and troops. She, upon whom I counted.

They, from whom she asked help. I, who am victor. He, who has forgiven them. They, who have revolted. It is against me that they have revolted.

B. He, who loves the peasants. He, whom the peasants love. He, of whom the peasants are speaking. He, whom the peasants obey. He, who thinks of the peasants. He, who honors us with his friendship.

They, whom we honor with our friendship. She, whose friendship honors us. He, whose friendship we desire.

In the expressions under *B*, suppose the commas omitted and repeat the expressions. (*Celui qui aime*, etc.) What kind of pronouns then take the place of the disjunctive personals?

*C*. The king without whose friendship that industry would die. The mulberry-trees, the leaves of which feed the silkworms; the mulberry-trees, the leaves of which the silkworms eat; the mulberry-trees, without whose leaves the silkworms would die.

The victory of which they are so proud; the king, of whose friendship they are so proud.

What enriches the country you are speaking of? What feeds the silkworms you are thinking of?

The king wishes what the peasants desire. The king loves what will enrich the kingdom. The nobles do not know what we are speaking of.

Show us what you are doing. Show us what feeds the silkworms. Tell us what they are planting. Tell us what makes them go to Italy.

## V. LOUIS QUATORZE

Louis XIV (1643-1715) commença à gouverner par lui-même en 1661. Ses principaux ministres furent alors Colbert et Louvois.

Louis XIV a un grand nom dans l'histoire, parce qu'il a été longtemps heureux dans son gouvernement et dans ses guerres, puis parce que de grands écrivains et de grands artistes ont vécu de son temps et qu'il a été leur protecteur.

Les plus grands écrivains du siècle de Louis XIV sont: Corneille et Racine, poètes qui ont écrit des tragédies; Molière, qui a écrit des comédies en vers et en prose; Boileau, poète qui a écrit des lettres et des satires; La Fontaine, poète qui a écrit des fables; Descartes, qui a été un grand philosophe; Pascal, qui a été un grand savant en



même temps qu'un grand écrivain; Bossuet, évêque de Meaux, qui a prononcé d'admirables sermons et des oraisons funèbres, et qui a composé de beaux livres d'histoire et de philosophie pour l'instruction de son élève le dauphin, fils de Louis XIV; Fénelon, archevêque de Cambrai, qui a composé de beaux livres pour l'instruction de son élève, le duc de Bourgogne, petit-fils de Louis XIV.

Il y a eu aussi de grands artistes au temps de Louis XIV. Les plus célèbres sont les peintres Lesueur, Claude Lorrain, Poussin, Mignard; le sculpteur Paget; les architectes Perrault, qui a construit la colonnade du Louvre, à Paris, et Mansard, qui a construit une grande partie du palais de Versailles.

La plupart de ces écrivains et de ces artistes ont célébré les gloires de Louis XIV. Mais les gloires de Louis XIV n'ont pas duré jusqu'à la fin de son règne. Louis XIV était un roi trop absolu. Il ne permettait à personne de discuter ses ordres. Il disait que la volonté de Dieu est que les sujets obéissent sans discuter.

Sa vie privée fut longtemps scandaleuse, et personne n'osait lui reprocher sa conduite.

Louis XIV dépensa sans compter l'argent de ses sujets pour satisfaire son orgueil; sa cour et les palais qu'il fit bâtir, surtout le palais de Versailles, coûtèrent des sommes énormes, qui s'ajoutèrent à celles qu'il fallut dépenser pour la guerre.

Les souffrances du peuple furent épouvantables vers la fin du règne. Aussi Louis XIV, au moment où il mourut (1715), était maudit de tout son peuple.

**TWO OBJECTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS — PAST PARTICIPLES**

(See §§ 63-65; §§ 91-92, 110-180)

(When possible, repeat sentences, inflecting the direct or the indirect object; also changing from affirmative to negative.)

Have you read the letters he has written? He wrote them to me — to you — to him, etc.

Write them to her. Do not write us any. Didn't he write them any?

Great authors have composed those books which you have read.

I have seen the colonnade that Perrault has built for Louis XIV. It is in Paris, and I have seen it there.

Permit it to me. I do not permit it to you. Do not allow it to them. Who told you so? Do not tell me so. They told him so.

He regrets the conduct for which I reproached him. Don't reproach me for it. Reproach them for it.

She has reproached herself for it. He has reproached himself for it. We have reproached ourselves for it. They have reproached themselves for it.

The books they have written; the tragedies they have written; the sermons they have written; the orations they have written.

The great artists there have been; the pupils he has had; the poets there have been; the grandsons she has had; the comedies there have been.

The sums they have cost. The orders we have discussed. The sums he has expended.

The palaces he has had built for himself; the portions which Perrault has made; the portions which Louis has had constructed.

The conduct he has allowed himself; the orders he has allowed himself to give; the pride with which she has reproached herself.

They died this morning; she died accursed of her whole people; the people have cursed their ministers; which ministers did the people curse?

Fenelon has composed beautiful books. Which books has Fenelon composed? For whom did he compose them? Did he compose them for him in the time of Louis XIV?

## VI. LOUIS QUINZE

Dans les dernières années du règne de Louis XV, l'Angleterre commandait sur toutes les mers, et elle avait conquis un empire colonial immense.

La Prusse était devenue redoutable, et elle allait être constamment l'ennemie de la France.

Une autre grande puissance était née. C'était la Russie, qui devint un des premiers États de l'Europe à partir du règne de Pierre le Grand. En France, tout allait mal.

Louis XV dépensa tant d'argent que le gouvernement, à la fin, fit banqueroute, c'est-à-dire refusa de payer ce qu'il devait.

Louis XIV avait abusé déjà du pouvoir royal; mais Louis XV ne s'en servit que pour mener une vie honteuse. Il rendit le pouvoir royal odieux à tous les bons Français.

Alors tous les Français intelligents et patriotes demandèrent la réforme d'un gouvernement que personne n'aimait plus et qui ne faisait plus que du mal à notre pays.

Ils voulaient que le roi ne commandât plus à ses sujets comme un maître à des esclaves.

Ils voulaient la liberté de la presse, c'est-à-dire la liberté pour les Français d'exprimer leurs opinions par les journaux et par les livres.

Ils voulaient la liberté du travail, c'est-à-dire que tous les Français pussent travailler comme ils l'entendraient, au lieu d'être obligés d'entrer dans une corporation et de se soumettre à des règlements qui gênaient le travail.

Ils voulaient aussi que tous les Français fussent égaux entre eux. Les nobles et le clergé avaient toutes sortes de privilèges; ils ne payaient pas d'impôts. Au contraire, les pauvres paysans, ruinés par les impôts du roi, payaient aussi des redevances à leurs seigneurs et ils étaient obligés de travailler pour ceux-ci.

Les écrivains demandaient donc que l'impôt fût payé par tout le monde, et que les droits féodaux, que les paysans payaient aux seigneurs, fussent abolis.

La France était exploitée comme une propriété par le roi et par les nobles. Et pourtant le roi et les nobles avaient laissé périr le vieil honneur de la France. Ils avaient montré qu'ils n'étaient plus capables de la gouverner. Tous les Français intelligents voulaient que la France se gouvernât elle-même, et que son gouvernement fût juste.

Les écrivains français du temps de Louis XV honorèrent la France que le gouvernement de ce roi déshonorait. Ils furent admirés et imités dans le monde entier. La France représente dans le monde, depuis ce temps-là, les idées de justice, de liberté et d'humanité.

Louis XV mourut en 1774. La nouvelle de sa mort ne fit pleurer personne dans le royaume. Lui qu'on avait commencé par tant aimer, on le méprisait. Il a été le plus mauvais roi de toute notre histoire. Ce n'est pas assez de détester sa mémoire, il faut l'exécrer.

### FUTURE AND CONDITIONAL

(See §§ 98-100, 163-164; §§ 114-116, 165-168)

Thou shalt not abuse the royal power; thou shalt not spend so much money; thou shalt pay what thou owest; thou shalt not lead a life of shame.

If he spends so much money, he will be bankrupt; when he is

bankrupt, he will refuse to pay what he owes; if he should refuse to pay what he owes, he would make himself odious.

Can he have failed? If he refuses to pay what he owes, he must have failed. Even if he has failed, he will not refuse to pay what he owes you; even though he had failed, he would not refuse to pay what he owes us.

He has probably been leading a shameful life; no doubt he has already abused the royal power. From what the papers say, he has gone into insolvency.

If the king will no longer govern France, she will govern herself. If he has despoiled France, she will govern herself. When he is no longer able to govern her, she will govern herself.

If he were no longer able to govern her, she would govern herself. If he had despoiled her, she would now be governing herself. If he had despoiled her, she would have governed herself.

As soon as all Frenchmen are equal, feudal rights will be abolished. They knew that as soon as all Frenchmen were equal, the tax would be paid by everybody.

If all Frenchmen were equal now, the tax would be paid by everyone. If the feudal rights should be abolished to-morrow, the tax would be paid by everyone. If feudal rights had been abolished yesterday, the nobles would now be paying taxes.

When France governs herself, her government will be just. If France is governing herself, she will no longer be despised. When the peasants can work as they please, France will be admired the world over.

Under Louis XV, they could not work as they pleased. They could not now work as they pleased, if they were forced to join a trade-guild. If the king had commanded them, as a master his slaves, they could not have worked as they pleased.

Russia was to be one of the first states of Europe; she ought to have governed herself from the time of Peter the Great.

Prussia ought not to be always the enemy of France; I should like to see her represent ideas of justice, liberty, and humanity.

One cannot too strongly detest the memory of Louis XV. One cannot too strongly demand the liberty of the press and the liberty of labor.

## VII. LA RÉVOLUTION

Les États généraux se réunirent à Versailles le 5 mai 1789.

Les députés du tiers état étaient plus nombreux que ceux du clergé et de la noblesse réunis, et ils voulurent que les trois ordres délibérassent ensemble, et que les décisions des États généraux fussent prises à la majorité des votants.

Les députés de la noblesse et du clergé refusèrent d'abord d'y consentir, et le roi appuya leur résistance.

Le 20 juin 1789, les députés du tiers état jurèrent dans la salle du Jeu de Paume de ne pas se séparer sans avoir donné une Constitution à la France.

Le roi, le clergé et la noblesse cédèrent successivement; les trois ordres délibérèrent ensemble, et les États généraux prirent le nom d'Assemblée nationale constituante.

Les préparatifs militaires de la cour amenèrent une insurrection. La Bastille fut prise le 14 juillet 1789.

Louis XVI essaya de s'enfuir, mais il fut arrêté. Il jura alors d'observer la constitution votée par l'Assemblée nationale constituante, qui se sépara au mois de septembre 1791.

La Constituante a détruit le pouvoir absolu des rois, elle a donné à tous les Français la liberté et l'égalité. Elle a organisé la France.

L'Assemblée législative succéda à l'Assemblée constituante au mois de septembre 1791. Comme l'Autriche faisait des armements contre la France, Louis XVI lui déclara la guerre; mais personne ne croyait à sa sincérité, et le peuple de Paris envahit les Tuileries le 10 août 1792.

La Convention nationale, qui se réunit en septembre 1792, établit la République. Elle condamna à mort Louis XVI, qui fut exécuté le 21 janvier 1793.

La Terreur, pendant laquelle périssent des milliers de victimes, dure jusqu'à ce que Robespierre meure sur l'échafaud (juillet 1794).

La Convention nationale se sépare en 1795.

En 1800 les guerres de la Révolution semblaient finies.

Les pays de la rive gauche du Rhin, qui jadis appartenaient à des princes allemands, appartenaient à la France.

La Belgique, qui jadis appartenait à l'Autriche, appartenait à la France.

La Hollande, qui avait été si longtemps notre ennemie, était devenue la République batave, et elle était notre alliée.

La République suisse avait été réorganisée par la France.

En Italie, dans ce pays qui avait si longtemps appartenu à nos ennemis d'Autriche et d'Espagne, nous avons fondé des républiques, qui étaient nos alliées et nos protégées.

En huit ans, de 1792 à 1800, la Révolution française avait fait pour la grandeur de la patrie plus que François I<sup>er</sup>, Henri IV, Richelieu, Mazarin, et Louis XIV.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

(See §§ 117-125)

He wishes the States General to meet at Versailles. He orders the decisions to be made by a majority vote. They will meet in the tennis court, although the king has refused it to them.

The king will yield, that the Assembly may not separate without having given France a constitution. It is right for the three estates to deliberate together.

I am glad the Bastille is captured. I am surprised that it was captured so easily. I am sorry the deputies of the nobility are so numerous. I am sorry they refused to deliberate together.

I do not say the king is a wicked man. I am sorry he tried to run away. I do not believe he has been arrested.

It is necessary for the deputies to give France a constitution. Do you believe the people has invaded the Tuileries?

Do you believe the king is a prisoner in the Temple?

I believe the Convention will meet, but I do not believe it will condemn the king to death.

He is the only king of France who has died on the scaffold.

Valmy is the most celebrated victory that that general has won.

Robespierre and Marat are the most detestable men that I know.

Louis IX is the best king who ever reigned in France. Richelieu is the greatest cardinal France has known. Richelieu is the greatest of the cardinals who have governed France.

Danton and Camille Desmoulins are the greatest of the Montagnards who died on the scaffold.

Change primary (present and future) tenses of the main verbs to the corresponding secondary (imperfect indicative and present conditional) tenses, and repeat the sentences.

### VIII. NAPOLEON

Napoléon Bonaparte est né à Ajaccio, le 15 août 1769. Son père avait cinq fils et trois filles. Napoléon était le second de la famille.

A dix ans il entra à l'école militaire de Brienne comme boursier, car son père n'était pas assez riche pour payer les frais de son éducation. Le jeune écolier travaillait beaucoup, et à quinze ans il fut envoyé à l'école militaire de Paris. A seize ans il était lieutenant en second dans un régiment d'artillerie.



Il devint rapidement capitaine, puis commandant, et il avait ce grade quand il fut envoyé à l'armée qui assiégeait Toulon, dont les Anglais s'étaient emparés en 1793. Grace à lui, Toulon fut pris en quelques jours, et il fut fait général. Il avait vingt-quatre ans.

Quand Bonaparte pris le commandement de l'armée d'Italie, en 1796, il avait vingt-six ans.

On croit lire un roman en lisant cette histoire d'un homme, qui était en 1785, à seize ans, un lieutenant d'artillerie inconnu de tous; quinze ans après, en 1799, premier consul et maître de la France; cinq ans après, en 1804, empereur; en 1811, maître de presque toute l'Europe.

Mais l'Angleterre n'avait pas été vaincue, l'Espagne résistait toujours, et bientôt la guerre éclata avec la Russie.

Napoléon envahit la Russie au mois de juin 1812. Il fut vainqueur, sur le chemin de Moscou, à la bataille de la Moskova; il entra dans Moscou, mais les Russes brûlèrent la ville, et l'hiver vint. Napoléon fut obligé de battre en retraite. L'armée souffrit du froid et de la faim dans les plaines désolées et couvertes de neige. La cavalerie russe harcelait nos soldats. Trois cent mille soldats de Napoléon périrent dans cette guerre.

Le roi de Prusse et les princes allemands, qui tremblaient naguère devant Napoléon, s'enhardirent alors et lui déclarèrent la guerre. L'empereur d'Autriche, bien qu'il fût le beau-père de Napoléon, se joignit à ses ennemis pour l'écraser, et toute l'Allemagne se souleva contre nous, comme l'Espagne.

À Leipzig (1813), Napoléon, avec 200,000 hommes, livra pendant trois jours, à 300,000 Russes et Allemands, une bataille qu'on a appelée la bataille des nations, parce que presque toutes les nations de l'Europe y furent repré-

sentées. Napoléon fut vaincu. Il abdiqua en faveur de son fils que les souverains alliés ne voulurent pas laisser régner.

Ce fut alors que le comte de Provence, frère et héritier de Louis XVI, rentra en France. Il devint le roi Louis XVIII, et Napoléon se rendit à l'île d'Elbe dont on lui avait donné la souveraineté.

Au mois de mars 1815, il quitta l'île d'Elbe; il débarqua sur les côtes de Provence et traversa la France sans que personne pût l'arrêter, parce que les soldats envoyés contre lui par Louis XVIII criaient, «Vive l'empereur!» Louis XVIII s'enfuit de Paris et l'empereur y rentra.

Aussitôt les souverains déclarèrent la guerre à Napoléon, qui fut battu à Waterloo au mois de juin 1815. Le gouvernement anglais l'envoya prisonnier dans une île d'Afrique, à Sainte-Hélène, et Louis XVIII rentra en France. Napoléon laissa la France plus petite qu'elle n'était à son avènement, plus petite même que l'ancienne monarchie ne l'avait faite.

### SUBJUNCTIVES AND INFINITIVES

(See §§ 171-178, 197, 222; §§ 202-206, 211-218)

However young Napoleon is, he will know how to take Toulon. Whoever that young man is, he works hard. Whatever his family is, and however rich his father is, he will never have command of the army.

Quite unknown as he is, he is entering the military school. They are seeking a general who can take Toulon in a few days. Do you know the general who has just taken Leipzig?

I do not want a friend who joins my enemies in (à) the day of battle. Let us choose a friend who tells us what he thinks. I have found a friend who always says what he thinks.

I do not believe that he would burn the city if he should enter it. It is true that he would join our enemies if we were

beaten. It is not possible that he would join our enemies if we were beaten.

Join us that we may crush him! We shall not crush him unless you join us. Before you join us, declare war against Napoleon! Before your friends join us, they must declare war against Napoleon.

Although you tremble in Napoleon's presence, you must declare war against him. Provided that they do not die on the way, they will prevent the French from entering Waterloo.

He will cross France without anyone being able to stop him. He will leave his island without either Russians or English knowing it. Let us send soldiers against him, that he may not land on the coast of Provence!

(Repeat the preceding sentences, changing primary to the corresponding secondary tenses in the main clauses.)

We are not rich enough to go to France this summer. Send him to take Toulon. He has much to do. Do you think you are reading novels?

The Russians will come and burn the city. The Russians are going to burn the city. The Russians have just burned the city. If the Russians happen to burn the city, we shall suffer from cold and hunger.

It is time to beat a retreat. That is easy to say, but hard to do. Tell them to join us. Let us rise to crush our enemies. The government is ready to send him to Saint Helena.

Shout to them to go to the island of Elba. That will teach him to invade Russia. Invite him to leave France. Twice has he seen France invaded.

Those poor soldiers are to be pitied. They like better to die than to surrender.

Let him study, that he may be a general at twenty-four!

Let Spain resist him, let Russia burn her cities, let Prussia take courage, let Austria join his enemies!

God forbid that we have to fight such battles! Would to God that he had not come back to France!

## NOIRAUD

LUDOVIC HALÉVY

— N'ayez pas peur, monsieur, vous ne manquerez pas le train. Voilà quinze ans que je mène des voyageurs au chemin de fer, et jamais je ne leur ai fait manquer le train! Entendez-vous, monsieur, jamais!

— Cependant . . .

— Oh! ne regardez pas votre montre. Il y a une chose que vous ne savez pas et qu'il faut savoir et que votre montre ne vous dira pas. C'est que le train est toujours en retard d'un quart d'heure. Il n'y a pas d'exemple que le train n'ait pas été en retard d'un quart d'heure.

Il y en eut un ce jour-là. Le train avait été exact et je le manquai. Mon cocher était furieux.

— Il faut prévenir, disait-il au chef de gare, il faut prévenir si vos trains, tout d'un coup, se mettent à partir à l'heure. Jamais on n'a vu ça!

Et prenant à témoin tous les assistants:

— N'est-ce pas qu'on n'a jamais vu ça? Je ne veux pas paraître fautif près de monsieur. Un train à l'heure! Un train à l'heure! Dites-lui bien que c'est la première fois que c'est arrivé.

Ce fut un cri général. «Oh oui! oh oui! ordinairement il y a du retard.» Je n'en avais pas moins trois grandes heures à passer dans un très mélancolique village du canton de Vaud, au pied de deux mélancoliques montagnes qui avaient deux petites houppettes de neige sur la tête.

Comment tuer ces trois heures? A mon tour, j'invoquai l'assistance. Et ce fut de nouveau un cri général:

— Allez voir le Chaudron! il n'y a que ça à voir dans le pays.

Et où était-il, ce Chaudron?

Sur la montagne de droite, à mi-côte; mais le chemin était un peu compliqué; on me conseillait de prendre un guide, et là-bas, dans cette petite maison blanche avec des volets verts, je devais trouver le meilleur guide du pays, un brave homme, le père Simon.

Je m'en allai frapper à la porte de la petite maison.

Une vieille femme vint m'ouvrir.

— Le père Simon?

— C'est bien ici. Mais voilà! si c'est pour aller au Chaudron?

— Oui, c'est pour aller au Chaudron.

— Eh bien! Il ne va pas bien depuis ce matin, le père Simon. Il n'a pas de jambes. Il ne peut pas sortir. Seulement, ne vous inquiétez pas, il y a quelqu'un pour le remplacer; il y a Noiraud.

— Va pour Noiraud.

— Seulement il faut que je vous prévienne. Ce n'est pas une personne, Noiraud.

— Pas une personne?

— Non, c'est notre chien.

— Comment, votre chien?

— Oui, Noiraud. Et il vous conduira très bien, aussi bien que mon mari; il a l'habitude.

— L'habitude?

— Certainement, depuis des années et des années, le père Simon l'emmène avec lui. Alors il a appris à connaître les endroits et maintenant il fait très bien sa petite affaire tout seul. Il a souvent conduit des voyageurs, et nous en avons toujours eu des compliments. Pour ce qui est de l'intelligence, n'ayez pas peur, il en a autant que

vous et moi. Il ne lui manque que la parole. Mais ça n'est pas nécessaire, la parole. Si c'était pour montrer un monument, oui, parce qu'alors il faut savoir faire des récits et dire des dates historiques. Mais ici, il n'y a que des beautés de la nature. Prenez Noiraud. Et puis, ça vous coûtera moins cher. C'est trois francs, mon mari; Noiraud, ça n'est que trente sous; et il vous en fera voir pour trente sous autant que mon mari pour trois francs.

— Eh bien, où est-il, Noiraud?

— Il se repose au soleil, dans le jardin. Il a déjà mené des Anglais, ce matin, au Chaudron. Je l'appelle, pas vrai?

— Oui, appelez-le.

— Noiraud! Noiraud!

Il arriva d'un bond par la fenêtre. C'était un assez vilain petit chien noir à longs poils frisés et ébouriffés; mais il avait cependant, dans toute sa personne, un certain air de gravité, de décision, d'importance. Son premier regard fut pour moi; un regard net, précis, assuré, qui m'enveloppa rapidement des pieds à la tête, un regard qui disait clairement: «C'est un voyageur. Il veut voir le Chaudron.»

Un train manqué me suffisait, pour ce jour-là, et je tenais à ne pas m'exposer une seconde fois à pareille mésaventure. J'expliquai à cette brave femme que je n'avais que trois heures pour ma promenade au Chaudron.

— Oh! je sais bien, me dit-elle, vous voulez prendre le train de quatre heures. Ne craignez rien. Noiraud vous ramènera à temps. Allons, Noiraud, en route, mon garçon, en route.

Mais Noiraud ne paraissait pas du tout disposé à se mettre en route. Il restait là immobile, regardant sa maîtresse avec une certaine agitation.

— Ah! je suis bête, dit la vieille femme. J'oubliais, j'oubliais le sucre.

Elle alla prendre quatre morceaux de sucre dans un tiroir et, me les remettant :

— Voilà pourquoi il ne voulait pas partir. Vous n'aviez pas les morceaux de sucre. Tu vois, Noiraud, le monsieur a le sucre. Allons, en route, mon garçon! Au Chaudron! au Chaudron! au Chaudron!

Elle répéta ces mots trois fois en parlant très lentement et très distinctement, et pendant ce temps, moi, j'examinais Noiraud avec attention. Il répondait aux paroles de sa maîtresse par de petits signes de tête qui allaient en s'accroissant et où il entraient évidemment, à la fin, un peu d'impatience et de mauvaise humeur. On pouvait les traduire ainsi: «Oui, oui, au Chaudron; j'ai compris. Le monsieur a les morceaux de sucre, et nous allons au Chaudron. C'est entendu. Me prenez-vous pour une bête?»

Et sans laisser finir le troisième «au Chaudron» de madame Simon, Noiraud, évidemment blessé, tourna les talons, vint se planter en face de moi et, du regard, me montrant la porte, me dit aussi nettement qu'il était permis à un chien de le dire :

— Allons, venez, vous!

Je le suivis docilement. Nous partîmes tous les deux, lui devant, moi derrière. Nous traversâmes ainsi tout le village. Des gamins qui jouaient dans la rue reconnurent mon guide.

— Eh, Noiraud! Bonjour, Noiraud!

Ils voulaient jouer avec le chien; mais il tourna la tête d'un air dédaigneux, de l'air d'un chien qui n'a pas le temps de s'amuser, d'un chien qui est en train de faire son devoir et de gagner trente sous. Un des enfants s'écria :

— Laissez-le donc. Il conduit le m'sieu au Chaudron. Bonjour, m'sieu!

Et tous éclatèrent de rire, en répétant:

— Bonjour, m'sieu!

Je souriais, mais gauchement, j'en suis sûr. Je me sentais embarrassé, un peu humilié même. J'étais, en somme, dominé par cet animal. Il était, pour le moment, mon maître. Il savait où il allait, et moi je ne le savais pas. J'avais hâte de sortir du village et de me trouver seul avec Noiraud, en face de ces beautés de la nature qu'il avait pour mission de me faire admirer.

Ces beautés de la nature furent, pour commencer, une affreuse route poudreuse, sous un soleil brûlant. Le chien marchait d'un pas alerte et je me fatiguais à le suivre. J'essayai de modérer son allure:

— Noiraud, allons; Noiraud, mon garçon, pas si vite.

Noiraud faisait la sourde oreille et fut pris brusquement d'un véritable accès de colère, quand je voulus m'asseoir, au coin d'un champ, sous un arbre qui donnait une ombre grêle. Il aboyait d'une petite voix furieuse, me jetait des regards irrités. Évidemment, ce que je faisais était contraire à la règle. On n'avait pas la coutume de s'arrêter là. Et les jappements étaient si aigus que je me levai pour reprendre ma route. Noiraud se calma aussitôt et se remit à trotter gaiement devant moi. Je l'avais compris. Il était content.

Quelques minutes après, nous entrions dans un délicieux chemin, tout fleuri, tout ombreux, tout parfumé, tout plein de la fraîcheur et du murmure des sources. Noiraud se glissa aussitôt sous bois, prit le galop et disparut dans le petit sentier. Je le suivais, un peu haletant. Je n'avais pas fait une centaine de pas, que je trouvai mon Noiraud qui m'attendait, la tête haute et l'œil brillant,



dans une sorte de salle de verdure égayée par la chanson d'une mignonne cascade. Il y avait là un vieux banc rustique, et le regard de Noiraud allait avec impatience de mes yeux à ce banc et de ce banc à mes yeux. Je commençais à comprendre le langage de Noiraud.

— À la bonne heure, me disait-il, voilà une place pour se reposer. Il fait bon, ici; il fait frais. Tu étais bête; tu voulais t'arrêter en plein soleil. Allons, assieds-toi; tu peux t'asseoir, je te le permets.

Et je m'arrêtai, je m'assis et j'allumai un cigare. Je fis presque le mouvement d'en offrir un à Noiraud. Il fumait peut-être. Mais je pensai qu'il préférerait un morceau de sucre. Il l'attrapa au vol fort adroitement, le croqua à belles dents, se coucha et s'assoupit à mes pieds. Il était évidemment habitué à faire à cette place une petite halte et une petite sieste.

Il ne dormit guère qu'une dizaine de minutes. J'étais, d'ailleurs, parfaitement tranquille; Noiraud commençait à m'inspirer une confiance absolue. J'étais résolu à lui obéir aveuglément. Il se leva, s'étira, me jeta ce petit regard de côté qui signifiait: «En route, mon ami, en route.» Et nous voilà, comme deux vieux amis, cheminant sous bois, d'une allure plus lente; Noiraud goûtait le charme, le silence et la douceur du lieu. Sur la route, tout à l'heure, ayant hâte d'échapper à cette chaleur, à cette poussière, il s'avancait d'un petit pas, serré, pressé. Il marchait pour arriver. Et maintenant, rafraîchi, détendu, Noiraud marchait pour le plaisir de se promener dans un des plus jolis petits sentiers du canton de Vaud.

Un chemin se présente à gauche. Courte hésitation de Noiraud. Il réfléchit. Puis il passe et continue sa route, droit devant lui, mais non sans quelque trouble et sans quelque incertitude dans sa démarche. Et voici qu'il s'ar-

rête. Il a dû se tromper. Oui, car il revient sur ses pas et nous prenons ce chemin à gauche qui, tout d'un coup, au bout d'une centaine de pas, nous conduit à une sorte de cirque; et Noiraud, le nez en l'air, m'invite à contempler la très respectable hauteur de l'infranchissable muraille de rochers qui forme ce cirque. Lorsque Noiraud pense que j'ai suffisamment contemplé, il fait volte-face, et nous reprenons notre petit sentier sous bois. Noiraud avait oublié de me montrer le cirque de rochers, une légère faute qui avait été bien vite réparée.

La route bientôt devient très montueuse, très accidentée, très dure. Je n'avance plus que lentement, avec des précautions infinies. Noiraud, lui, saute lestement de roche en roche, mais il ne m'abandonne pas. Il m'attend, en attachant sur moi des regards chargés de la plus touchante sollicitude. Enfin, je commence à entendre comme un bouillonnement; Noiraud se met à japper joyeusement.

— Courage, me dit-il, courage. Nous arrivons, tu vas voir le Chaudron.

C'est, en effet, le Chaudron. Une source assez modeste, d'une hauteur également modeste, tombe avec des rejailissements et des rebondissements dans une grande roche légèrement creusée. Je ne me consolerais pas d'avoir fait cette laborieuse ascension pour voir cette médiocre merveille si je n'avais eu pour compagnon de route ce brave Noiraud qui est, lui, bien plus intéressant et bien plus remarquable que le Chaudron.

De chaque côté de la source, dans des petits chalets suisses, sont installées deux laiteries tenues par deux petites Suissesses, l'une blonde, l'autre brune; toutes deux en costume national, guettant avidement mon arrivée, sur le seuil de leurs maisonnettes.

Il me semble que la petite blonde a de très jolis yeux et

j'avais déjà fait trois ou quatre pas de son côté, lorsque Noiraud, éclatant en aboiements furieux, me barre résolument le passage. Aurait-il une préférence pour la petite brune? Je change de direction. C'était bien cela. Noiraud s'apaise comme par enchantement quand il me voit assis à une table devant la maison de sa jeune protégée. Je demande une tasse de lait. L'amie de Noiraud rentre dans son petit chalet et Noiraud se faufile à sa suite dans la maison. Par une petite fenêtre entr'ouverte, je suis des yeux mon Noiraud. Le misérable! On le sert avant moi. C'est lui qui, le premier! a sa grande jatte de lait frais. Il est vendu!

Après quoi, avec des gouttes blanches suspendues à ses moustaches, Noiraud vient me tenir compagnie et me regarder boire mon lait. Je lui donne un morceau de sucre, et, tous deux, absolument satisfaits l'un de l'autre, respirant à pleins poumons l'air vif et léger de la montagne, nous passons, à trois ou quatre cents mètres d'altitude, une demi-heure délicieuse.

Noiraud commence à donner quelques signes d'impatience et d'agitation. Je lis maintenant dans ses yeux à livre ouvert. Il faut partir. Je paie, je me lève, et, pendant que je m'en vais à droite vers le chemin qui nous a amenés sur la montagne, je vois mon Noiraud qui va se planter à gauche à l'entrée d'un autre chemin. Il attache sur moi un regard sérieux, sévère. Que de progrès j'ai faits depuis deux heures et comme la silencieuse éloquence de Noiraud m'est devenue familière!

— Quelle opinion as-tu de moi? me dit Noiraud. Crois-tu que je vais te faire passer deux fois par la même route? Non pas, vraiment. Je suis un bon guide. Je sais mon métier. Nous allons redescendre au village par un autre chemin.

Nous redescendons par cet autre chemin qui est beaucoup plus joli que le premier. Noiraud se retourne souvent vers moi avec un petit air de triomphe et de joie. Nous traversons le village et, sur la place de la gare, Noiraud est assailli par trois ou quatre chiens de ses amis qui paraissent fort en humeur de bavarder et de jouer un peu avec leur camarade. Ils veulent l'arrêter au passage, mais le brave Noiraud, grognant, grondant, repousse vivement toutes leurs avances.

— Vous voyez bien que j'ai à faire. Je conduis ce monsieur à la gare.

Ce n'est que dans la salle d'attente qu'il consent à se séparer de moi, après avoir croqué gaiement les deux derniers morceaux de sucre, et voici comment je traduis le regard d'adieu que mon guide me jette en partant pour la maison de sa maîtresse:

— Nous sommes en avance de vingt minutes. Ce n'est pas moi qui t'aurais fait manquer le train! Allons! bon voyage! bon voyage!

### EXERCISES BASED ON «NOIRAUD»

(Brackets [ ] indicate that the words enclosed are to be omitted in translation; references are to sections.)

#### I. BEGINNING TO «ET OÙ ÉTAIT-IL»

VAL PERDU, CANTON OF VAUD, SWITZERLAND,  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (144), 19\_\_\_\_.

DEAR COUSIN:

Do you know where (152, 2) Val Perdu is? It (147) is the most melancholy (138) little village in (135) Switzerland (137, 2*d*), asleep at the foot of its two lofty mountains, each of which (75) wears a pretty little snow-cap on its (137, 2*e*) head. And how does it happen that I am (119, 5) at Val Perdu? That is what I am going to tell you during the half-hour (130) that I must

(186) wait here for my train, if it is not late as [it is] always — or almost always.

I say “almost always” for (227) to-day, for (218) the first time in (**depuis**) fifteen years, a train was seen (85) here on time! That is why I missed it. My driver, who reckoned on a quarter of an (136) hour’s delay, was furious. All those present looked at the station-master, who seemed to them to blame for (216) not having warned the driver that [on] that day the train was going to be prompt.

The poor station-master did not know (196a) what to say; in turn (187) he looked at the driver, the traveler, and the train which had just (219) left. All at once he began to laugh: “Don’t be afraid, sir; by taking (110) the four o’clock (143) express you will still get to Lausanne in (219) time for dinner (136). Meanwhile, Noiraud will take you to the Caldron. You must (186) see that.”

And appealing to the driver, “Isn’t it [true], John, that he must (186) see the Caldron?”

There was a general cry, “Oh yes, oh yes! That is the only thing to (205) see in the place!”

That, then, is why I am at Val Perdu. I came in (210) a carriage to (218) take the quarter past one (143) train, my driver made (158) me lose it; I have remained here until four o’clock, and I have had time to (213) go (218) and see the Caldron. I will tell you about that to-morrow. Meanwhile, believe me always (**crois toujours aux meilleures amitiés de**) your affectionate cousin,

\_\_\_\_\_.

## II. «ET OÙ ÉTAIT-IL» TO «UN TRAIN MANQUÉ»

LAUSANNE, CANTON DE VAUD, SWITZERLAND,

\_\_\_\_\_, 19\_\_\_\_.

DEAR COUSIN:

This morning I am going to tell you how I made the acquaintance of Noiraud. I was advised (85) to (216) take a guide to (218) go to the Caldron, and I was told (85) that father (137, 2c)

Simon was (115) the best guide in (135) the place. I went (92, 2) and knocked (218) at the door of a pretty little white house; an old woman came and opened [the door] for me (56), and I asked for father Simon.

"It is here, sir, but he has not been (103) feeling well since this morning. If it is to (218) go to the Caldron, you should (167) take Noiraud, who often takes his place and who will guide you as well as my husband."

"Noiraud will do."

She called, "Noiraud! Noiraud!" and a little black (138) dog came in through (219) the window at (211) a single leap. He was not handsome, with his long, curly, shaggy hair; but his confident eye and his look of decision and importance said plainly, "I don't lack intelligence (138), and to (218) show you the beauties of nature, speech (136) isn't necessary."

It seems that for a long time father Simon has taken (103) Noiraud with him, and now the honest dog knows the places, and guides travelers (136) with as much (199) intelligence as a person.

This evening I will tell you how he managed his little task. In (210) half an hour (130) we start for Lucerne, where we expect to spend a few days. Write often to your little cousin who thinks of (56) you every day and who sends you his best love.

### III. «UN TRAIN MANQUÉ» TO «JE LE SUIVIS»

LUCERNE, SWITZERLAND,

Seven o'clock in the evening, \_\_\_\_\_ day,  
\_\_\_\_\_, 19\_\_\_\_.

[MY] DEAR COUSIN:

Here we are in (202) Lucerne. The train was an hour and a half (130) late, and we were all very tired on reaching the hotel. Mama has gone (92, 2) to rest in her room. When she is (100) a little recovered from her weariness, we shall take a little walk in the town. Meanwhile, I am going to tell you an incident

which will show you the great intelligence of my little friend Noiraud.

Before (227) setting (108) out for the Caldron, he went and planted himself before (207) his mistress whom (73) he looked at (91) with a certain excitement into which (73) there evidently (190) entered a little impatience and (220) ill humor.

"Oh," said the old woman, "How stupid I am (229)! He is bound to (219) see his sugar before starting. We (85) give him some sugar each time (228) he guides a traveler, and there I was forgetting (112) it."

She went to a drawer and took (218) four pieces of sugar, which she handed me, saying slowly (190):

"Come, my boy, to the Caldron!"

This time Noiraud gave a little nod, faced about, and swiftly taking me in from head to foot with his clear, calm eye, said to me as plainly as it was possible for (202) a dog to say it (62),

"All right! Come on, you!"

I will write you again before leaving Lucerne. For to-day, I clasp your hand, begging you to accept a thousand affectionate wishes (**choses**) from your cousin,

---

#### IV. «JE LE SUIVIS» TO «IL NE DORMIT GUÈRE»

LUCERNE, \_\_\_\_\_, 19\_\_\_\_.

[MY] DEAR COUSIN:

You ask me how a dog can make (158) himself understood (178). If you had gone with me to the Caldron, you would (116) know (62). As we passed (111) through the village, we met some urchins who knew Noiraud and wished to play with him, but his scornful air and the way in which (75) he turned aside his (137, 2e) head replied to them plainly:

"Let me [alone], pray! I have not time to play. I am busy (**en train de**) doing my duty and earning money. I am guiding a gentleman to the Caldron."

Do you understand that I felt myself a little humiliated? For the moment, I was dominated by that animal, whom I followed

obediently, smiling at the children who all burst out laughing as they shouted to me, "Good morning, sir!"

A little further, as Noiraud was trotting gaily along in the burning sun, I tried to make him go more slowly (190), but he turned a deaf ear, and when I sat down a moment in (202) the shade of a little tree, the angry little voice with which he barked, the vexed glances that he gave me, and his sharp yelps made me understand at once that what (67) I was doing was against the rule, that I must not stop on the horrible, dusty road.

In order to calm him, I rose, and he at once went on again with (208) a look which said, "Well! (230) I am pleased with (212) you!"

A few minutes after, I found him waiting (113) for me before (207) an old rustic bench, in a delightful bower full of the coolness of a darling little cascade; and his shining eyes spoke a language that I was beginning to understand.

"Rest," they said (152, 1) to me. "It is cool here: it is not well (183) to stop in the hot sun. Let us sit down; give me a piece of sugar; and I will take a little nap at your feet."

Good night, dear; it is growing (183) late, and I must go to bed; but to-morrow you shall have another (89) letter from your affectionate cousin,

---

## V. «IL NE DORMIT GUÈRE» TO «APRÈS QUOI»

LUCERNE, \_\_\_\_\_, 19\_\_.

[MY] DEAR COUSIN:

You think, perhaps, that Noiraud has all the [good] qualities without having the failings of men (136). Why, no! He (57) too, has his little weaknesses, as you shall (101) see (62). Only once did he miss his way (219). He forgot to (216) show me an amphitheater of impassable rocks, and he had to retrace his steps [and] take a road that appeared at [the] left; but he very quickly made up for this slight error and when the road grew steeper (133) and harder, the anxiety of his looks inspired in me absolute (137, 1) confidence.



He knew very well, too, which of the two little Swiss [girls] who were selling milk, each at the door of her little cottage, on either side of the Caldron, was the more (135) disposed to give him a great bowl of fresh milk. I had turned (92, 1) to the right, toward (217) a little blonde who was eagerly (188) watching for my coming, when Noiraud barred my (137, 2e) passage, and by his angry barks make me take the path to [the] left and sit down at the table of a little brunette who rewarded him by (111) serving him before (207) me. The wretch! He was bribed!

That is why he had calmed down so quickly (187) on seeing me change direction (219). He preferred his bowl of fresh milk to the pretty eyes of the little brunette. Shall we (186) praise his wisdom or blame his greediness? Tell me what you think of it (202); and write frequently and at length to (the) one (68) who thinks every day of (56) you.

Your devoted cousin,

---

## VI. «APRÈS QUOI» TO END

LUCERNE, \_\_\_\_\_, 19\_\_.

DEAR COUSIN:

This evening we are (186) to leave Lucerne to go to Paris. We leave with regret this delightful (138) city, which has become (92, 2) familiar to us, and with (212) which we are perfectly satisfied. For three days we have been (103) filling our lungs with the sharp, clear, mountain-air, at an altitude of more than (191) four hundred meters. We shall return here next summer (19), and I hope (228) you will come then and (218) keep us company. For a fortnight ("fifteen days") mamma has shown (103) signs of impatience to go and meet papa who will be detained (106) in Paris by his business a long time yet.

So we must go. To-morrow we shall rise early, and the ten o'clock train that brought us from Val Perdu will carry us off toward (217) Paris.

Yesterday we made the ascent of Pilatus (19). We had a good guide who knew his business well. We went up on (de) the

northern side. Passing (110) through Hergiswyl the guide wished to stop a moment on the way. In the depot square, he entered a little inn where he stayed five minutes. Through a half-open window we saw him sitting (111) very close to a pretty blonde Swiss girl in national costume. They looked perfectly satisfied with each other; and the guide, when he came out (110), with a little look of triumph and joy (220) was wiping [off] a few drops still hanging (111) from his mustache.

At first he had seemed to us silent, serious, a little stern even, but now he was much inclined to gossip. It seems that the little Swiss girl's father had just died (219), leaving her the inn and some thousands (141) of francs; and the guide was to marry her in (202) the spring.

From the top of Pilatus (19) we saw a wonderful panorama. The weather was magnificent, a (136) rare thing, for (227) too often Pilatus wears (**se coiffer de**) a cap of fog.

We went down (92, 2) by another road to Alpnach-Stad where we wished to take the boat for Lucerne. On leaving the guide, mamma slipped into his (137, 2e) hand a piece of silver ("a white piece") and I [can] still hear the "Pleasant journey!" that he sent back to us as he departed (110). Write soon, and think often of

Your devoted cousin,

---

## LA DERNIÈRE CLASSE

ALPHONSE DAUDET

Ce matin-là j'étais très en retard pour aller à l'école, et j'avais grand'peur d'être grondé, d'autant plus que M. Hamel nous avait dit qu'il nous interrogerait sur les participes, et je n'en savais pas le premier mot. Un moment l'idée me vint de manquer la classe et de prendre ma course à travers champs.

Le temps était si chaud, si clair!

On entendait les merles siffler à la lisière du bois, et dans le pré Rippert, derrière la scierie, les Prussiens qui faisaient l'exercice. Tout cela me tentait bien plus que la règle des participes; mais j'eus la force de résister, et je courus bien vite vers l'école.

En passant devant la mairie, je vis qu'il y avait du monde arrêté près du petit grillage aux affiches. Depuis deux ans, c'est de là que nous sont venues toutes les mauvaises nouvelles, les batailles perdues, les réquisitions, les ordres de la commandature; et je pensai sans m'arrêter:

«Qu'est-ce qu'il y a encore?»

Alors, comme je traversais la place en courant, le forgeron Wachter, qui était là avec son apprenti en train de lire l'affiche, me cria:

«Ne te dépêche pas tant, petit; tu y arriveras toujours assez tôt, à ton école!»

Je crus qu'il se moquait de moi, et j'entrai tout essoufflé dans la petite cour de M. Hamel.

D'ordinaire, au commencement de la classe, il se faisait un grand tapage qu'on entendait jusque dans la rue, les

pupitres ouverts, fermés, les leçons qu'on répétait très haut tous ensemble, en se bouchant les oreilles pour mieux apprendre, et la grosse règle du maître qui tapait sur les tables :

«Un peu de silence!»

Je comptais sur tout ce train pour gagner mon banc sans être vu; mais justement ce jour-là tout était tranquille, comme un matin de dimanche. Par la fenêtre ouverte je voyais mes camarades déjà rangés à leur place, et M. Hamel, qui passait et repassait avec la terrible règle en fer sous le bras. Il fallut ouvrir la porte et entrer au milieu de ce grand calme. Vous pensez si j'étais rouge, et si j'avais peur!

Eh bien, non. M. Hamel me regarda sans colère et me dit très doucement :

«Va vite à ta place, mon petit Frantz; nous allions commencer sans toi.»

J'enjambai le banc et je m'assis tout de suite à mon pupitre. Alors seulement, un peu remis de ma frayeur, je remarquai que notre maître avait sa belle redingote verte, son jabot plissé fin et la calotte de soie noire brodée qu'il ne mettait que les jours d'inspection ou de distribution de prix. Du reste, toute la classe avait quelque chose d'extraordinaire et de solennel. Mais ce qui me surprit le plus, ce fut de voir au fond de la salle, sur les bancs qui restaient vides d'habitude, les gens du village assis et silencieux comme nous, le vieux Hauser avec son tricorne, l'ancien maire, l'ancien facteur, et puis d'autres personnes encore. Tout ce monde-là paraissait triste; et Hauser avait apporté un vieil abécédaire mangé aux bords qu'il tenait grand ouvert sur ses genoux, avec ses grosses lunettes posées en travers des pages.

Pendant que je m'étonnais de tout cela, M. Hamel

était monté dans sa chaire, et, de la même voix douce et grave dont il m'avait reçu, il nous dit :

« Mes enfants, c'est la dernière fois que je vous fais la classe. L'ordre est venu de Berlin de ne plus enseigner que l'allemand dans les écoles de l'Alsace et de la Lorraine . . . Le nouveau maître arrive demain. Aujourd'hui c'est votre dernière leçon de français. Je vous prie d'être bien attentifs. »

Ces quelques paroles me bouleversèrent. Ah ! les misérables, voilà ce qu'ils avaient affiché à la mairie :

Ma dernière leçon de français !

Et moi qui savais à peine écrire ! Je n'apprendrais donc jamais ! Il faudrait donc en rester là ! Comme je m'en voulais maintenant du temps perdu, des classes manquées à courir les nids ou à faire des glissades sur la Saar ! Mes livres que tout à l'heure encore je trouvais si ennuyeux, si lourds à porter, ma grammaire, mon histoire sainte, me semblaient de vieux amis qui me feraient beaucoup de peine à quitter. C'est comme M. Hamel. L'idée qu'il allait partir, que je ne le verrais plus, me faisait oublier les punitions, les coups de règle.

Pauvre homme !

C'est en l'honneur de cette dernière classe qu'il avait mis ses beaux habits du dimanche, et maintenant je comprenais pourquoi ces vieux du village étaient venus s'asseoir au bout de la salle. Cela semblait dire qu'ils regrettaient de ne pas y être venus plus souvent, à cette école. C'était aussi comme une façon de remercier notre maître de ses quarante ans de bons services, et de rendre leurs devoirs à la patrie qui s'en allait.

J'en étais là de mes réflexions, quand j'entendis appeler mon nom. C'était mon tour de réciter. Que n'aurais-je pas donné pour pouvoir dire tout au long cette fameuse

règle des participes, bien haut, bien clair, sans une faute; mais je m'embrouillai aux premiers mots, et je restai debout à me balancer dans mon banc, le cœur gros, sans oser lever la tête. J'entendais M. Hamel qui me parlait:

«Je ne te gronderai pas mon petit Frantz, tu dois être assez puni. Voilà ce que c'est. Tous les jours on se dit: Bah! j'ai bien le temps. J'apprendrai demain. Et puis tu vois ce qui arrive . . . Ah! ç'a été le grand malheur de notre Alsace de toujours remettre son instruction à demain. Maintenant ces gens-là sont en droit de nous dire: Comment! Vous prétendiez être Français, et vous ne savez ni parler ni écrire votre langue! . . . Dans tout ça, mon pauvre Frantz, ce n'est pas encore toi le plus coupable. Nous avons tous notre bonne part de reproches à nous faire.

«Vos parents n'ont pas assez tenu à vous voir instruits. Ils aimait mieux vous envoyer travailler à la terre ou aux filatures pour avoir quelques sous de plus. Moi-même, n'ai-je rien à me reprocher? Est-ce que je ne vous ai pas souvent fait arroser mon jardin au lieu de travailler? Et quand je voulais aller pêcher des truites, est-ce que je me gênaï pour vous donner congé?» . . .

Alors, d'une chose à l'autre, M. Hamel se mit à nous parler de la langue française, disant que c'était la plus belle langue du monde, la plus claire, la plus solide, qu'il fallait la garder entre nous et ne jamais l'oublier, parce que quand un peuple tombe esclave, tant qu'il tient bien sa langue, c'est comme s'il tenait la clef de sa prison. Puis il prit une grammaire et nous lut notre leçon. J'étais étonné de voir comme je comprenais. Tout ce qu'il me disait me semblait facile, facile. Je crois aussi que je n'avais jamais si bien écouté et que lui non plus n'avait jamais mis autant de patience à ses explications. On

aurait dit qu'avant de s'en aller le pauvre homme voulait nous donner tout son savoir, nous le faire entrer dans la tête d'un seul coup.

La leçon finie, on passa à l'écriture. Pour ce jour-là M. Hamel nous avait préparé des exemples tout neufs, sur lesquels était écrit en belle ronde: *France, Alsace, France, Alsace*. Cela faisait comme des petits drapeaux qui flottaient tout autour de la classe pendus à la tringle de nos pupitres. Il fallait voir comme chacun s'appliquait, et quel silence! On n'entendait que le grincement des plumes sur le papier. Un moment des hanneçons entrèrent; mais personne n'y fit attention, pas même les tous petits, qui s'appliquaient à tracer leurs *bâtons* avec un cœur, une conscience, comme si cela encore était du français . . . Sur la toiture de l'école, des pigeons roucoulaient tout bas, et je me disais en les écoutant:

«Est-ce qu'on ne va pas les obliger à chanter en allemand, eux aussi?»

De temps en temps quand je levais les yeux de dessus ma page, je voyais M. Hamel immobile dans sa chaire et fixant les objets autour de lui, comme s'il avait voulu emporter dans son regard toute sa petite maison d'école . . . Pensez! depuis quarante ans, il était là à la même place, avec sa cour en face de lui et sa classe toute pareille. Seulement les bancs, les pupitres s'étaient polis, frottés par l'usage; les noyers de la cour avaient grandi, et le houblon qu'il avait planté lui-même enguirlandait maintenant les fenêtres jusqu'au toit. Quel crève-cœur ça devait être pour ce pauvre homme de quitter toutes ces choses, et d'entendre sa sœur qui allait, venait, dans la chambre au-dessus, en train de fermer leurs malles! car ils devaient partir le lendemain, s'en aller du pays pour toujours.

Tout de même il eut le courage de nous faire la classe

jusqu'au bout. Après l'écriture, nous eûmes la leçon d'histoire; ensuite les petits chantèrent le BA BE BI BO BU. Là-bas au fond de la salle, le vieux Hauser avait mis ses lunettes, et, tenant son abécédaire à deux mains, il épelait les lettres avec eux. On voyait qu'il s'appliquait, lui aussi; sa voix tremblait d'émotion, et c'était si drôle de l'entendre, que nous avions tous envie de rire et de pleurer. Ah! je m'en souviendrai de cette dernière classe . . .

Tout à coup l'horloge de l'église sonna midi, puis l'Angelus. Au même moment, les trompettes des Prussiens qui revenaient de l'exercice éclatèrent sous nos fenêtres . . . M. Hamel se leva, tout pâle, dans sa chaire. Jamais il ne m'avait paru si grand.

«Mes amis, dit-il, mes amis, je . . . je . . .»

Mais quelque chose l'étouffait. Il ne pouvait pas achever sa phrase.

Alors il se tourna vers le tableau, prit un morceau de craie, et, en appuyant de toutes ses forces, il écrivit aussi gros qu'il put:

«VIVE LA FRANCE!»

Puis il resta là, la tête appuyée au mur, et, sans parler, avec sa main il nous faisait signe:

«C'est fini . . . allez-vous-en.»

## EXERCISES BASED ON «LA DERNIÈRE CLASSE»

(Study especially the sections on the subjunctive)

### I. BEGINNING TO «EN PASSANT»

Although little Frantz is much afraid that his master will scold him, he is not going to be absent from the class. Do you think he can hear the blackbirds piping on the edge of the wood, without the thought coming to him of running off across the fields? It is time for the little fellow to be running to school



fast, if he does not wish to get there late. Although the weather is warm and bright, our little Frantz must not stay behind the sawmill watching the Prussians (206). He must resist, and must go to school and learn the rule about participles. What do you wish him to do?

## II. «EN PASSANT» TO «D'ORDINAIRE»

There he is passing the town-hall, without anyone thinking of speaking to him. That is because everyone is looking at the little bulletin-board, to see if there is another piece of bad news. It is unfortunate that the French have lost so many battles. Provided you see two or three persons reading an order from headquarters, you wonder "What's up now?"

However, before Frantz has crossed the square, I fear the blacksmith's apprentice will see him and shout "Somebody stop him! Don't let him hurry so! I don't wish him to get to his school too soon!" Do you believe the apprentice wishes to have him stopped? Is it possible that he is making fun of Frantz, and that he wishes to make him enter the little courtyard all out of breath?

## III. «D'ORDINAIRE» TO «EH BIEN, NON!»

Do you know what happens usually at the beginning of the class? If you should ask the pupils to make a racket that will make itself heard as far as the street, they would not act otherwise. "Let everybody open and shut the desks! Let the lessons be repeated aloud; all together! Let those who are afraid of the teacher's big ruler stop their ears to learn better!" Do you think that is the right way to get a little silence?

Usually our little Frantz could have counted on all this uproar to reach his seat without being seen. How sorry he was that that morning everything was so quiet! He would have liked Mr. Hamel to be pounding on the desks. However red the little boy was, and however frightened he felt, the poor child had to open the door and go in amid that great calm.

## IV. «EH BIEN, NON!» TO «PENDANT QUE»

I should like Mr. Hamel to say to him very gently, "Let the one who has just come in go very quickly to his place! Let him sit down at once; and let him hold his book wide open in front of him! When he has recovered from his fright a little, he will tell us the rule about participles."

Frantz felt much surprised that Mr. Hamel had put on his handsome green frock-coat. You would have thought it was an inspection day, the class was so still. But however sad the pupils were, the most solemn faces little Frantz had ever seen were those of old Hauser and the former mayor. The latter was sitting quite at the back of the room, and the former had just put on his big spectacles to see better the old primer whose pages he was turning.

## V. «PENDANT QUE» TO «PAUVRE HOMME»

Are you surprised that Mr. Hamel's voice was gentle and serious? Unless little Frantz is a wretch, he will long remember the last words his teacher spoke in that little school. Do you wonder that they upset him? Whatever they do in Berlin, and whatever language they teach in the Alsatian schools, in their homes the little Alsations will always speak French. Although they have wasted their time running after nests and making slides, one must not hold it against them. At present, their books, heavy as they are, seem old friends to them. Wait until Mr. Hamel has gone, and the pupils no longer see him; they will soon have forgotten the punishments he has inflicted upon them.

## VI. «PAUVRE HOMME» TO «VOS PARENTS»

While waiting for the old men of the village to come and sit at the end of the room, Mr. Hamel had gone and put on his fine Sunday clothes. He is sorry they have not come there oftener. Before they go away, he wishes them to have the pupils recite. If only the latter do not get snarled up at the first words! He

would not like them to stand swaying in their seats without saying anything. Let the old men ask little Frantz for a rule that will be very clear; he will tell them the famous rule about participles without a mistake, quite loud, at full length. Did they think he would not dare to look up?

How unfortunate that some pupils have put off their education until the morrow, and that they scarcely know how to read and write! Now, the least they can do is to be attentive and listen to the teacher. Still, they are not the guiltiest people I know; and it is right for their parents to assume their fair share of reproaches.

#### VII. «VOS PARENTS» TO «DE TEMPS EN TEMPS»

I am bound to have you educated. Although you might earn a few cents more by working on the land or in the mills, you would be sorry later that your parents had not sent you to school longer. No doubt you like to go trout-fishing better than to work, but it is time for you to know your own language, that beautiful French language, the clearest, the strongest there is in the world. Even if you had to fall into slavery, as long as you kept your language well, it would be as if you held the key of your prison. Let me take this grammar and read you your lesson. You will be surprised that you found it hard.

Before you go away, I wish you to hear me patiently. If only I can make a little knowledge enter your heads! Let us go on writing! To-day you must apply yourselves conscientiously, copying in a fine round hand the new models I have prepared for you. The little boys must not pay attention to the June-bugs nor to the pigeons. Do you think they are going to make *them* sing in German?

#### VIII. «DE TEMPS EN TEMPS» TO END

Is it possible that Mr. Hamel has remained for forty years teaching such youngsters? Must (not) he have wonderful patience and courage! Tell the little fellows to chant their BA,

BE, BI, BO, BU more softly, so that the big (boys) may hear plainly all that Mr. Hamel says to them. Do you wonder that old Hauser feels like crying? Do you hear him spelling the letters with the little ones? Oh, he will remember this last class!

I hope that Mr. Hamel can hold out till the end. Although he is very pale, and his voice is trembling with emotion, I think he will hear our history class. I do not think he will go away without saying a few words to us about the great men who have loved France and labored for her.

He turns to the board and takes a piece of chalk, but, before he has begun to write, the trumpets of the Prussians burst out under the windows. Noon! Let everyone rise! Let us shout all together, "Hurrah for Mr. Hamel! Hurrah for France!" Then let us go away, without speaking, leaving there, leaning against the wall, that poor man who has worked so hard to make us worthy of the fatherland.

## ESSENTIAL VERB-FORMS

Irregular derived forms are printed under the principal part from which the particular form is usually derived.

INFINITIVE	PRES. PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRES. IND.	PAST DEF.
<b>donner, give</b>	<b>donnant</b>	<b>donné</b>	<b>donne</b>	<b>donnai</b>
<b>finir, finish</b>	<b>finissant</b>	<b>fini</b>	<b>finis</b>	<b>finis</b>
<b>rompre, break</b>	<b>rompant</b>	<b>rompu</b>	<b>romps</b>	<b>rompis</b>
1. <b>absoudre, absolve</b>	<b>absolvant</b>	<b>absous</b> (absoute)	<b>absous</b>	<b>absolus</b>
So <b>dissoudre, dissolve.</b>				
2. <b>acquérir, acquire</b>	<b>acquérant</b>	<b>acquis</b>	<b>acquiens</b>	<b>acquis</b>
<b>acquerrai</b>	<b>acquièr(ant)</b>			
So <b>conquérir, conquer.</b>				
3. <b>aller, go</b>	<b>allant</b>	(être) <b>allé</b>	<b>vais</b>	<b>allai</b>
<b>irai</b>	<b>vont</b>		<b>vas, va</b>	
	<b>aille(ant)</b>		<b>va</b>	
4. <b>assaillir, assail</b>	<b>assaillant</b>	<b>assailli</b>	<b>assaille</b>	<b>assaillit</b>
So <b>tressaillir, tremble.</b>				
5. <b>asseoir, seat</b>	<b>asseyant</b>	<b>assis</b>	<b>assieds</b>	<b>assis</b>
<b>assiérai</b>				
So <b>rasseoir, seat again.</b>				
6. <b>avoir, have</b>	<b>ayant</b>	<b>eu</b>	<b>ai</b>	<b>eus</b>
<b>aurai</b>	<b>avons, ont</b>		<b>as, a</b>	
	<b>avais</b>		<b>aie</b>	
	<b>ayons</b>			
	<b>aie, ait</b>			
	<b>ayons, aient</b>			
7. <b>battre, beat</b>	<b>battant</b>	<b>battu</b>	<b>bats</b>	<b>battis</b>
8. <b>boire, drink</b>	<b>buvant</b>	<b>bu</b>	<b>bois</b>	<b>bus</b>
	<b>boive(ant)</b>			
9. <b>bouillir, boil</b>	<b>bouillant</b>	<b>bouilli</b>	<b>bous</b>	<b>bouillis</b>
10. <b>conclure, conclude</b>	<b>concluant</b>	<b>conclu</b>	<b>conclus</b>	<b>conclus</b>
So <b>exclure, exclude.</b>				

	INFINITIVE	PRES. PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRES. IND.	PAST DEF.
11.	<b>conduire</b> , <i>conduct</i> So <b>cuire</b> and verbs in <b>-duire</b> and <b>-truire</b> .	<b>conduisant</b>	<b>conduit</b>	<b>conduis</b>	<b>conduisis</b>
12.	<b>confire</b> , <i>preserve</i> So <b>déconfire</b> , <i>discomfit</i> .	<b>confisant</b>	<b>confit</b>	<b>confis</b>	<b>confis</b>
13.	<b>connaître</b> , <i>know</i> <b>Connaître</b> has <b>i</b> in the stem everywhere before <b>t</b> . So <b>reconnaître</b> , <i>recognize</i> , and <b>paraître</b> , <i>appear</i> , with its compounds; also <b>paître</b> , <i>graze</i> , and <b>repaitre</b> , <i>feed</i> , which lack the past definite.	<b>connaissant</b>	<b>connu</b>	<b>connais</b>	<b>connus</b>
14.	<b>coudre</b> , <i>sew</i> So <b>découdre</b> , <i>rip</i> , and <b>recoudre</b> , <i>sew again</i> .	<b>cousant</b>	<b>cousu</b>	<b>couds</b>	<b>cousis</b>
15.	<b>courir</b> , <i>run</i> <b>courrai</b> So compounds of <b>courir</b> .	<b>courant</b>	<b>couru</b>	<b>cours</b>	<b>courus</b>
16.	<b>couvrir</b> , <i>cover</i> So <b>offrir</b> , <i>offer</i> , <b>ouvrir</b> , <i>open</i> , <b>souffrir</b> , <i>suffer</i> , and compounds.	<b>couvrant</b>	<b>couvert</b>	<b>couvre</b>	<b>couvris</b>
17.	<b>craindre</b> , <i>fear</i> So all verbs in <b>-aindre</b> , <b>-eindre</b> , and <b>-oindre</b> .	<b>craignant</b>	<b>craint</b>	<b>crains</b>	<b>craignis</b>
18.	<b>croire</b> , <i>believe</i>	<b>croyant</b> <b>croie(nt)</b>	<b>cru</b>	<b>crois</b>	<b>crus</b>
19.	<b>croître</b> , <i>grow</i> Compounds of <b>croître</b> except <b>surcroître</b> take no (*) in past participle or past definite.	<b>croissant</b>	<b>crû</b> ( <i>crue</i> )	<b>croïs</b>	<b>crûs</b> <b>crusse</b>
20.	<b>cueillir</b> , <i>pick</i> <b>cueillerai</b> So <b>accueillir</b> , <i>welcome</i> , and <b>recueillir</b> , <i>gather</i> .	<b>cueillant</b>	<b>cueilli</b>	<b>cueille</b>	<b>cueillis</b>
21.	<b>devoir</b> , <i>owe</i> <b>devrai</b>	<b>devant</b> <b>doive(nt)</b>	<b>dû (due)</b>	<b>dois</b>	<b>dus</b>
22.	<b>dire</b> , <i>say</i> So <b>redire</b> , <i>to say again</i> . In other compounds of <b>dire</b> , the derived parts are regularly formed. <b>Maudire</b> has present participle <b>maudissant</b> .	<b>disant</b> <b>dites</b>	<b>dit</b>	<b>dis</b>	<b>dis</b>

	INFINITIVE	PRES. PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRES. IND.	PAST DEF.
23.	<b>dormir</b> , <i>sleep</i> So <b>mentir</b> , <i>lie</i> , <b>partir</b> , <i>leave</i> , <b>se repentir</b> , <i>repent</i> , <b>sortir</b> , <i>go out</i> , and most of their compounds. <b>Partir</b> and <b>sortir</b> are conjugated with <b>être</b> .	<b>dormant</b>	<b>dormi</b>	<b>dors</b>	<b>dormis</b> <b>sentir</b> , <i>feel</i> , <b>Partir</b> and
24.	<b>échoir</b> , <i>fall due</i> <b>écherra</b>	<b>échéant</b> <b>échoyait</b> <b>échoie</b>	<b>échu</b>	<b>échois</b>	<b>échus</b>
25.	<b>écrire</b> , <i>write</i> So compounds of <b>écrire</b> , <b>inscrire</b> , <i>inscribe</i> , etc.	<b>écrivant</b>	<b>écrit</b>	<b>écris</b>	<b>écrivis</b>
26.	<b>envoyer</b> , <i>send</i> <b>enverrai</b> So <b>renvoyer</b> , <i>send back</i> .	<b>envoyant</b> <b>envoie(nt)</b>	<b>envoyé</b>	<b>envoie</b>	<b>envoyai</b>
27.	<b>être</b> , <i>be</i> <b>serai</b>	<b>étant</b> <b>sommes</b> <b>êtes, sont</b> <b>soyons</b> <b>sois, soyons</b> <b>soient</b>	<b>été</b>	<b>suis</b> <b>es, est</b> <b>sois</b>	<b>fus</b>
28.	<b>faire</b> , <i>do</i> <b>ferai</b>  So compounds of <b>faire</b> .	<b>faisant</b> <b>faites, font</b> <b>faites</b> <b>fasse</b> <b>fassions</b>	<b>fait</b>	<b>fais</b>	<b>fis</b>
29.	<b>falloir</b> , <i>be neces- sary</i> <b>faudra</b>	not used <b>fallait</b> <b>faillie</b>	<b>fallu</b>	<b>faut</b>	<b>fallut</b>
30.	<b>fuir</b> , <i>flee</i>	<b>fuyant</b> <b>fuie(nt)</b>	<b>fui</b>	<b>fuis</b>	<b>fuis</b>
31.	<b>haïr</b> , <i>hate</i>	<b>haïssant</b>	<b>haï</b>	<b>hais</b>	<b>haïs</b>
32.	<b>lire</b> , <i>read</i> So compounds of <b>lire</b> .	<b>lisant</b>	<b>lu</b>	<b>lis</b>	<b>lus</b>
33.	<b>mettre</b> , <i>put</i> So compounds of <b>mettre</b> .	<b>mettant</b>	<b>mis</b>	<b>mets</b>	<b>mis</b>
34.	<b>moudre</b> , <i>grind</i> So compounds of <b>moudre</b> .	<b>moulant</b>	<b>moulu</b>	<b>mouds</b>	<b>moulu</b>

	INFINITIVE	PRES. PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRES. IND.	PAST DEF.
35.	<b>mourir</b> , <i>die</i> <b>mourrai</b>	<b>mourant</b> <b>meure(nt)</b>	(être) <b>mort</b>	<b>meurs</b>	<b>mourus</b>
36.	<b>mouvoir</b> , <i>move</i> <b>mouvrai</b>	<b>mouvant</b> <b>meuve(nt)</b>	<b>mû</b> ( <i>mue</i> )	<b>meus</b>	<b>mus</b>
	So <b>promouvoir</b> , <i>promote</i> , and <b>émouvoir</b> , <i>excite</i> , except past participle <b>promu</b> , <b>ému</b> .				
37.	<b>naître</b> , <i>be born</i>	<b>naissant</b>	(être) <b>né</b>	<b>nais</b>	<b>naquis</b>
	<b>Naître</b> has <i>i</i> in the stem everywhere before <i>t</i> . So <b>renaitre</b> , <i>be born again</i> .				
38.	<b>nuire</b> , <i>harm</i>	<b>nuisant</b>	<b>nui</b>	<b>nuis</b>	<b>nuisis</b>
	So <b>luire</b> , <i>shine</i> , except that past definite and imperfect subjunctive are wanting.				
39.	<b>plaire</b> , <i>please</i>	<b>plaisant</b>	<b>plu</b>	<b>plais</b> <b>plaît</b>	<b>plus</b>
	So compounds of <b>plaire</b> ; and <b>taire</b> , <i>be silent</i> , except 3d singular present indicative <b>tait</b> .				
40.	<b>pleuvoir</b> , <i>rain</i>	<b>pleuvant</b>	<b>plu</b>	<b>pleut</b>	<b>plut</b>
41.	<b>pouvoir</b> , <i>provide</i> <b>pourvoirai</b>	<b>pourvoyant</b> <b>pourvoie(nt)</b>	<b>pourvu</b>	<b>pourvois</b>	<b>pourvus</b>
	So <b>dépouvoir</b> , <i>leave destitute</i> .				
42.	<b>pouvoir</b> , <i>be able</i> <b>pourrai</b>	<b>pouvant</b> <b>peuvent</b> <b>puisse</b> <b>puissions</b>	<b>pu</b>	<b>peux</b> or <b>puis</b> no im- perative	<b>pus</b>
43.	<b>prendre</b> , <i>take</i>	<b>prenant</b> <b>prenne(nt)</b>	<b>pris</b>	<b>prends</b>	<b>pris</b>
	So compounds of <b>prendre</b> .				
44.	<b>recevoir</b> , <i>receive</i> <b>recevrai</b>	<b>recevant</b> <b>reçoive(nt)</b>	<b>reçu</b>	<b>reçois</b>	<b>reçus</b>
	So verbs in <b>-cevoir</b> .				
45.	<b>résoudre</b> , <i>resolve</i>	<b>résolvant</b>	<b>résolu</b> ( <b>résous</b> )	<b>résous</b>	<b>résolus</b>
46.	<b>rire</b> , <i>laugh</i>	<b>riant</b>	<b>ri</b>	<b>ris</b>	<b>ris</b>
	So <b>sourire</b> , <i>smile</i> .				



INFINITIVE	PRES. PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRES. IND.	PAST DEF.
47. <b>savoir</b> , <i>know</i> <b>saurai</b>	<b>sachant</b> <b>savons</b> <b>savais</b>	<b>su</b>	<b>sais</b> <b>sache</b>	<b>sus</b>
48. <b>suffire</b> , <i>suffice</i>	<b>suffisant</b>	<b>suffi</b>	<b>suffis</b>	<b>suffis</b>
49. <b>suivre</b> , <i>follow</i> <b>So poursuivre</b> , <i>pursue</i> .	<b>suivant</b>	<b>suivi</b>	<b>suis</b>	<b>suivis</b>
50. <b>tenir</b> , <i>hold</i> <b>tiendrai</b>	<b>tenant</b> <b>tienne(nt)</b>	<b>tenu</b>	<b>tiens</b>	<b>tins</b>
<b>So compounds of tenir</b> ; also <b>venir</b> , <i>come</i> , and its compounds (auxiliary être).				
51. <b>traire</b> , <i>milk</i>	<b>trayant</b>	<b>trait</b>	<b>trais</b>	no past def.
<b>So compounds of traire</b> .				
52. <b>vaincre</b> , <i>conquer</i> <b>So convaincre</b> , <i>convince</i> .	<b>vainquant</b>	<b>vaincu</b>	<b>vainc</b>	<b>vainquis</b>
53. <b>valoir</b> , <i>be worth</i> <b>vaudrai</b>	<b>valant</b> <b>valent</b> <b>vaille(nt)</b>	<b>valu</b>	<b>vaux</b>	<b>valus</b>
<b>So équivaloir</b> , <i>equal</i> ; <b>revaloir</b> , <i>pay back</i> ; and <b>prévaloir</b> , <i>prevail</i> , except that present subjunctive of <b>prévaloir</b> is regular.				
54. <b>vêtir</b> , <i>clothe</i> <b>So compounds of vêtir</b> .	<b>vêtant</b>	<b>vêtu</b>	<b>vêts</b>	<b>vêtis</b>
55. <b>vivre</b> , <i>live</i> <b>So revivre</b> , <i>revive</i> ; <b>survivre</b> , <i>survive</i> .	<b>vivant</b>	<b>vécu</b>	<b>vis</b>	<b>vécus</b>
56. <b>voir</b> , <i>see</i> <b>verrai</b>	<b>voyant</b> <b>voie(nt)</b>	<b>vu</b>	<b>vois</b>	<b>vis</b>
<b>So compounds of voir</b> ; except <b>prévoir</b> , <i>foresee</i> , which has future <b>prévoirai</b> .				
57. <b>vouloir</b> , <i>wish</i> <b>voudrai</b>	<b>voulant</b> <b>veulent</b> <b>veuille(nt)</b>	<b>voulu</b>	<b>veux</b> Imp. reg. also <b>veuillez</b> .	<b>voulus</b>

## INDEX TO IRREGULAR VERBS

The figures refer to the numbers of the verbs in the preceding list.

absoudre, 1	comprendre, 43	découvrir, 16
abstenir, 50	compromettre, 33	décrire, 25
abstraire, 51	concevoir, 44	décroire, 18
accourir, 15	conclure, 10	décroître, 19
accroire, 18	concourir, 15	dédire, 22
accroître, 19	conduire, 11	déduire, 11
accueillir, 20	confire, 12	défaire, 28
acquérir, 2	conjoindre, 17	déjoindre, 17
admettre, 33	connaître, 13	démentir, 23
advenir, 50	conquérir, 2	démettre, 33
aller, 3	consentir, 23	départir, 23
apercevoir, 44	construire, 11	dépeindre, 17
apparaître, 13	contenir, 50	déplaire, 39
appartenir, 50	contraindre, 17	dépourvoir, 41
apprendre, 43	contredire, 22	désapprendre, 43
assaillir, 4	contrefaire, 28	desservir, 23
asseoir, 5	contrevenir, 50	déteindre, 17
astreindre, 17	convaincre, 52	détenir, 50
atteindre, 17	convenir, 50	détruire, 11
attirer, 51	coudre, 14	devenir, 50
avenir, 50	courir, 15	dévêtir, 54
avoir, 6	couvrir, 16	devoir, 21
boire, 8	craindre, 17	dire, 22
bouillir, 9	croire, 18	disconvenir, 50
ceindre, 17	croître, 19	discourir, 15
circoncrire, 25	cueillir, 20	disjoindre, 17
circonvenir, 50	cuire, 11	disparaître, 13
commettre, 33	décevoir, 44	dissoudre, 1
comparaître, 13	déconfire, 12	dormir, 23
complaître, 39	découdre, 14	distraindre, 51

- |                  |                 |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| ébouillir, 9     | fuir, 30        | parfaire, 28    |
| échoir, 24       | geindre, 17     | partir, 23      |
| éconduire, 11    | haïr, 31        | parvenir, 50    |
| écrire, 25       | imboire, 8      | peindre, 17     |
| élire, 32        | induire, 11     | percevoir, 44   |
| emboire, 8       | inscrire, 25    | permettre, 33   |
| émettre, 33      | instruire, 11   | plaindre, 17    |
| émoudre, 34      | interdire, 22   | plaire, 39      |
| émouvoir, 36     | intervenir, 50  | pleuvoir, 40    |
| emprendre, 17    | introduire, 11  | poindre, 17     |
| enceindre, 17    | joindre, 17     | poursuivre, 49  |
| encourir, 15     | lire, 32        | pourvoir, 41    |
| endormir, 23     | luire, 38       | pouvoir, 42     |
| enduire, 11      | maintenir, 50   | prédire, 22     |
| enfreindre, 17   | malfaire, 28    | prendre, 43     |
| enfuir, 30       | maudire, 22     | prescrire, 25   |
| enjoindre, 17    | méconnaître, 13 | pressentir, 23  |
| enquérir, 2      | médire, 22      | prévaloir, 53   |
| ensuivre, 49     | méfaire, 28     | prévenir, 50    |
| entreprendre, 43 | mentir, 23      | prévoir, 56     |
| entretenir, 50   | méprendre, 43   | produire, 11    |
| entrevoir, 56    | messeoir, 5     | promettre, 33   |
| entr'ouvrir, 16  | mettre, 33      | promouvoir, 36  |
| envoyer, 26      | moudre, 34      | proscrire, 25   |
| épreindre, 17    | mourir, 35      | provenir, 50    |
| éprendre, 43     | mouvoir, 36     | quérir, 2       |
| équivaloir, 53   | naître, 37      | rapprendre, 43  |
| éteindre, 17     | nuire, 38       | rasseoir, 5     |
| être, 27         | obtenir, 50     | ratteindre, 17  |
| étreindre, 17    | offrir, 16      | reboire, 8      |
| exclure, 10      | oindre, 17      | rebouillir, 9   |
| extraire, 51     | omettre, 33     | recevoir, 44    |
| faire, 28        | ouvrir, 16      | reclure, 10     |
| falloir, 29      | paître, 13      | reconduire, 11  |
| feindre, 17      | paraître, 13    | reconnaître, 13 |
| forfaire, 28     | parcourir, 15   | reconquérir, 2  |

- |                  |                 |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| reconstruire, 11 | reprendre, 43   | souscrire, 25   |
| recoudre, 14     | requérir, 2     | soustraire, 51  |
| recourir, 15     | résoudre, 45    | soutenir, 50    |
| recouvrir, 16    | ressentir, 23   | souvenir, 50    |
| récrire, 25      | ressortir, 23   | subvenir, 50    |
| recroître, 19    | ressouvenir, 50 | suffire, 48     |
| recueillir, 20   | restreindre, 17 | suivre, 49      |
| recuire, 11      | reteindre, 17   | surcroître, 19  |
| redevenir, 50    | retenir, 50     | surfaire, 28    |
| redevoir, 21     | retraire, 51    | surprendre, 43  |
| redire, 22       | revaloir, 53    | surscoir, 5     |
| redormir, 23     | revenir, 50     | survenir, 50    |
| réduire, 11      | revêtir, 54     | survivre, 55    |
| réclire, 32      | revivre, 55     | taire, 39       |
| refaire, 28      | revoir, 56      | teindre, 17     |
| rejoindre, 17    | rire, 46        | tenir, 50       |
| relire, 32       | rouvrir, 16     | traduire, 11    |
| remettre, 33     | satisfaire, 28  | traire, 51      |
| reluire, 38      | savoir, 47      | transcrire, 25  |
| remoudre, 34     | secourir, 15    | transmettre, 33 |
| rendormir, 23    | séduire, 11     | tressaillir, 4  |
| renaître, 37     | sentir, 23      | vainere, 52     |
| retraire, 51     | seoir, 5        | valoir, 53      |
| renvoyer, 26     | servir, 23      | venir, 50       |
| repaître, 13     | sortir, 23      | vêtir, 54       |
| repartir, 23     | souffrir, 16    | vivre, 55       |
| repeindre, 17    | soumettre, 33   | voir, 56        |
| repentir, 23     | sourire, 46     | vouloir, 57     |

# VOCABULARY

## FRENCH-ENGLISH

### A

**a** [a], *see avoir*.

**à** [a], to, toward, at, for, in, with, by, from. § 202.

**abandonner** [abūdōne], to abandon.

**abbé** [abe], *m.*, abbot.

**abesse** [abēs], *f.*, abbess.

**abécédaire** [abesedæ:r], *m.*, primer.

**aboïement** [abwamū], *m.*, barking.

**abolir** [abōli:r], to abolish.

**abominable** [abōminabl], abominable.

**abord** (d') [dabō:r], at first.

**aboyer** [abwaje], to bark.

**absent** [apsū], absent, away.

**absolu** [apsōly], absolute;—**ment**, absolutely.

**abuser** [abyze], to abuse.

**accentuer** (s') [saksūtqe], to become stronger.

**accès** [akse], *m.*, fit.

**accident** [aksidū], *m.*, accident.

**accidenté** [aksidāte], uneven, irregular, hilly.

**accusateur**, —**trice** [akyzatœ:r, —tris], *m., f.*, accuser.

**accuser** [akyze], to accuse; **les accusés**, the defendants.

**acheter** [aʃte], to buy.

**achever** [aʃve], to finish, complete.

**acquérir** [akeri:r], *irr.*, to acquire.

**acte** [akt], *m.*, act.

**acteur**, —**trice** [aktœ:r, —tris], *m., f.*, actor, actress.

**actif**, —**ve** [aktif, —ti:v], active, alert.

**action** [aksjō], *f.*, act, action.

**adieu** [adjø], good-by, farewell.

**adjectif** [adjɛktif], *m.*, adjective.

**admirable** [admirabl], admirable.

**admirer** [admire], to admire.

**adresser** [adrese], s'— **à**, to address, speak to.

**adroit** [adrwa], adroit, clever.

**adroitement** [adrwatmū], cleverly, adroitly.

**adverbe** [adverb], *m.*, adverb.

**affaire** [afe:r], *f.*, affair, matter, business; **ses** —**s**, his business.

**affiche** [afiʃ], *f.*, poster, bill.

**afficher** [afiʃe], to post up.

**afin de** [afē də], in order to.

**afin que** [afē kə], in order that.

**affreux** [afrø], frightful.

**Afrique** [afrik], *f.*, Africa.

**âge** [a:ʒ], *m.*, age; **quel** — **avez-vous?** how old are you?

**âgé** [aʒe], old; **moins** —, younger.

**agilité** [aʒilite], *f.*, agility, nimbleness.

**agir** [aʒi:r], to act; s'—, *impersonal*, to concern, be a question of.

**agitation** [aʒitasjō], *f.*, uneasiness, excitement.

**agiter** [aʒite], to shake, stir.

**agneau** [aɲo], *m.*, lamb.

**agriculture** [agrikylty:r], *f.*, agriculture.

**ai** [e], *see* **avoir**.

**aide** [ed], *f.*, aid, relief, assistance.

**aider** [ede], to help, aid.

**aigu**, -ë [egy], sharp, piercing.

**ailleurs** [ajœ:r], elsewhere; **d'—**, moreover.

**aimer** [eme], to love, like.

**ainsi** [ēsi], thus, so.

**air** [e:r], *m.*, air, look, manner.

**Ajaccio** [aʒaksjo], Ajaccio, city of Corsica.

**ajouter** [aʒute], to add; **s'—**, to be added.

**alerte** [alert], alert, swift.

**Alice** [alis], Alice.

**Allemagne** [alman], *f.*, Germany.

**Allemand** [almā], German.

**aller** [ale], *irr.*, to go; **s'en —**, to go away; **allons!** come!; — **chercher** (trouver), to go for, go to get; **comment allez-vous?** how are you?; **il y va de**, there is at stake.

**alliance** [aljās], *f.*, alliance.

**allié** [alje], *m.*, ally.

**allumer** [alyme], to light.

**allure** [aly:r], *f.*, pace.

**alors** [alb:r], then, at that time.

**Alpes** [alp], *f. pl.*, Alps.

**Alsace** [alsas], *f.*, Alsace.

**altitude** [altityd], *f.*, altitude, height.

**ambassadeur**, -drice [ābasadœ:r, -dris], *m., f.*, ambassador.

**amener** [amne], to bring, conduct, escort.

**américain**, -e [amerikē, -en], American.

**Amérique** [amerik], *f.*, America.

**ami** [ami], *m.*, friend.

**amitié** [amitje], *f.*, friendship.

**amour** [amu:r], *m.*, love.

**amovible** [amovibl], removable, subject to transfer.

**amuser** [amyze], to amuse; **s'— bien**, to have a good time.

**an** [ā], *m.*, year; **avoir seize —s**, to be sixteen years old; **jour de l'—**, New-year's-day.

**ancien**, -ne [āsje, -jen], old; former.

**Angelus** [āʒelys], Angelus.

**anglais**, -e [āgle, -e:z], English.

**Angleterre** [āglte:r], *f.*, England.

**angoisse** [āgwas], *f.*, agony.

**animal** [animal], *m.*, animal.

**août** [u], *m.*, August.

**année** [ane], *f.*, year.

**apaiser** [apeze], to appease, calm.

**apercevoir** [apersəvwa:r], *irr.*, *see* **recevoir**, to see, perceive.

**appartenir** [apartənir], *irr.*, *see* **tenir**, to belong.

**appeler** [aple], to call; **s'—**, to be named; **comment vous appelez-vous?** what is your name?

**appétit** [apeti], *m.*, appetite; **l'— vient en mangeant**, appetite comes as one eats.

**appliquer** [aplike], to apply.

**apporter** [apørte], to bring.

**apprendre** [aprūdr], *irr.*, *see* **prendre**, to learn, teach, inform.

**apprenti** [aprūti], *m.*, apprentice.

**approbation** [aprobəsjə], *f.*, approbation, approval.

**approcher** [apɔʃe], to bring near; **s'— de**, to approach.

**approuver** [apruve], to approve.

**appuyer** [apuije], to support, bear down; **s'— à**, to lean against, support oneself by.

**après** [apʁe], after; — (*with past inf.*), — **que** (*with indic.*), after; **d'—**, according to.

**après-demain** [apʁedmɛ̃], *m.*, day after to-morrow.

**après-midi** [apʁemidi], *m. or f.*, afternoon.

**arbre** [arbr], *m.*, tree.

**arbuste** [arbyst], *m.*, bush, shrub, small tree.

**archevêque** [arʃøvɛ:k], *m.*, archbishop.

**architecte** [arʃitekt], *m.*, architect.

**argent** [arʒɑ̃], *m.*, silver, money.

**Armagnac** [armapɑk], *m.*, Armagnac, follower of the Count of Armagnac.

**armée** [arme], *f.*, army.

**armement** [arməmɑ̃], *m.*, armament, military preparations.

**arrêter** [arete], to arrest; **s'—**, to stop.

**arrivée** [arive], *f.*, arrival.

**arriver** [arive], to come, arrive.

**arroser** [aroze], to water.

**arsenal** [arsənal], *m.*, arsenal.

**article** [artikl], *m.*, article.

**artillerie** [artilʁi], *f.*, artillery.

**artiste** [artist], *m. or f.*, artist.

**Artois** [artwa], *m.*, Artois.

**ascension** [asəsɲɔ̃], *f.*, ascent.

**Asie** [azi], *f.*, Asia.

**assaillir** [asajir], to assail, attack.

**assassin** [asasɛ̃], *m.*, murderer.

**assemblée** [asɑ̃ble], *f.*, assembly.

**asseoir** [aswaʁ], *irr.*, to seat; **s'—**, to sit (*the act*); **être assis**, to be seated or sitting (*the position*).

**assez** [ase], enough; rather.

**assidûment** [asidymɑ̃], diligently.

**assiéger** [asjeʒe], to besiege.

**assistance** [asistɑ̃s], *f.*, those present.

**assister** [asiste], to be present; **les assistants**, those present.

**assoupir** (s') [sasupir], to fall asleep.

**assuré** [asyʁe], confident.

**attacher** [ataʃe], to tie, lash, make fast, fix.

**attendre** [atɑ̃dr], to wait, await, wait for; **s'— à**, to expect.

**attente** [atɑ̃t], *f.*, waiting, expectation; **salle d'—**, waiting-room.

**attentif**, -ve [atɑ̃tif, -tiv], attentive.

**attention** [atɑ̃sjɔ̃], *f.*, attention; **faire —**, to pay attention.

**attirer** [atire], to draw, attract.

**attraper** [atrape], to catch.

**au** [o], contraction of **à** and **le**.

**aucun** [okœ̃], any, none, no (*negative if verb is preceded by ne, or is omitted*).

**aucunement** [okynmɑ̃], in no wise, not at all.

**au-dessous** [odəsɥ or otsɥ], below, beneath; — **de**, below.

**au-dessus** [odəsɥ or otsɥ], above, over; — **de**, over.

**augmenter** [ɔgmɑ̃te], to increase, grow longer.

**aujourd'hui** [ɔʒurdui], to-day.

**auprès de** [opʁe də], near, very close to, beside.

**auquel** [okel], contraction of **à** and **lequel**.

**aurore** [ɔrɔ:r], *f.*, dawn; *adj.*, golden (in color).

**aussi** [osi], also, so, as, too.

**aussitôt** [osito], immediately, at once.

**autant** [otɑ̃], as much, as many; **d'— plus**, so much the more.

**automne** [otɔ̃], *m.*, autumn, fall.

**autour de** [otur də], around.

**autre** [o:tr], other. §§ 88, 89a.  
**autrefois** [otrɥwa], formerly.  
**autrement** [otrɥmā], otherwise.  
**Autriche** [otriʃ], *f.*, Austria.  
**autrui** [otrui], other people. § 89b.  
**Auvergne** [overɲ], *f.*, Auvergne.  
**aval** [avale], to swallow, gobble down.  
**avance** [avā:s], *f.*, advance; **en** —, ahead of time.  
**avancer** (s') [savāse], to advance.  
**avant** [avā], before; — **de**, before (*with inf.*); **en** —, forward.  
**avant-hier** [avū(t)je:r], *m.*, day before yesterday.  
**avant que** [avū kə], *conj.*, before (*with subj.*).  
**avec** [avek] with; — **les mains**, hand over hand. § 208.  
**avènement** [avenmā], *m.*, accession.  
**avenir** [avni:r], *m.*, future.  
**aventurer** [avātyre], to adventure, risk; **s'** —, to venture.  
**avertir** [averti:r], to warn.  
**aveuglement** [avægləmā], *m.*, blindness.  
**aveuglément** [avæglemā], blindly.  
**avide** [avid], greedy; — **ment**, greedily.  
**avis** [avi], *m.*, opinion.  
**avocat** [avəkɑt], *m.*, lawyer.  
**avoir** [avwa:r], to have, get; **y** —, to be (*impersonal*); **qu'est-ce qu'il a?** what is the matter with him?; — **froid**, to be cold; — **quinze ans**, to be fifteen years old.  
**avril** [avril], *m.*, April.  
**Azincourt** [azēku:r], *m.*, Azincourt, village in northwest of France.

## B

**bachelier** [baʃəlje], bachelor (of arts, law, etc.).  
**bague** [bag], *f.*, ring.  
**bah** [ba], bah!  
**balancer** [balāse], to balance, swing, hesitate.  
**balle** [bal], *f.*, ball, bullet.  
**banc** [bā], *m.*, bench, seat.  
**banque** [bā:k], *f.*, bank.  
**banqueroute** [bākrut], *f.*, bankruptcy, insolvency.  
**barbare** [barba:r], barbarous; barbarian.  
**barrer** [ba:re], to bar, obstruct.  
**bas** [ba], *m.*, stocking.  
**bas**, — **se** [ba, bas], low; **là** —, yonder; **en** —, down-stairs; **parler** —, to speak softly.  
**bastille** [basti:j], *f.*, prison, fortress; **La Bastille**, the Bastille St. Antoine.  
**batave** [bata:v], Batavian, Dutch.  
**bateau** [bato], *m.*, boat.  
**bâtir** [bati:r], to build.  
**bâton** [batɔ̃], *m.*, stick, straight line.  
**battre** [battr], *irr.*, to beat, buffet; **se** —, to fight.  
**bavarder** [bavarde], to chatter, gossip.  
**beau, bel, belle, pl. beaux, belles** [bo, bel], beautiful, fine, handsome, noble.  
**beaucoup** [boku], much, many, a great deal.  
**beau-père** [bopɛ:r], *m.*, father-in-law.  
**beauté** [bote], *f.*, beauty.  
**Belgique** [belʒik], *f.*, Belgium.  
**bénin, -igne** [benē, -iɲ], benign.  
**berger, -ère** [berʒe, -ʒɛ:r], shepherd, shepherdess.



**Berlin** [berlē], *m.*, Berlin.  
**besoin** [bezwē], *m.*, need; **avoir** —, to need.  
**bête** [bɛ:t], *f.*, beast, animal, block-head, silly; *adj.*, foolish.  
**beurre** [bœ:r], *m.*, butter.  
**bien** [bjē], well, very, really, surely, of course; — **que** (*subj.*), although; — **des choses**, many things.  
**bien** [bjē], *m.*, good(s), property.  
**bientôt** [bjēto], soon.  
**bienvenu** [bjēvəny], *m.*, welcome; **soyez le** —, (be) welcome!  
**bière** [bjɛ:r], *f.*, beer.  
**bille** [bi:j], *f.*, marble.  
**billet** [bijɛ], *m.*, note, ticket.  
**blâmer** [blame], to blame.  
**blanc**, —**he** [blā, blā:ʃ], white, clean.  
**blanchir** [blāʃi:r], to grow white, make white.  
**blessé** [blese], to wound.  
**bleu** [blø], blue.  
**blond** [blɔ̃], blonde, light-complexioned.  
**Boileau** [bwalo], *m.*, Boileau.  
**boire** [bwair], *irr.*, to drink.  
**bois** [bwu], *m.*, wood, woods, forest.  
**boiteux**, —**se** [bwatø, -ø:z], lame.  
**bon**, —**ne** [bɔ̃, bɔn], good, kind; **sentir** —, to smell sweet; **de bonne heure**, early.  
**Bonaparte** [bɔnapart], *m.*, Bonaparte.  
**bond** [bɔ̃], *m.*, bound, leap.  
**bonheur** [bɔncœ:r], *m.*, happiness, good fortune.  
**bonhomme** [bɔnɔm], *m.*, old fellow.  
**bonnet** [bɔnɛ], *m.*, cap.  
**bonté** [bɔte], *f.*, kindness.  
**bord** [bɔ:r], edge, margin; **mangé**

**aux** —**s**, worn at the edges, dog-eared.  
**Bossuet** [bɔsqɛ], *m.*, Bossuet.  
**bouc** [buk], *m.*, buck, he-goat.  
**boucher** [buʃɛ], to stop up, cork.  
**bouger** [buʒɛ], to stir, move.  
**bouillonnement** [bujɔnmā], *m.*, boiling, roaring.  
**bouleverser** [bulverse], to upset, overturn.  
**bouquet** [bukɛ], *m.*, bouquet.  
**bourgeois** [burʒwa], *m.*, well-to-do commoner; *pl.*, middle classes.  
**Bourgogne** [burgɔɲ], *f.*, Burgundy.  
**Bourguignon** [burginjɔ̃], *m.*, Burgundian, follower of the Duke of Burgundy.  
**boursier** [bursjɛ], *m.*, scholarship-pupil; pupil whose tuition-fee is remitted.  
**bout** [bu], *m.*, end.  
**branche** [brā:ʃ], *f.*, branch.  
**bras** [bras], *m.*, arm.  
**brave** [bra:v], brave, gallant, worthy, honest.  
**brebis** [brəbi], *f.*, sheep.  
**bref**, **brève** [brɛf, brɛ:v], short, brief.  
**Brienne** [brijɛn], *f.*, Brienne, town in northeast of France, on the Aube.  
**briller** [brijɛ], to shine.  
**brin** [brɛ], *m.*, straw, blade of grass.  
**broder** [brɔde], to embroider.  
**brosser** [brɔse], to brush.  
**bruit** [bru:j], *m.*, noise.  
**brûler** [bryle], to burn.  
**brun** [bræn], brown; —**e**, brunette.  
**brusquement** [bryskəmā], suddenly.

brutal [brytal], brutal.  
 buisson [bʁisɔ̃], *m.*, bush.  
 bureau [byʁo], *m.*, flat-top desk,  
 writing table; office.

## C

ça [sa], contraction of **cela**.  
 café [kafɛ], *m.*, coffee.  
 cage [kaʒ], *f.*, cage.  
 Calais [cale], *m.*, Calais.  
 calme [kalm], *m.*, calm, quiet.  
 calmer [kalme], to calm.  
 calotte [kalɔt], *f.*, skull-cap.  
 camarade [kamarad], *m.*, com-  
 rade.  
 Cambrai [kɑ̃bre], *m.*, Cambrai,  
 city of North France.  
 campagne [kɑ̃paɲ], *f.*, country,  
 not city; campaign.  
 Canada [kanada], *m.*, Canada.  
 canard [kanar], *m.*, duck, drake.  
 cane [kan], *f.*, duck (*female*).  
 canif [kanif], *m.*, penknife, pocket  
 knife.  
 canton [kɑ̃tɔ̃], *m.*, canton, district.  
 capable [kapabl], capable, able.  
 capitaine [kapiten], *m.*, captain.  
 capitale [kapital], *f.*, capital,  
 seat of government.  
 car [kar], for, because, since.  
 cardinal [kardinal], *m.*, cardinal.  
 carré [kare], square, rectangular.  
 carte [kart], *f.*, card, map.  
 cas [ka], case; **dans le (au) —**  
**où**, in case; **au — que**, (*with*  
*subj.*), in case that; **en —**, in  
 case.  
 cascade [kaskad], *f.*, cascade,  
 water-fall.  
 casser [kuse], to break.  
 cause [koʒ], *f.*, cause; **à — de**,  
 because of.  
 cavalerie [kavalʁi], *f.*, cavalry.

**ce** [sə], *pron.*, this, that, it, those;  
 — **qui (que)**, what.  
**ce, cet, cette, ces** [sə, sɛt, sɛt, sɛ],  
*adj.*, this, that.  
**ceci** [səsi], this.  
**céder** [sede], to yield.  
**cela** [s(ə)la], that.  
**célèbre** [selebr], famous, cele-  
 brated.  
**célébrer** [selebre], to celebrate.  
**celui, celle, ceux, celles** [səluʁi,  
 sɛl, sɔ, sɛl], this or that (one);  
 the one, he, him.  
**celui-ci** [səluʁisi], this one, the lat-  
 ter.  
**celui-là** [səluʁila], that one, the  
 former.  
**cent** [sɑ̃], a hundred; **pour —**, per  
 cent.  
**centaine** [sɑ̃ten], *f.*, a hundred.  
**centimètre** [sɑ̃timetr], *m.*, centi-  
 meter,  $\frac{1}{100}$  of an inch.  
**cependant** [səpɑ̃dɑ̃], however,  
 nevertheless, meanwhile, yet.  
**cerise** [səri:z], *f.*, cherry.  
**certain** [sɛrtɛ̃], certain; —**ement**,  
 certainly.  
**Cervin** [sɛrvɛ̃], *m.*, **le mont —**, the  
 Matterhorn.  
**cesser** [sesɛ], to cease, stop.  
 § 196a.  
**chacun** [ʃakɑ̃], *pron.*, each, each  
 one, every one.  
**chair** [ʃɛ:r], *f.*, flesh.  
**chaire** [ʃɛ:r], *f.*, pulpit, official  
 seat.  
**chaise** [ʃɛ:z], *f.*, chair.  
**chalet** [ʃale], *m.*, cottage.  
**chaleur** [ʃalœ:r], *f.*, heat.  
**champ** [ʃɑ̃], *m.*, field.  
**chance** [ʃɑ̃:s], *f.*, fortune, good  
 luck.  
**chanceler** [ʃɑ̃sle], to totter, stag-  
 ger.

**changer** [ʃɑ̃ʒe], to change.  
**chanson** [ʃɑ̃sɔ̃], *f.*, song.  
**chanter** [ʃɑ̃te], to sing, chant, crow.  
**chanteur, -se or cantatrice** [ɑ̃-tœr, -ø:z, kɑ̃tatris], singer.  
**chapeau** [ʃapo], *m.*, hat, bonnet.  
**chapitre** [ʃapitr], *m.*, chapter.  
**chaque** [ʃak], each, every.  
**charger** [ʃaʒe], to charge, commission; **chargé de**, full of.  
**Charles** [ʃarl], *m.*, Charles.  
**charme** [ʃarm], *m.*, charm.  
**chasse** [ʃas], *f.*, hunting; **aller à la —**, to go hunting.  
**chasser** [ʃase], to hunt, drive away, chase.  
**chat** [ʃa], *m.*, cat; — **-tigre**, tiger-cat.  
**château** [ʃato], *m.*, castle.  
**chatte** [ʃat], *f.*, cat (*female*).  
**chaud** [ʃo], warm, hot.  
**chaudron** [ʃodrɔ̃], *m.*, caldron.  
**chaux** [ʃo], *f.*, lime.  
**chef** [ʃef], *m.*, leader; — **d'œuvre** [ʃedœvr], *m.*, masterpiece; — **de gare**, station-master.  
**chemin** [ʃəmɛ̃], *m.*, road; — **de fer**, railroad.  
**cheminer** [ʃəmine], to travel.  
**cher, chère** [ʃɛ:r], dear.  
**chercher** [ʃɛʃe], to search, look for, seek, get.  
**cheval** [ʃəval], *m.*, horse.  
**chevalier** [ʃəvalje], *m.*, knight.  
**cheveu** [ʃəvø], *m.*, hair (of the head).  
**chèvre** [ʃɛ:vr], *f.*, goat (*female*).  
**chez** [ʃe], to, at *or* in the house, shop *or* office of someone; — **nous**, at our house; — **M. X**, at Mr. X's; — **le dentiste**, at the dentist's; among, in; —

les Romains, among the Romans; — **elle**, in her.  
**chien** [ʃjɛ̃], *m.*, dog.  
**chienne** [ʃjɛn], *f.*, dog (*female*).  
**chose** [ʃo:z], *f.*, thing.  
**chrétien, -ne** [kretjɛ̃, -tjɛn], Christian.  
**ciel, pl. cieux** [sjɛl, sjø], *m.*, sky, heaven.  
**cigare** [sigar], *m.*, cigar.  
**cinq** [sɛ̃k], five.  
**cinquante** [sɛ̃kɑ̃t], fifty.  
**cinquième** [sɛ̃kjɛm], fifth.  
**cirque** [sirk], *m.*, circus, amphitheater.  
**citoyen** [sitwajɛ̃], *m.*, citizen.  
**civil** [sivil], civil.  
**clair** [klɛ:r], clear; — **ement**, clearly.  
**classe** [kla:s], *f.*, class, class room, recitation, lesson.  
**Claude Lorrain** [klo:d lɔrɛ̃], *m.*, Claude Lorrain.  
**clé or clef** [kle], *f.*, key.  
**clergé** [klerʒe], *m.*, clergy.  
**clin d'œil** [klɛ̃ dœ:j], *m.*, wink, twinkling.  
**cocher** [kɔʃe], *m.*, cabman, driver.  
**cœur** [kœ:r], *m.*, heart, courage.  
**cogner** [kɔne], to knock, bump.  
**coin** [kwɛ̃], *m.*, corner.  
**Colbert** [kɔlbɛ:r], *m.*, Colbert.  
**colère** [kɔlɛ:r], *f.*, anger, wrath.  
**colonial** [kolɔ̃njal], colonial.  
**colonnade** [kolɔ̃nad], *f.*, colonnade, row of columns.  
**combattre** [kɔbatr], *irr.*, see **battre**, to fight.  
**combien** [kɔbjɛ̃], how much, how many; — **de temps**, how long.  
**comédie** [kɔmedi], *f.*, comedy.  
**commandant** [kɔmɑ̃dɑ̃], *m.*, major.

- commandature** [kəmādaty:r], *f.*, headquarters.  
**commandement** [kəmādmā], *m.*, command.  
**commander** [kəmāde], to command.  
**comme** [kəm], as, like.  
**commencement** [kəmāsmā], *m.*, beginning.  
**commencer** [kəmāse], to begin.  
**commerce** [kəmɛrs], *m.*, commerce.  
**communio** [kəmyɲjɔ], *f.*, communion.  
**compagne** [kɔpaɲ], *f.*, companion (*female*), wife.  
**compagnie** [kɔpaɲi], *f.*, company.  
**compagnon** [kɔpaɲɔ], *m.*, companion.  
**Compiègne** [kɔpjɛɲ], *f.*, Compiègne.  
**complet**, -ète [kɔplɛ, -plet], full, complete.  
**compliment** [kɔplimā], *m.*, compliment.  
**compliquer** [kɔplike], to complicate.  
**composer** [kɔpoze], to compose.  
**comprendre** [kɔprā:dr], *irr.*, *see* **prendre**, to understand, comprehend, include.  
**comte**, -sse [kɔ:t, kɔtɛs], *m., f.*, count, countess.  
**compter** [kɔtɛ], to count, reckon.  
**concert** [kɔsɛ:r], *m.*, concert.  
**concevoir** [kɔsɔvwa:r], *irr.*, *see* **recevoir**, to conceive.  
**condamner** [kɔdane], to condemn.  
**condition** [kɔdisjɔ], *f.*, condition; à — que, on condition that.  
**conduire** [kɔdɥi:r], *irr.*, to conduct, take, drive; se —, to behave.  
**conduite** [kɔdɥit], *f.*, conduct.  
**confiance** [kɔfjā:s], *f.*, confidence.  
**confus** [kɔfy], confused.  
**confusément** [kɔfyzemā], confusedly, dimly.  
**congé** [kɔʒɛ], *m.*, leave, holiday.  
**conjonction** [kɔʒɔksjɔ], *f.*, conjunction.  
**connaissance** [kɔnɛsā:s], *f.*, acquaintance.  
**connaître** [kɔnɛ:tr], *irr.*, to know (by perception), recognize, be acquainted with.  
**conquérir** [kɔkeri:r], *irr.*, *see* **acquérir**, to conquer.  
**conscience** [kɔsjā:s], *f.*, conscience; avec —, conscientiously.  
**conseil** [kɔsɛ:j], *m.*, counsel.  
**conseiller** [kɔsɛje], to counsel, advise.  
**consentir** [kɔsɛti:r], *irr.*, *see* **dormir**, to consent.  
**consoler** [kɔsɔle], to console.  
**constamment** [kɔstamā], constantly.  
**constant** [kɔstā], constant.  
**constituant** [kɔstitɥā], constitutional.  
**constitution** [kɔstitɥsjɔ], *f.*, constitution.  
**construire** [kɔstrɥi:r], *irr.*, *see* **conduire**, to construct.  
**consul** [kɔsyl], *m.*, consul.  
**contempler** [kɔtāple], to contemplate, watch.  
**content** [kɔtā], happy, glad, satisfied, pleased.  
**contenir** [kɔtɛ], to tell, relate.  
**continuer** [kɔtinɥɛ], to continue.  
**contraire** [kɔtrɛ:r], contrary, opposite.  
**contre** [kɔ:tr], against.  
**controleur** [kɔ:trolɛ:r], *m.*, inspector.

**convenir** [kɔ̃vni:r], to agree.  
**convention** [kɔ̃vɛsjɔ̃], *f.*, convention.  
**convoquer** [kɔ̃vɔkɛ], to assemble, summon, convoke.  
**corde** [kɔrd], *f.*, rope.  
**Corneille** [kɔrne:j], *m.*, Corneille.  
**corporation** [kɔrpɔrasjɔ̃], *f.*, trade guild, trade union.  
**corps** [kɔ:r], *m.*, body.  
**costume** [kɔstym], *m.*, costume.  
**côte** [kɔ:t], *f.*, side, coast, ridge, rib, shore.  
**côté** [kɔtɛ], *m.*, side, direction; à — *de*, beside; *de* —, sidewise, sidelong.  
**coucher** [kuʃɛ], to lay flat, put to bed; *se* —, to lie down, go to bed.  
**couleur** [kulœ:r], *f.*, color.  
**coup** [ku], *m.*, blow, stroke, movement; — *de* pied, kick; — *de* tête, wilful act; *tout à* —, suddenly; — *de* vent, gust of wind; — *d'état*, revolutionary act; *tout d'un* —, all at once.  
**coupable** [kupabl], guilty, culpable.  
**couper** [kupe], to cut.  
**couple** [kupl], *f.*, two; *m.*, a pair, span, yoke.  
**cour** [ku:r], *f.*, court, yard.  
**courage** [kura:ʒ], *m.*, courage.  
**courir** [kuri:r], *irr.*, to run; — (*après*) *des nids*, to hunt birds' nests.  
**couronne** [kurɔn], *f.*, crown.  
**course** [kurs], *f.*, run, race.  
**court** [kur], short.  
**courtois** [kurtwa], courteous.  
**court-vêtu** [kurvety], in short clothes, short-skirted.  
**cousin** [kuzɛ], *m.*, cousin (*masculine*).

**cousine** [kuzin], *f.*, cousin (*feminine*).  
**couteau** [kuto], *m.*, knife.  
**coûter** [kute], to cost; — **cher**, to cost dear.  
**coutume** [kutym], *f.*, custom.  
**couvrir** [kuvri:r], *irr.*, to cover.  
**craindre** [krɛ:dr], *irr.*, to fear.  
**craie** [kre], *f.*, chalk.  
**crayon** [krejɔ̃], *m.*, pencil.  
**créateur**, —**trice** [kreatœ:r, —tris], *m., f.*, creator.  
**Crécy** [kresi], Crécy, Cressy.  
**créer** [kree], to create.  
**creuser** [krøze], to hollow.  
**crève-cœur** [krevkœ:r], *m.*, agony, heart-breaking experience.  
**cri** [kri], *m.*, cry, shout, scream.  
**crier** [krie], to cry, shout, scream.  
**cristal** [kristal], *m.*, crystal, flint glass.  
**croire** [krwa:r], *irr.*, to believe.  
**croix** [krwa], *f.*, cross.  
**croquer** [krøke], to crunch, devour.  
**cruauté** [kryote], *f.*, cruelty.  
**cruel**, —**le** [kryɛl], cruel.  
**cueillir** [kœji:r], *irr.*, to pick, gather.  
**cuiller** [kuije:r], *f.*, spoon.  
**cure-dent** [kyrdɑ̃], *m.*, toothpick.  
**curieux**, —**se** [kyrjɔ, —jɔ:z], curious.  
**cuvette** [kyvet], *f.*, bowl, basin.

## D

**dahlia** [dalja], *m.*, dahlia.  
**d'ailleurs** [dajœ:r], moreover, besides.  
**dame** [dam], *f.*, lady.  
**Danemark** [danmark], *m.*, Denmark.

**dangereux**, -se [dãʒərø, -rø:z], dangerous.

**dans** [dã], in, into, inside of, within.

**danser** [dãse], to dance.

**danseur**, -se [dãsœ:r, -ø:z], *m.*, *f.*, dancer.

**date** [dat], *f.*, date.

**dauphin** [dofē], *m.*, dauphin, heir apparent.

**davantage** [davãta:ʒ], more.

**de** [dø], of, from, with, for, to, in, on, by. § 211.

**débarquer** [debarke], to land.

**débattre** [debatr], *irr.*, *see* **battre**, to discuss; **se** —, to struggle.

**debout** [døbu], erect, standing; **se tenir** —, to remain standing.

**décembre** [desã:br], *m.*, December.

**décidément** [desidemũ], decidedly.

**décider** [deside], to decide.

**décision** [desizjõ], *f.*, decision.

**dedans** [dødã], inside, within.

**dédaigner** [dedeɲe], to despise, disdain.

**dédaigneux** [dedeɲø], scornful.

**déesse** [dees], *f.*, goddess.

**défendre** [defã:dr], to forbid, defend.

**défenseur** [defãsœ:r], *m.*, defender, attorney.

**défier** [defje], to defy; **se** — **de**, to distrust.

**défiler** [defile], to march.

**déjà** [deʒa], already.

**déjeuner** [deʒøne], *m.*, breakfast.

**déjeuner** [deʒøne], to breakfast, eat breakfast.

**delà** [døla], beyond.

**délibérer** [delibere], to deliberate.

**délicieux**, -se [delisjø, -ø:z], delicious, delightful.

**délivrer** [delivre], to deliver, relieve, set free.

**demain** [dãmē], to-morrow.

**demander** [dãmãde], to ask, demand.

**demarche** [demarʃ], *f.*, proceeding, behavior.

**demi** [dãmil], *m.*, or **demie**, *f.*, one half.

**demi** [dãmil], half.

**demi-heure** [dãmicœ:r], *f.*, half hour.

**dent** [dã], *f.*, tooth; **croquer á belles** —s, to eat with great relish.

**dépêcher** [depeʃe], to hurry; **se** —, to make haste.

**dépens** [depũ], *m. pl.*; **aux** — **de**, at the expense of.

**dépenser** [depãse], to spend.

**depuis** [døpi], since; for; — **dix minutes**, for the last ten minutes; — **que**, *conj.*, since.

**député** [depyte], *m.*, deputy, representative.

**dernier**, -ère [dærɲe, -jœ:r], last.

**derrière** [dærjœ:r], behind.

**des** [de], contraction of **de** and **les**, of the, some.

**désastre** [dezastr], *m.*, disaster.

**Descartes** [dekart], *m.*, Descartes.

**descendre** [desã:dr], to descend, go down.

**déshonorer** [dezɔnøre], to dishonor.

**désir** [dezi:r], *m.*, desire.

**désirer** [dezire], to desire.

**désolé** [dezøle], dreary, desolate.

**désoler** [dezøle], to ravage; **se** —, to grieve, be in deep sorrow.

**dessin** [desē], *m.*, drawing, plan.

**dessiner** [desine], to draw, design.

**dessous** [døsu], under, beneath; **au** — **de**, below.

**dessus** [dəsy], on, over; **au — de**, above.

**détendre** [detā:dr], to relax.

**détermination** [determinasjō], *f.*, decision, determination.

**déterminer** [determine], to determine.

**détester** [deteste], to hate, detest.

**détruire** [detruir], *irr.*, *see* **conduire**, to destroy.

**deux** [dø], two.

**deuxième** [døzjem], second.

**devant** [dəvā], *m.*, front.

**devant** [dəvā], before, in front of.

**devenir** [dəvənir], *irr.*, *see* **tenir**, to become, grow.

**deviner** [dəvine], to guess.

**devoir** [dəvwar], *m.*, duty, task, exercise; **rendre ses —s**, to pay one's respects.

**devoir** [dəvwar], *irr.*, to owe, to be (intending or under obligation to); must; ought, have to.

**dieu** [djø], *m.*, god.

**différent** [diferā], different.

**difficile** [difisil], hard, difficult.

**difficulté** [difikylte], *f.*, difficulty.

**digne** [din], worthy.

**dimanche** [dimā:ʃ], *m.*, Sunday.

**diminuer** [diminqe], to diminish, grow smaller.

**dîner** [dine], *m.*, dinner.

**dîner** [dine], to dine.

**dire** [dir], *irr.*, to say, tell; **vouloir —**, to mean; **c'est-à- —**, that is (to say); **on dit**, people say, it is said.

**directeur, —trice** [direktœr, —tris], *m., f.*, director.

**direction** [direksjō], *f.*, direction.

**discipline** [disiplin], *f.*, discipline.

**discuter** [diskyte], to discuss, argue.

**disparaître** [disparɛ:tr], *irr.*, *see* **connaître**, to disappear.

**disposer** [dispoze], to dispose.

**distance** [distā:s], *f.*, distance.

**distinctement** [distɛktmā], distinctly.

**distinguer** [distɛge], to distinguish, perceive.

**distribution** [distribysjō], *f.*, distribution, presentation.

**dites** [dit], *see* **dire**.

**divers** [divɛ:r], various, diverse.

**dix** [dis], ten.

**dixième** [dizjem], tenth.

**dizaine** [dizen], ten, half score.

**docile** [dəsil], obedient; **—ment**, obediently.

**doigt** [dwa], *m.*, finger.

**dois** [dwa], *see* **devoir**.

**dollar** [dəlar], *m.*, dollar.

**domestique** [dəmestik], *m., f.*, servant, domestic.

**dominer** [dəmine], to dominate.

**donc** [dɔ(k)], then, so.

**donner** [dəne], to give.

**dont** [dɔ], of which, of whom, whose, from which, with which.

**dormir** [dərmir], *irr.*, to sleep.

**dot** [dɔt], *f.*, dowry.

**douceur** [dusmā], gently.

**douceur** [dusœ:r], *f.*, gentleness, peacefulness.

**doute** [dut], *m.*, doubt; **sans —**, undoubtedly, probably.

**douter** [dute], to doubt.

**doux, douce** [du, dus], sweet, gentle.

**douzaine** [duzen], *f.*, dozen, group of twelve.

**douze** [du:z], twelve.

**drap** [dra], *m.*, cloth.

**drapeau** [drapo], *m.*, flag.

dresser [drɛsɛ], to set up; se —, to rise, straighten up.  
 droit [drwa], right, straight; à —e, to the right; tout —, straight ahead; *m. pl.*, rights, obligations, taxes; être en —, to have a right.  
 drôle [dro:l], droll, queer, funny, comical.  
 du [dy], contraction of *de* and *le*, of the, some.  
 duc [dyk], *m.*, duke.  
 duchesse [dyʃɛs], *f.*, duchess.  
 duquel [dykɛl], contraction of *de* and *lequel*.  
 dur [dy:r], hard, severe.  
 durer [dyrɛ], to last, endure.

## E

eau [o], *f.*, water.  
 ébouriffé [eburifɛ], rough, shaggy.  
 échafaud [eʃafo], *m.*, scaffold.  
 échapper [eʃapɛ], to escape.  
 éclatant [eklatɑ̃], striking, shining.  
 éclater [eklate], to burst forth.  
 école [ekɔl], *f.*, school; à l'—, to or at school.  
 écolier [ekɔlje], *m.*, scholar.  
 écouter [ekute], to listen, listen to (*with direct object*).  
 écraser [ekrazɛ], to crush.  
 écrire [ekri:r], *irr.*, to write.  
 écriture [ekrity:r], *f.*, writing.  
 écrivain [ekrivɛ̃], *m.*, author, writer.  
 Édouard [edwa:r], *m.*, Edward.  
 éducation [edykasjɔ̃], *f.*, education.  
 effacer [ɛfase], to efface, erase.  
 effort [ɛfɔ:r], *m.*, effort.  
 effrayer [ɛfrɛje], to frighten; effrayant, frightful.  
 égal [egal], equal; —ement, equally.  
 égalité [egalite], *f.*, equality.  
 égayer [egeje], to enliven, brighten.  
 église [egliz], *f.*, church; à l'—, to or at church.  
 égoïste [egoist], selfish.  
 eh bien [e bjɛ̃], well!  
 Elbe [ɛlb], *f.*, Elba, island between Corsica and Italy.  
 élection [ɛleksjɔ̃], *f.*, election.  
 élève [ɛlɛ:v], *m., f.*, pupil.  
 élever [ɛlɛv], to raise, produce.  
 élire [ɛli:r], *irr.*, see *lire*, to elect, choose.  
 Élisabeth [elizabɛt], *f.*, Elizabeth.  
 elle, [ɛl], she, it, her.  
 éloquence [ɛlokɑ̃:s], *f.*, eloquence.  
 embarrasser [ābarasɛ], to embarrass.  
 embrouiller [ābrujɛ], to tangle; s'—, to become confused.  
 emmener [āmne], to take away.  
 émotion [emosjɔ̃], *f.*, emotion.  
 émouvoir [emuvwa:r], *irr.*, see *mouvoir*, to affect, excite.  
 emparer (s') [sāpare], to seize, take possession of.  
 empêcher [āpɛʃɛ], to prevent.  
 empereur [āpɛrœ:r], *m.*, emperor.  
 empire [āpi:r], *m.*, empire.  
 employer [āplwajɛ], to employ.  
 emporter [āpɔrtɛ], to carry off, overbalance.  
 en [ɑ̃], *adv.* or *pron.*, of it, of them; some, any; from them.  
 en [ɑ̃], in, into; of; as a, like a; *with pres. part.*, while, on, by; — haut, up-stairs; — bas, down-stairs.  
 enchantement [āʃātmā̃], *m.*, enchantment, magic.



**enchanteur, -eresse** [ãʃãtœ:r, -œ:res], *m., f.*, enchanter, enchantress.

**encore** [ãkœ:r], yet, still, more; — **deux jours**, two days more.

**encourager** [ãkuraʒe], to encourage.

**encre** [ã:kr], *f.*, ink.

**encrier** [ãkrje], *m.*, ink-well.

**endroit** [ãdrwa], *m.*, place, spot.

**enfance** [ãfã:s], *f.*, childhood.

**enfant** [ãfã], *m., f.*, child.

**enfin** [ãfẽ], at last, finally.

**enfuir** (s') [sãfũ:r], *irr.*, see **fuir**, to flee, run away.

**enguirlander** [ãgirlãde], to enwreathe, twine about.

**enhardir** (s') [sãardĩ:r], to take courage, grow bold.

**enjamber** [ãʒãbe], to step or straddle over.

**ennemi** [enmi], *m.*, enemy.

**ennuyeux** [ãnũjœ], wearisome.

**énorme** [enœrm], enormous, vast.

**enricher** [ãriʃe], to enrich.

**enseigner** [ãʃeɲe], to teach.

**ensemble** [ãsã:bl], together.

**entendre** [ãtã:dr], to hear, understand; s'—, to agree.

**entier** [ãtje], *m.*, whole, unit; *adj.*, whole, entire, all.

**entre** [ã:tr], between.

**entrée** [ãtre], *f.*, entrance.

**entrer** [ãtre], to enter; — **dans le jardin**, to enter the garden.

**entr'ouvert** [ãtruve:r], half-open.

**envahir** [ãvaĩr], to invade.

**envelopper** [ãvlœpe], to envelop, take in.

**envers** [ãve:r], toward.

**envie** [ãvi], *f.*, desire, envy; **avoir** —, to feel like.

**envieux, -se** [ãvjœ, -vjœ:z], envious.

**envoyer** [ãvwaje], *irr.*, to send.

**épais, -se** [epe, -pes], thick.

**épaule** [epol], *f.*, shoulder; **aux larges** —s, broad-shouldered.

**épeler** [eple], to spell.

**épouvantable** [epuvãtabl], frightful.

**époux** [epu], *m.*, husband.

**épouse** [epu:z], *f.*, spouse, wife.

**épreuve** [eprœ:v], *f.*, proof; **à toute** —, proof against everything.

**épuisement** [epqizmã], *m.*, exhaustion.

**épuiser** [epqize], to exhaust.

**équilibre** [ekilibr], *m.*, equilibrium, balance.

**errer** [ere], to wander.

**escabeau** [eskabo], *m.*, stool.

**escalier** [eskalje], *m.*, staircase, flight of stairs.

**esclave** [esklœ:v], slave.

**Espagne** [espan], *f.*, Spain.

**espérance** [esperã:s], *f.*, hope.

**espérer** [espe:re], to hope.

**essayer** [esɛje], to try.

**essouffler** [esufle], to put out of breath; to wind; s'—, to lose one's breath.

**essuyer** [esũje], to wipe.

**est** [e], see **être**.

**estimer** [estime], to esteem.

**et** [e], and; — . . . —, both . . . and.

**état** [eta], *m.*, state, trade; **États-Unis** [etazyni], United States; **États généraux**, States General, Parliament.

**étai** [eto], *m.*, vise.

**été** [ete], see **être**.

**été** [ete], *m.*, summer.

**étendre** [etã:dr], to extend, stretch out.

**étirer** (s') [setire], to stretch.

**étouffe** [etɔf], *f.*, cloth, goods.  
**étoile** [etwal], *f.*, star.  
**étonnement** [etɔnmā], *m.*, astonishment, surprise.  
**étonner** [etɔnel], to astonish, surprise; *s'*—, to wonder.  
**étouffer** [etufel], to choke, stifle, smother.  
**étranger**, *-ère* [etrāʒe, -ʒe:r], stranger, foreigner.  
**être** [ɛ:tr], *m.*, being.  
**être** [ɛ:tr], *irr.*, to be; *as auxiliary in active voice*, to have; — *à*, to belong to.  
**étudier** [etydje], to study.  
**eu** [y], *see avoir*.  
**Europe** [ærɔp], *f.*, Europe.  
**eux** [ø], *pl. of lui*, they, them.  
**éveiller** [eveʒel], to waken, rouse, wake up.  
**évêque** [evɛ:k], *m.*, bishop.  
**évidemment** [evidamā], evidently.  
**évident** [evidā], evident.  
**éviter** [evite], to avoid.  
**exact** [egza(kt)], exact, on time.  
**examiner** [egzamine], to examine.  
**excuser** [ekskyzel], to excuse, pardon.  
**exécrer** [egzekre], to execrate.  
**exécuter** [egzekyte], to execute.  
**exécuteur**, *-trice* [egzekytœ:r, -tris], executor.  
**exemple** [egzāpl], *m.*, copy, example; *par* —, for instance.  
**exercice** [egzɛrsis], *m.*, exercise; *faire l'— (militaire)*, to drill.  
**exister** [egziste], to exist.  
**explication** [eksplikasjɔ], *f.*, explanation.  
**expliquer** [eksplike], to explain.  
**exploiter** [eksplwate], to exploit, work, cheat.

**exposer** [ekspose], to expose.  
**exprès**, *-presse* [ekspre, -pres], express; *adv.*, purposely.  
**expression** [ekspresjɔ], *f.*, expression.  
**exprimer** [eksprime], to express.  
**extraordinaire** [ekstr(a)ordine:r], extraordinary.  
**extrémité** [ekstremite], *f.*, extremity, end.

## F

**fable** [fabl], *f.*, fable.  
**fabrique** [fabrik], *f.*, mill, factory; cloth, fabric.  
**fabriquer** [fabrike], to make, manufacture.  
**face** [fas], *f.*, face, front; *en* — *de*, in front of, opposite.  
**fâcher (se)** [sə faʒel], to get angry.  
**fâcheux**, *-se* [faʒø, ø:z], vexatious, unfortunate.  
**facile** [fasil], easy.  
**façon** [fasɔ], *f.*, way, manner; *de* — *que*, so that.  
**facteur** [faktœ:r], *m.*, postman, letter-carrier.  
**faible** [fɛbl], weak.  
**faim** [fɛ], *f.*, hunger; *avoir* —, to be hungry.  
**faire** [fɛ:r], *irr.*, to do, make, cause; say; — —, to have done; — *attention*, to pay attention; — *froid*, to be cold (*impersonal*); — *une question*, to ask a question; — *beau (temps)*, to be fine (weather); *il fait bon*, it is pleasant; *si fait*, yes indeed; *se* —, to be; to take place, occur, happen; — *une classe*, to hear a lesson, conduct a recitation; — *comme*, to seem like, act like.

**falloir** [falwa:r], *irr. impersonal*, to be necessary, have to; must;  
**il me faut**, I must, I need; **il lui faudra**, he will have to; **il fallait voir**, you ought to have seen; **il ne faut pas**, one must not.

**falloir (s'en)** [sūfalwa:r], to be wanting; **peu s'en faut**, it lacks but little.

**fameux**, -se [famø, -ø:z], famous.

**familier** [familje], familiar.

**famille** [fami:j], *f.*, family; **en** —, informally, with no strangers present.

**fanfare** [fāfai:r], *f.*, flourish of trumpets.

**fatigué** [fatige], weary.

**fatiguer** [fatige], to weary, tire; **se** —, to grow weary.

**faufiler** [fofile], to slip in.

**faute** [fo:t], *f.*, fault, mistake.

**fautif** [fotif], at fault, to blame.

**faux**, -sse [fo, fo:s], false; — **marchepied**, foot-rope.

**faux** [fo], *f.*, scythe.

**favori**, -te [favori, -rit], favorite.

**feindre** [fē:dr], *irr.*, *see* **craindre**, to feign, pretend.

**femme** [fam], *f.*, wife, woman.

**fenêtre** [fənɛ:tr], *f.*, window.

**féodal** [fɛɔdal], feudal.

**fer** [fɛ:r], *m.*, iron; **chemin de** —, railroad.

**ferai** [føre], *see* **faire**.

**Ferdinand le Catholique** [ferdinā la katolik], Ferdinand, king of Aragon (1452–1516).

**fermé** [ferme], closed.

**fermer** [ferme], to close, shut.

**feu** [fø], *m.*, fire.

**feu** [fø], late, recent; — **la reine**, or **la —e reine**, the late queen.

**feuille** [fœ:j], *f.*, leaf.

**février** [fevri(j)e], *m.*, February.

**fier**, -ère [fjɛ:r], proud.

**figure** [figy:r], *f.*, face, figure.

**fil** [fil], *m.*, thread.

**filature** [filaty:r], *f.*, (spinning) mill.

**filles** [fi:j], *f.*, girl, daughter.

**fil** [fis], *m.*, son.

**fin** [fɛ], *f.*, end.

**fin**, -e [fɛ, fin], fine.

**finir** [fini:r], to finish.

**fis** [fi], *see* **faire**.

**fixer** [fikse], to fix, settle; look steadily at, stare at.

**flacon** [flakɔ], *m.*, bottle.

**flatteur**, -se [flatœ:r, ø:z], flattering.

**fleur** [flœ:r], *f.*, flower.

**fleurir** [flœri:r], to flourish, grow (well); **fleuri**, full of flowers.

**flotter** [flote], to float.

**foi** [fwɔ], *f.*, faith, word.

**fois** [fwɔ], *f.*, time; **une** —, **deux** —, once, twice.

**foncé** [fɔse], dark.

**fond** [fɔ], *m.*, back, bottom, rear.

**font** [fɔ], *see* **faire**.

**fontaine** [fɔten], *f.*, fountain, spring.

**forçat** [førsa], *m.*, convict; — **à vie**, convict sentenced for life.

**force** [førs], *f.*, strength, force.

**forcer** [førsɛ], to force, compel.

**forêt** [føre], *f.*, forest.

**Forez** [førez], *m.*, Forez, old French province near Lyons.

**forgeron** [føʒɔrɔ], *m.*, blacksmith.

**forme** [førm], *f.*, form, formality.

**former** [førme], to form.

**fort** [fø:r], strong.

**fort** [fø:r], *adv.*, very.

**fou**, **fol**, **folle** [fu, fɔl], crazy.

**foule** [ful], *f.*, crowd, throng, mob.

**fourmi** [furmi], *f.*, ant.

**fraîcheur** [frɛʃœ:r], *f.*, coolness, freshness.

**frais** [frɛ], *m. pl.*, expenses, cost.

**frais, fraîche** [frɛ, frɛ:ʃ], fresh, cool.

**fraise** [frɛ:z], *f.*, strawberry.

**franc** [frā], *m.*, franc (= 19.3 cents).

**franc**, -**he** [frā, frā:ʃ], frank, honest; **Franche-Comté**, province of Eastern France, "Free County."

**franc, franque** [frā, frā:k], Frankish.

**Français** [frāse], *m.*, Frenchman.

**français** [frāse], French.

**France** [frā:s], *f.*, France.

**François** [frūswa], *m.*, Francis.

**Frantz** [frānts], *m.*, Frantz.

**frapper** [frapɛ], to strike.

**frayeur** [frɛjœ:r], *f.*, fear, fright, terror.

**frère** [frɛ:r], *m.*, brother.

**friser** [frizɛ], to curl.

**froid** [frwa], cold.

**fromage** [frōma:ʒ], *m.*, cheese.

**fronde** [frō:d], *f.*, sling; **la Fronde**, conspiracy against Mazarin.

**frotter** [frɔtɛ], to rub.

**fruit** [fruɪ], *m.*, fruit.

**fuir** [fuir], *irr.*, to flee, fly.

**fumer** [fyme], to smoke.

**funèbre** [fyne:br], funeral.

**furieux**, -**se** [fyrjə, -ø:z], furious.

**fusil** [fyzi], *m.*, gun.

**fusiller** [fyziʒɛ], to shoot.

**fut** [fy], *see* être; **il s'en** —, he went off.

**future** [fyty:r], *m.*, future (tense); —, *adj.*, future.

## G

**gabier** [gabje], *m.*, topman.

**gagner** [gaɲɛ], to gain, earn, win, reach.

**gai** [ge], gay, merry.

**gaiement or gaîment** [gemā], gaily.

**galamment** [galamā], gallantly.

**galant** [galā], gallant.

**galop** [galo], gallop.

**gamin** [gamē], *m.*, street urchin.

**gant** [gō], *m.*, glove.

**garçon** [garsō], *m.*, boy, waiter, bachelor.

**garde** [gard], *m., f.*, guard.

**garde** [gard], *f.*, guard; **prendre** — (de), to take care (not to); **n'avoir** — de, to be careful not to.

**garder** [garde], to keep, guard, protect, retain.

**gare** [gar], *f.*, depot, railway station (terminal); —! beware!

**gâteau** [gato], *m.*, cake.

**gauche** [go:ʃ], left; **à** —, to the left; —**ment**, awkwardly.

**Gaulois** [golwa], *m.*, Gaul; *adj.*, Gallic.

**géant** [ʒeā], *m.*, giant.

**geler** [ʒɔle], to freeze.

**gêner** [ʒɛne], to impede, embarrass, vex, disturb; **se** —, to hesitate.

**général** [ʒeneral], *m.*, general; *adj.*, general.

**généreux**, -**se** [ʒenerø, -rø:z], generous.

**génie** [ʒeni], *m.*, genius.

**genou** [ʒonu], *m.*, knee; (*pl. formerly* —**x**).

**gens** [ʒā], *pl.*, people, men.

gentil, -lle [ʒɑ̃ti, -ti:j], pretty, pleasing, attractive.  
 glissade [glisad], *f.*, slide.  
 glisser [glise], to glide.  
 gloire [glwa:r], *f.*, glory.  
 glorieux, -se [glɔ:rjo, -rjɔ:z], glorious.  
 gouffre [gufr], *m.*, gulf, abyss.  
 goûter [gute], to taste, enjoy.  
 goutte [gut], *f.*, drop.  
 gouvernement [guvɛrnəmɑ̃], *m.*, government.  
 gouverner [guvɛrne], to govern.  
 gouverneur [guvɛnœ:r], *m.*, governor.  
 grâce [grɑ:s], *f.*, favor, mercy, pardon, thanks.  
 grade [grad], *m.*, grade, rank.  
 grammaire [gramœ:r], *f.*, grammar.  
 grand [grɑ̃], large, tall; *les* —, the great; —*ement*, greatly.  
 grandeur [grɑ̃dœ:r], *f.*, greatness, grandeur.  
 gras, -se [gra, gras], fat, rich.  
 grasseyer [graseje], to speak with uvular *r*, "speak thick."  
 grave [gra:v], grave, serious.  
 gravité [gravite], *f.*, seriousness.  
 gré [gre], *m.*, good-will, gratitude; *savoir* —, to be grateful.  
 grec, —*que* [grek], Greek.  
 grément [gremɑ̃], *m.*, rigging.  
 grêle [gre:l], slight, scanty.  
 grenouille [grənu:j], *f.*, frog.  
 grief [grief], *m.*, injury, cause of complaint.  
 grillage [grija:ʒ], *m.*, grating; — *aux affiches*, bulletin-board (covered by a grating).  
 grimper [grêpe], to climb.  
 grincement [grêsmɑ̃], *m.*, scraping, scratching.  
 gris [gri], gray.

grogner [grɑ̃ne], to growl.  
 gronder [grɔ̃de], to scold, grumble.  
 gros, -se [gro, gro:s], big, bulky, large.  
 guère [gœ:r]; *ne* —, not much, but little; hardly.  
 guerre [gœ:r], *f.*, war.  
 guerrier [gɛrje], *m.*, warrior, soldier.  
 guetter [gete], to watch for, lie in wait for.  
 guide [gid], *m.*, guide.  
 Guillaume [gijom], *m.*, William.  
 Guise [gɥi:z], Guise, famous noble family.  
 guitare [gitar], *f.*, guitar.

## H

(*h* aspirate is indicated thus: 'h)

habile [abil], clever, skilful.  
 habiller [abije], to dress; *s'*—, to dress oneself.  
 habit [abi], *m.*, coat; *pl.*, clothes.  
 habitude [abityd], *f.*, custom; *d'*—, customarily.  
 habituer [abitqe], to accustom.  
 'haine (ɛn), *f.*, hatred.  
 'haïr [ai:r], *irr.*, to hate.  
 'haleter [alte], to pant.  
 'halte [alt], *f.*, halt.  
 'hanneton [antɔ̃], *m.*, beetle, June-bug.  
 'harceler [arsœle], to harass.  
 'hâte [a:t], *f.*, haste.  
 'hâter [a:te], to hasten; *se* —, to hurry, make haste.  
 'Hauser [ozœ:r], Hauser.  
 'haut [o], high; loud; *m.*, top, height; *en* —, up-stairs; *adv.*, —, loud(ly).  
 'hauteur [otœ:r], *f.*, height.  
 hébreu [ebœ], Hebrew.  
 'héler [ele], to hail, call.

**Henri** [āri], *m.*, Henry.  
**Henriette** [āriet], *f.*, Henrietta.  
**hériter** [erite], to inherit.  
**héritier** [eritje], *m.*, heir.  
**'héros** [ero], *m.*, hero.  
**héroïne** [erain], *f.*, heroine.  
**héroïquement** [eraikmā], heroically.  
**hésitation** [ezitasjā], *f.*, hesitation.  
**hésiter** [ezite], to hesitate.  
**heure** [ær], *f.*, hour; **quelle** — **est-il**, what time is it; **de bonne** —, early; **à neuf** —s, at nine o'clock; **à la bonne** —! good! all right!; **à l'** —, on time.  
**heureusement** [ærøzmā], happily, fortunately.  
**heureux**, —se [ærø, -rø:z], happy, fortunate.  
**hier** [jær], yesterday.  
**histoire** [istwa:r], *f.*, history, story.  
**historique** [istørik], historical.  
**hiver** [ivær], *m.*, winter.  
**'Hollande** [olā:d], *f.*, Holland.  
**homme** [əm], *m.*, man.  
**honneur** [ønær], *m.*, honor.  
**honorer** [ønære], to honor.  
**'honte** [t], *f.*, shame.  
**'honteux**, —se [tø, -tø:z], shameful; ashamed.  
**horloge** [ørlø:z], *f.*, clock.  
**horreur** [ø:rær], *f.*, horror.  
**'hors** [ø:r], outside, beyond.  
**'houblon** [ublō], *m.*, hop-vine.  
**'houquette** [upet], *f.*, tuft.  
**'huit** [qit], eight; — **jours**, a week.  
**'huitaine** [qiten], group of eight, some eight.  
**humanité** [ymanite], *f.*, humanity.

**humilier** [ymilje], to humiliate.  
**humour** [ymœ:r], *f.*, humor.

## I

**ici** [isi], here.  
**idée** [ide], *f.*, idea.  
**idiot** [idjo, -jot], idiotic, imbecile.  
**ignorer** [iɲære], to be ignorant, not to know.  
**il** [il], he, it, there.  
**île** [il], *f.*, island.  
**il y a** [ilja], there is, there are; ago; for.  
**image** [ima:z], *f.*, image, picture.  
**imiter** [imite], to imitate.  
**immense** [imā:s], immense.  
**immobile** [imobil], motionless, still.  
**impatience** [ēpasjā:s], *f.*, impatience.  
**impératrice** [ēperatris], *f.*, empress.  
**impétueux**, —se [ēpetø, -ø:z], impetuous.  
**impoli** [ēpōli], impolite, rude.  
**importance** [ēpørtā:s], *f.*, importance.  
**importer** [ēpørte], to be important; **n'importe!** no matter!; **qu'importe?** what matters it?  
**impossible** [ēpəsibl], impossible.  
**impôt** [ēpo], *m.*, tax.  
**imprimer** [ēprime], to print.  
**incendie** [ēsādi], *m.*, fire, conflagration.  
**incertitude** [ēsertityd], *f.*, uncertainty.  
**inconnu** [ēkøny], unknown.  
**individu** [ēdividu], *m.*, individual.  
**individuellement** [ēdividqelmā], individually.  
**industrie** [ēdystri], *f.*, industry, manufacturing.  
**infini** [ēfini], infinite.

**infiniment** [ɛfinimɑ̃], infinitely.  
**infranchissable** [ɛfrɑ̃ʃisabl], impassable.  
**inquiet**, -ète [ɛkʲɛ, -kʲɛt], uneasy.  
**inquiéter** (s') [sɛkʲɛtɛ], to be anxious, worry.  
**inspecteur**, -trice [ɛspektœ:r, -tris], *m., f.*, inspector.  
**inspection** [ɛspeksjɔ̃], *f.*, inspection.  
**inspirer** [ɛspire], to inspire.  
**installer** [ɛstale], to establish.  
**Institut** [ɛstity], *m.*, Institute.  
**instruction** [ɛstryksjɔ̃], *f.*, instruction.  
**instruit** [ɛstrɥi], educated.  
**insurrection** [ɛsyreksjɔ̃], *f.*, insurrection.  
**intelligence** [ɛtelizɑ̃:s], *f.*, intelligence.  
**intelligent** [ɛtelizɑ̃], intelligent.  
**intention** [ɛtɑ̃sjɔ̃], *f.*, intention;  
**avoir l'—**, to intend.  
**intéressant** [ɛteresɑ̃], interesting.  
**intéresser** [ɛterese], to interest.  
**interjection** [ɛterʒeksjɔ̃], *f.*, interjection.  
**interroger** [ɛterɔʒɛ], to question.  
**inventeur**, -trice [ɛvɑ̃tœ:r], inventor.  
**inviter** [ɛvite], to invite.  
**invoquer** [ɛvɔkɛ], to invoke, call upon.  
**irai** [ire], *see aller*.  
**irriter** [irite], to vex.  
**Isabelle** [izabel], *f.*, Isabel.  
**Italie** [itali], *f.*, Italy.  
**ivoire** [ivwa:r], *m.*, ivory.

## J

**jabot** [ʒabo], *m.*, frill.  
**jadis** [ʒadi(s)], formerly.

**jaloux**, -se [ʒalu, -lu:z], jealous.  
**jamais** [ʒame], ever; **ne . . . —**, never; **— ! never!**  
**jambe** [ʒa:b], *f.*, leg.  
**janvier** [ʒɑ̃vje], *m.*, January.  
**Japon** [ʒapɔ̃], *m.*, Japan.  
**jappement** [ʒapmɑ̃], yelps, barks.  
**japper** [ʒape], to bark, yelp.  
**jardin** [ʒardɛ], *m.*, garden.  
**jatte** [ʒat], *f.*, jar, bowl.  
**jaune** [ʒo:n], yellow.  
**jaunir** [ʒoni:r], to grow yellow.  
**je** [ʒə], I.  
**Jean** [ʒɑ̃], John.  
**Jeanne** [ʒɑ̃:n], *f.*, Joan; **— d'Arc** [dark], Joan of Arc.  
**jeter** [ʒɛtɛ], to throw, utter; **se —**, to rush, spring; **— un cri**, to cry out, shout, scream.  
**jeu** [ʒø], *m.*, game.  
**jeudi** [ʒodi], *m.*, Thursday.  
**jeune** [ʒœn], young.  
**joie** [ʒwa], *f.*, joy; **avec —**, gladly.  
**joindre** [ʒwɛ:dr], *irr.*, *see craindre*, to join.  
**joli** [ʒoli], pretty.  
**joliment** [ʒolimɑ̃], finely, prettily, very.  
**jonquille** [ʒɔ̃ki:j], *f.*, jonquil; *adj.*, light yellow.  
**jouer** [ʒwe], to play; **— aux billes**, to play marbles; **— du violon**, to play the violin.  
**jouet** [ʒwe], *m.*, plaything, toy.  
**jouir** [ʒwi:r]; **— de**, to enjoy.  
**jour** [ʒu:r], *m.*, day, light; **tous les —s**, every day.  
**journal** [ʒurnɑ̃], *m.*, newspaper.  
**journée** [ʒurnɛ], *f.*, day.  
**joyau** [ʒwajo], *m.*, jewel.  
**joyeusement** [ʒwajøzmɑ̃], gladly, happily.  
**joyeux**, -se [ʒwajø, -jø:z], joyous, happy.

juger [ʒyʒe], to judge, try.  
 juillet [ʒɥijɛ], *m.*, July.  
 juin [ʒɥɛ̃], *m.*, June.  
 Jules [ʒyl], *m.*, Julius.  
 jumeau, -melle [ʒymo, -mɛl],  
 twin.  
 juré [ʒyre], *m.*, judge, jurymen.  
 jurer [ʒyre], to swear.  
 jusqu'à [ʒyska] or *jusques à*,  
 [ʒyskza], until, as far as.  
 juste [ʒyst], right, just; —*ment*,  
 exactly, precisely.  
 justice [ʒystis], *f.*, law, justice.

## K

kilo [kilo] = kilogramme [kilo-  
 gram], *m.*, kilogram = 2.2 lbs.

## L

la [la], the; it, her.  
 là [la], there; *ce sont* —, those  
 are.  
 là-bas [labɑ], yonder.  
 labeur [labœr], *m.*, toil, labor.  
 laborieux, -se [labørjø, -ø:z], la-  
 borious, difficult.  
 lac [lak], *m.*, lake.  
 lâcher [laʃe], to let go of, drop,  
 release.  
 La Fontaine [lafōten], *m.*, La  
 Fontaine.  
 laid [le], homely.  
 laisser [lese], to let, leave, al-  
 low; — *voir*, to show, display.  
 lait [le], *m.*, milk.  
 laiterie [letri], *f.*, dairy.  
 langage [lāga:ʒ], *m.*, speech, lan-  
 guage.  
 langue [la:g], *f.*, tongue, language.  
 large [larʒ], broad, wide.  
 largeur [larʒœr], *f.*, width,  
 breadth.

larmoyer [larmwaje], to whine,  
 snivel, shed tears.  
 las, -se [la, las], weary.  
 laver [lave], to wash.  
 le, la, l', les [lə, la, l, le],  
 the.  
 le, la, l', les [lə, la, l, le], *pron.*,  
 him, her, it; them; *qui le dit*,  
 who says so.  
 leçon [ləsɔ̃], *f.*, lesson.  
 légal [legal], legal.  
 léger [leʒe], light, slight; *légère-*  
*ment*, slightly.  
 législatif, -ve [lezislatif, -tiv],  
 legislative.  
 Leipzig [ləpsik], Leipzig, city of  
 Saxony.  
 lendemain [lədmɛ̃], *m.*, morrow,  
 next day.  
 lent [lɑ̃], slow.  
 lentement [lɑ̃tmɑ̃], slowly.  
 lequel, laquelle, lesquels, les-  
 quelles [ləkɛl, lakɛl, lɛkɛl],  
 who, whom, which.  
 lestement [ləstmɑ̃], nimbly,  
 briskly.  
 Lesueur [ləsqœr], *m.*, Lesueur.  
 lettre [lɛtr], *f.*, letter.  
 leur [lœr], their; *le* —, *pron.*,  
 theirs.  
 leur [lœr], *pers. pron.*, to them,  
 for them, them.  
 lever [ləve], to lift; *se* —, to rise;  
 — *la tête*, to look up.  
 lever [ləve], *m.*, rising; — *du*  
*soleil*, sunrise.  
 liberté [libertɛ], *f.*, liberty.  
 libre [libr], free.  
 lieu [ljø], *m.*, place; *au* — *de*, in-  
 stead of.  
 lieue [ljø], *f.*, league, four kilo-  
 meters, 2½ miles.  
 lieutenant [ljøtənɑ̃], *m.*, lieuten-  
 ant.



**ligue** [lig], *f.*, league; **la Ligue**, party of the Guises.  
**Limousin** [limuzɛ̃], *m.*, Limousin, province containing Limoges.  
**lion**, **-ne** [ljɔ̃, liɔ̃n], *m., f.*, lion.  
**lire** [liʁ], *irr.*, to read; **en lisant**, by or while reading.  
**lisière** [lizjɛʁ], *f.*, edge, border.  
**livre** [livʁ], *m.*, book; **à — ouvert**, like an open book.  
**livre** [livʁ], *f.*, pound, demi-kilo, 500 grams.  
**livrer** [livʁe], to deliver; — **ba-taille**, to give battle.  
**loi** [lwa], *f.*, law.  
**loin** [lwɛ̃], far.  
**long**, **-ue** [lɔ̃, lɔ̃g], long; **le — de**, along; **tout au —**, at full length.  
**longtemps** [lɔ̃tɑ̃], long, a long time.  
**longueur** [lɔ̃gœʁ], *f.*, length.  
**Lorraine** [lɔʁɛ̃], *f.*, Lorraine.  
**lors** [lɔʁ], then.  
**lorsque** [lɔʁsk], when.  
**louer** [lwe], to rent, hire, let.  
**louer** [lwe], to praise.  
**Louis** [lwi], *m.*, Louis.  
**Louise** [lwiːz], *f.*, Louise.  
**loup** [lu], *m.*, wolf.  
**lourd** [lur], heavy.  
**louve** [luːv], *f.*, she-wolf.  
**Louvois** [luvwa], *m.*, Louvois.  
**Louvre** [luːvr], Louvre, palace, also a store.  
**loyal** [lwajal], loyal.  
**lueur** [lœœʁ] *f.*, light, glow.  
**lui** [li], him, her, to him, to her, he, it.  
**luire** [liʁiʁ], *irr.*, see **nuire**, to shine, gleam, glitter.  
**lundi** [lœ̃di], *m.*, Monday.  
**lunette** [lynet], *f.*, telescope, spy-glass; *pl.*, spectacles.

**lut** [ly], see **lire**.  
**lycée** [lise], *m.*, public high school.  
**lyre** [liʁ], *f.*, lyre, music.

## M

**ma** [ma], *feminine of mon*, my.  
**madame**, *pl.* **mesdames** [madam, medam], *f.*, madam, Mrs.  
**magnifique** [majifik], magnificent.  
**mai** [me], *m.*, May.  
**main** [mɛ̃], *f.*, hand; **fait à la —**, made by hand.  
**maint** [mɛ̃], many a, many a one.  
**maintenant** [mɛ̃tənɑ̃], now.  
**maire** [mɛʁ], *m.*, mayor.  
**mairie** [mɛʁi], *f.*, mayor's office, town-hall.  
**mais** [me], but; why.  
**maison** [mezɔ̃], *f.*, house.  
**maisonnette** [mezɔ̃net], *f.*, cottage.  
**maître** [mɛːtr], *m.*, master, teacher (in lower schools).  
**maîtresse** [mɛːʁɛs], *f.*, mistress, teacher.  
**majeur** [majœʁ], major, greater.  
**majorité** [majɔʁite], *f.*, majority.  
**mal** [mal], *adv.*, ill, badly; **le —**, *m.*, evil.  
**malade** [malad], ill, sick.  
**malheur** [malœʁ], *m.*, misery, misfortune.  
**malheureusement** [malœʁøzmɑ̃], unfortunately.  
**malheureux**, **-se** [malœʁø, -ʁøːz], unhappy, wretched, miserable.  
**malhonnête** [malɔ̃net], dishonest.  
**malin**, **-igne** [malɛ̃, -lin], cunning, mischievous, shrewd.  
**malle** [mal], *f.*, trunk.  
**manche** [mɑ̃ːʃ], *m.*, handle.

- manche** [mā:ʃ], *f.*, sleeve; **la Manche**, English Channel.
- manger** [māʒe], to eat, wear away.
- manière** [manjɛ:r], *f.*, manner.
- mannequin** [mankɛ], *m.*, puppet, manikin, dummy.
- manquer** [māke], to lack, miss, be wanting; **qui lui manque**, which he lacks.
- Mansard** [māsɑ:r], *m.*, Mansard.
- marchandise** [marʃɑdi:z], *f.*, goods, merchandise.
- marchepied** [marʃɛpje], *m.*, foot-rope, step; **faux —**, foot-rope.
- marcher** [marʃe], to walk.
- mardi** [mardi], *m.*, Tuesday.
- mari** [mari], *m.*, husband.
- Marie** [mari], *f.*, Mary.
- marier** [marje], to marry.
- marquis, -e** [marki, -ki:z], *m., f.*, marquis, marchioness.
- marron** [marɔ̃], *m.*, chestnut.
- mars** [mars], *m.*, March.
- masse** [mas], *f.*, mass, body; **en —**, collectively, all together.
- matelot** [matlo], *m.*, sailor.
- matin** [matɛ], *m.*, morning.
- maudire** [modi:r], *irr.*, *see* **dire**, to curse.
- mauvais** [mɔve], bad, naughty.
- Maximilien** [maksimiljɛ], *m.*, Maximilian.
- Mayenne** [majɛn], Mayenne, brother of the duke of Guise.
- Mazarin** [mazarɛ], *m.*, (Cardinal) Mazarin.
- me** [mɔ], me, to me, for me.
- Meaux** [mo], *m.*, Meaux, city 20 miles east of Paris.
- méchamment** [mɛʃamɑ̃], wickedly, maliciously.
- méchant** [mɛʃɑ̃], wicked, cross, ugly.
- médecin** [metsɛ̃], *m.*, doctor.
- médecine** [metsin], *f.*, medicine.
- médiocre** [medjɔkr], mediocre.
- meilleur** [mɛjœ:r], *adj.*, better; **le —**, best.
- mélancolique** [melākolik], melancholy, depressing, sad.
- mêler** [mɛ:le], to mix; **se — de**, to meddle, interfere; **mêlez-vous de vos affaires**, mind your own business.
- melon** [mɔlɔ̃], *m.*, melon.
- membre** [mā:br], *m.*, member, limb.
- même** [mɛ:m], same, even, very, self; **tout de —**, just the same. § 89c.
- mémoire** [memwa:r], *f.*, memory.
- menace** [mɔnas], *f.*, threat.
- menacer** [mɔnase], to threaten.
- mener** [mɔne], to lead, take.
- menteur, -euse** [mātœ:r, -ø:z], lying, deceitful.
- mentir** [māti:r], *irr.*, *see* **dormir**, to lie, tell falsehoods.
- menuisier** [mənqizje], *m.*, carpenter, cabinet-maker.
- mépriser** [mɛprize], to despise.
- mer** [mɛ:r], *f.*, sea, ocean.
- merci** [mersi], *f.*, favor, grace, mercy, thanks; **grand —**, *m.*, many thanks.
- mercredi** [mɛrkredi], *m.*, Wednesday.
- mère** [mɛ:r], *f.*, mother.
- merle** [mɛrl], *m.*, blackbird.
- merveille** [mɛrve:j], *f.*, marvel, wonder.
- mésaventure** [mezavūty:r], *f.*, accident, mishap.
- messieurs** [mesjø], gentlemen, Messrs.
- mesurer** [məzyre], to measure, estimate.

**métal** [metal], *m.*, metal.  
**métier** [metje], *m.*, trade, business.  
**mètre** [metr], *m.*, meter, 39.37 inches.  
**mettre** [metr], *irr.*, to put, place, put on; **se — à**, to begin to; **mettez-vous là**, sit (stand) there!; **se — à table**, to go to the table, come to dinner; — **des souliers**, to put on some shoes.  
**meubler** [mœble], to furnish.  
**meunier** [mœnje], *m.*, miller.  
**Mexique** [meksik], *m.*, Mexico.  
**mi-côte** [miko:t], half way up the hill.  
**midi** [midi], *m.*, noon, twelve o'clock.  
**mien** [mjē], mine.  
**miette** [injet], *f.*, crumb.  
**mieux** [mjø], better; **pour le —**, for the best.  
**Mignard** [mipa:r], Mignard.  
**mignon** [minɔ̃], pretty, little, darling.  
**mil** [mil], a thousand (in dates between 1000 and 2000 A.D.).  
**militaire** [milita:r], military.  
**mille** [mil], *m.*, mile.  
**mille** [mil], a thousand.  
**milliard** [milja:r], *m.*, a billion.  
**millier** [milje], *m.*, a thousand.  
**million** [miljɔ̃], *m.*, a million.  
**ministre** [ministr], *m.*, minister.  
**minuit** [minɥi], *m.*, midnight, twelve o'clock.  
**minute** [minyt], *f.*, minute, instant.  
**misérable** [mizerabl], wretched; wretch.  
**mission** [misjɔ̃], *f.*, mission.  
**mit** [mi], *see mettre*.  
**mode** [mød], *f.*, fashion, style.

**modérer** [mødere], to moderate.  
**modeste** [mødɛst], modest.  
**moi** [mwa], me, I, to me, for me; — **même**, myself.  
**moindre** [mwē:dr], *adj.*, less; **le —**, least.  
**moine** [mwan], *m.*, monk.  
**moins** [mwē], *adv.*, less; **le —**, the less, the least; — **beau**, not so handsome; **au —**, at least; **à — que**, unless (*with ne and subj.*).  
**mois** [mwa], *m.*, month.  
**moitié** [mwatje], *f.*, half.  
**Molière** [mɔljɛ:r], *m.*, Molière.  
**moment** [mɔmɑ̃], *m.*, moment.  
**mon, ma, mes** [mɔ̃, ma, mɛ], my.  
**monarchie** [mɔnarʃi], *f.*, monarchy.  
**monde** [mɔ:d], *m.*, world, company, society; **tout le —**, everyone.  
**monsieur, pl. messieurs** [mɔsjø, mɛsjø], *m.*, gentleman, sir, Mr.  
**mont** [mɔ̃], *m.*, mount, mountain, peak.  
**montagnard** [mɔ̃taɲa:r], *m.*, mountaineer.  
**montagne** [mɔ̃taɲ], *f.*, mountain.  
**monter** [mɔ̃te], to go up, step up into, enter.  
**montre** [mɔ̃:tr], *f.*, watch.  
**montrer** [mɔ̃tre], to show.  
**montueux —se** [mɔ̃tɥø, -ø:z], steep.  
**monument** [monymɑ̃], *m.*, monument, public building.  
**moquer (se)** [sø mœke], to ridicule, laugh at.  
**morceau** [mɔrsø], *m.*, piece, fragment.  
**mordre** [mɔrdr], to bite.  
**mort** [mɔ:r], *f.*, death; *m.*, dummy.

**mort**, *see* **mourir**.

**mortel**, -le [mɔrtɛl], mortal, deadly.

**Moscou** [mɔsku], Moscow, ancient capital of Russia.

**Moskova** [mɔskɔva], *f.*, Moskowa, river by Moscow.

**mot** [mo], *m.*, word.

**mou**, **mol**, **molle** [mu, mɔl], soft.

**mouchoir** [muʃwa:r], *m.*, handkerchief.

**mouillé** [mujɛ], wet; anchored, moored.

**mouiller** [mujɛ], to wet, anchor.

**moulin** [mulɛ̃], *m.*, mill.

**mourir** [muri:r], *irr.*, to die.

**moustache** [mustaʃ], *f.*, moustache, whiskers (of animals).

**mouton** [mutɔ̃], *m.*, sheep.

**mouvement** [muvmɑ̃], *m.*, movement, impulse.

**mouvoir** [muvwɑ:r], *irr.*, to move.

**muet**, -te [mɥɛ, -ɛt], mute, dumb, silent.

**multitude** [myltityd], *f.*, multitude, crowd.

**mur** [my:r], *m.*, wall.

**mûr** [my:r], ripe.

**muraille** [myra:j], *f.*, wall.

**mûrier** [myrjɛ], *m.*, mulberry tree.

**murmure** [myrmy:r], *m.*, murmur.

**musée** [myzɛ], *m.*, museum.

## N

**nage** [na:ʒ], *f.*, swimming, rowing.

**nager** [naʒɛ], to swim, float, row.

**naguère** [nage:r], just before.

**naître** [nɛ:tr], *irr.*, to be born, spring up.

**Naple** [napl], Naples.

**Napoléon** [napoleɔ̃], *m.*, Napoleon.

**nation** [nasjɔ̃], *f.*, nation.

**national** [nasjonal], national.

**nature** [naty:r], *f.*, nature.

**Navarre** [nava:r], *f.*, Navarre.

**ne** [nə], not; — . . . **pas**, not; — . . . **ni** . . . **ni**, neither . . . nor; — . . . **rien**, nothing; — . . . **que**, only.

**né** [nɛ], *see* **naître**.

**nécessaire** [nesesɛ:r], necessary.

**nègre**, **négresse** [nɛ:gr, negrɛs], *m., f.*, negro, negress.

**neige** [nɛ:ʒ], *f.*, snow.

**net**, -te [nɛt], neat, clean, clear, distinct.

**nettement** [nɛtmɑ̃], plainly, distinctly.

**nettoyer** [netwajɛ], to clean.

**neuf** [nœ(f), nœv], nine; à — **heures**, at nine o'clock.

**neuf**, -ve [nœf, nœ:v], new, just made; tout —, brand new.

**neuvième** [nœvjɛm], ninth.

**neveu** [nævø], *m.*, nephew.

**nez** [nɛ], *m.*, nose.

**ni** [ni], neither, nor; **ne** . . . —, neither . . . nor.

**nier** [njɛ], to deny.

**noble** [nɔbl], noble.

**noblesse** [nɔblɛs], *f.*, nobility.

**noir** [nwa:r], black.

**Noiraud** [nwaro], *m.*, Blacky.

**noix** [nwa], *f.*, nut, walnut.

**nom** [nɔ̃], *m.*, noun, name.

**nombreux**, -se [nɔ̃brø, -ø:z], numerous.

**nommer** [nɔmɛ], to name, appoint.

**non** [nɔ̃], no, not.

**Normandie** [nɔrmɑ̃di], *f.*, Normandy.

notre, *pl.* nos [nɔtr, nɔ], our.  
 nôtre [no:tr], ours.  
 nourrir [nurir], to feed.  
 nous [nu], we, us, ourselves.  
 nouveau, nouvel, nouvelle [nuvo, nuvel], new; de —, again, anew.  
 nouvelle [nuvel], *f.*, a piece of news; de vos —s, news of you.  
 novembre [nɔvɑ:br], *m.*, November.  
 noyer [nwaje], *m.*, walnut-tree.  
 nu [ny], bare, naked.  
 nuée [nqe], *f.*, cloud, swarm.  
 nuit [nqi], *f.*, night; de —, by night.  
 nul, -le [nyl], no, no one.  
 nullement [nylmɑ̃], not at all.

## O

oasis [oazis], *f.*, oasis.  
 obéir [əbei:r] (à), to obey.  
 objet [əbʒɛ], *m.*, object, thing.  
 obliger [əbliʒɛ], to oblige.  
 obscurcir [əpskysri:r], to obscure, darken.  
 observer [əpsɛrvɛ], to observe.  
 occuper [əkype], to busy, occupy.  
 octobre [əktɔbr], *m.*, October.  
 odeur [ədœr], *f.*, odor.  
 odieux, -se [odjɔ, -ɔ:z], odious.  
 œil, *pl.* yeux [œ:j, jɔ], *m.*, eye.  
 œillet [œje], *m.*, carnation, pink.  
 offrir [əfri:r], *irr.*, see **couvrir**, to offer  
 oiseau [wazo], *m.*, bird.  
 Olivier de Serres [ɔlivʒɛ də sɛ:r],  
 Oliver de Serres, adviser of Henry IV.  
 ombre [ɔ:br], *f.*, shade.  
 ombreux [ɔbrø], shady.  
 on [ɔ], one, someone, they, folks, people, we, you, men. § 85.

oncle [ɔ:kl], *m.*, uncle.  
 ont [ɔ], see **avoir**.  
 onze [ɔ:z], eleven.  
 opinion [ɔpinjɔ], *f.*, opinion.  
 or [ɔ:r], *m.*, gold.  
 or [ɔ:r], now.  
 oraison [ɔrezɔ], *f.*, oration.  
 orange [ɔrɑ:ʒ], *f.*, orange.  
 ordinaire [ɔrdinɛ:r], ordinary; d'—, usually.  
 ordonner [ɔrdɔnɛ], to order, command.  
 ordre [ɔdr], *m.*, order.  
 oreille [ɔre:j], *f.*, ear.  
 organiser [ɔrganizɛ], to organize.  
 orgueil [ɔrgœ:j], *m.*, pride.  
 Orion [ɔrjɔ], *m.*, Orion, name of a constellation and of a ship.  
 oser [oze], to dare (*in negative*, ne . . . *often without pas*).  
 ou [u], or; — . . . —, either . . . or.  
 où [u], where, in which, at which, when; d'—, whence.  
 oublier [ublje], to forget.  
 oui [wi], yes.  
 ouïr [wi:r], to hear, *used in infinitive and past participle only*.  
 outil [uti], *m.*, tool, instrument.  
 ouvert [uvɛ:r], (**ouvrir**), open; grand —, wide open.  
 ouvrier [uvrie], *m.*, workman, laborer.  
 ouvrir [uvri:r], *irr.*, see **couvrir**, to open.

## P

page [pa:ʒ], *f.*, page.  
 Paget [paʒɛ], *m.*, Paget.  
 pain [pɛ̃], *m.*, bread.  
 paille [pai:j], *f.*, straw.  
 paire [pe:r], *f.*, pair.  
 paix [pe], *f.*, peace.  
 palais [pale], *m.*, palace.  
 pâle [pɑ:l], pale.

**pâler** [pali:r], to grow pale.  
**pantalon** [pātalō], *m.*, trousers.  
**papier** [papje], *m.*, paper.  
**par** [par], by, through, on, per.  
**paraître** [pare:tr], *irr.*, *see* **con-**  
**naître**, to appear, seem.  
**parapluie** [paraplui], *m.*, um-  
 brella.  
**parce que** [parsəkə], because.  
**parcourir** [parkuri:r], to run  
 along, run over.  
**pardon** [pardō], *m.*, pardon.  
**pardonne** [pardone] (à), to for-  
 give, pardon.  
**pareil**, -le [pare:j], similar, like,  
 equal, the same.  
**parent** [parū], *m.*, relative, parent.  
**paresseux**, -se [paresø, -ø:z],  
 lazy, idle.  
**parfait** [parfē], perfect; —**ement**,  
 perfectly, completely.  
**parfum** [parfē], *m.*, perfume.  
**parfumer** [parfyme], to perfume.  
**Paris** [pari], *m.*, Paris.  
**parlement** [parləmā], *m.*, parlia-  
 ment.  
**parler** [parle], to speak.  
**parole** [parō], *f.*, speech.  
**part** [pa:r], *f.*, part, share.  
**parti** [parti], *m.*, part, side, party,  
 match; **prendre un** —, to  
 make a decision.  
**participe** [partisip], *m.*, partici-  
 ple.  
**partie** [parti], *f.*, part, portion.  
**partir** [parti:r], *irr.*, *see* **dormir**,  
 to set out, leave.  
**partout** [partu], everywhere.  
**parvenir** [parvəni:r], *irr.*, *see*  
**venir**, to arrive, succeed; **par-**  
**venu à**, having reached.  
**pas** [pa], *m.*, step, pace.  
**pas** [pa], no, not; **ne . . .** —, not.  
**Pascal** [paskal], *m.*, Pascal.

**passage** [pasa:ʒ], *m.*, passage,  
 way; **au** —, as he passed.  
**passé** [pase], *m.*, past.  
**passer** [pase], to pass; **se** —, to  
 do without; — **et re** —, to go  
 back and forth.  
**patience** [pasjais], *f.*, patience.  
**patiner** [patine], to skate.  
**patrie** [patri], *f.*, native land,  
 fatherland.  
**patriote** [patriot], patriotic.  
**patron** [patrō], *m.*, employer,  
 master.  
**Paul** [pəl], *m.*, Paul.  
**pauvre** [po:vʀ], poor.  
**payer** [peje], to pay, pay for; —  
**quelque chose deux sous à**  
**quelqu'un**, to pay someone two  
 cents for something.  
**pays** [pe], *m.*, country, place;  
**Pays-Bas**, Low Countries,  
 Holland and Belgium.  
**paysan**, -ne [peizā, peizan], *m.*,  
*f.*, peasant.  
**peau** [po], *f.*, skin.  
**pêche** [pe:ʃ], *f.*, fishing; **la** — **aux**  
**truites**, trout-fishing.  
**pêcher** [peʃe], to fish, catch.  
**pécheresse** [peʃres], *f.*, sinner.  
**pêcheur** [peʃœ:r], *m.*, sinner.  
**peine** [pen], *f.*, pain, trouble; **à**  
 —, scarcely.  
**peintre** [pē:tr], *m.*, painter.  
**peler** [pəle], to peel.  
**penchant** [pāʃā], *m.*, tendency.  
**pencher** [pāʃe], to lean.  
**pendant** [pādā], during; — **que**,  
 while.  
**pendre** [pū:dr], to hang, hang  
 down.  
**penser** [pāse], to think, imagine;  
 — **à**, to think of.  
**perce-neige** [persne:ʒ], *f.*, snow-  
 drop.

perdre [pɛdr], to lose.  
 perdrix [pɛdri], *f.*, partridge.  
 père [pɛr], *m.*, father.  
 périr [pɛri:r], to perish.  
 permettre [pɛmɛtr], *irr.*, see  
 mettre, to permit.  
 permission [pɛrmiʒjɔ̃], *f.*, per-  
 mission.  
 Perrault [pɛro], *m.*, Perrault.  
 persécuteur, -trice [pɛrsekɥɛ:r,  
 -tris], persecutor.  
 personne [pɛrsɔ̃], *f.*, person;  
*pron.*, *ne* . . . —, *m.*, no one,  
 nobody.  
 persuader [pɛrswadɛ], to per-  
 suade, convince.  
 peser [pɛzɛ], to weigh.  
 petit [pɛti], small; — *-fils*, grand-  
 son.  
 peu [pø], little.  
 peuple [pœpl], *m.*, people, nation.  
 peur [pœ:r], *f.*, fear; avoir —, to  
 be afraid; de —, for fear.  
 peut-être [pœtɛ:tr], perhaps,  
 may-be.  
 phrase [fraz], *f.*, sentence.  
 Philippe le Beau [filip lə bo],  
 Philip the Fair.  
 philosophe [filɔsɔf], *m.*, philoso-  
 pher.  
 Pie [pi], Pius, name of pope.  
 pièce [pjɛs], *f.*, piece (of money,  
 cloth, etc.).  
 pied [pjɛ], *m.*, foot.  
 pierre [pjɛr], *f.*, stone.  
 Pierre [pjɛr], *m.*, Peter.  
 pire [pi:r], *adj.*, worse; le —,  
 worst.  
 pis [pi], *adv.*, worse; le —, worst.  
 pitié [pitjɛ], *f.*, pity.  
 pivoine [pivwan], *f.*, peony.  
 place [plas], *f.*, place, square.  
 placer [plazɛ], to place.  
 plage [plaz], *f.*, beach, shore.

plaindre [plɛ:dr], to pity; se —,  
 to complain.  
 plaine [plen], *f.*, plain.  
 plainte [plɛ:t], *f.*, complaint.  
 plaire [plɛ:r], *irr.*, to please; — à  
 Jean, to please John; cela me  
 plaît, I like that.  
 plaisir [plɛzi:r], *m.*, pleasure;  
 avec —, gladly; faire un —, to  
 do a favor.  
 planter [plāte], to plant.  
 plein [plɛ̃], full.  
 pleurer [plœre], to weep.  
 pleuvoir [plœvwa:r], *irr.*, to rain.  
 plisser [plisɛ], to fold, pleat.  
 plomb [plɔ̃], *m.*, lead.  
 plonger [plɔ̃ʒɛ], to plunge, dive.  
 pluie [plɥi], *f.*, rain.  
 plume [plym], *f.*, pen, feather.  
 plupart [plypɔ:r], *f.*, most; la —  
 des hommes, most men.  
 plus [ply], more; *with negation*,  
 no more, no longer; — de  
 temps, no more time; le —,  
 the more, the most.  
 plusieurs [plɥɛ:jɛ:r], several.  
 poche [pɔʃ], *f.*, pocket; la —  
 pleine, with a full pocket.  
 poète [pœtɛ], *m.*, poet.  
 poids [pwɔ], *m.*, weight; vendre  
 au —, to sell by weight.  
 poil [pwal], *m.*, hair.  
 poinçonner [pwɛsɔnɛ], to punch.  
 point [pwɛ̃], *m.*, dot, point; ne  
 . . . —, not, not at all.  
 pointe [pwɛ̃:t], *f.*, point, tip, end.  
 poire [pwɔ:r], *f.*, pear.  
 poison [pwazɔ̃], *m.*, poison.  
 Poitiers [pwatjɛ], *m.*, Poitiers.  
 poix [pwɔ], *f.*, pitch, wax.  
 poli [pɔli], polite, polished.  
 polir [pɔli:r], to polish, smooth.  
 pomme [pɔm], *f.*, apple; — (de  
 terre), potato.

- pommier [pəmje], *m.*, apple-tree.  
 ponceau [pōso], *m.*, bright red.  
 porcelaine [pørsəlen], *f.*, porcelain, china.  
 porte [pɔrt], *f.*, door, gate; — *de* sortie, exit.  
 porter [pɔrtɛ], to carry, bear, wear.  
 Portugal [pɔrtɪgal], *m.*, Portugal.  
 posséder [pɔsede], to possess.  
 poste [pɔst], *f.*, post-office.  
 pot [pɔ], *m.*, pot, kettle.  
 poudreux [pudrø], dusty.  
 poule [pul], *f.*, hen.  
 poulet, —te [pule, -ɛt], *m., f.*, chicken.  
 poumon [pumɔ̃], *m.*, lung.  
 poupée [pupe], *f.*, doll.  
 pour [pu(:)r], for, in order to; — *que*, in order that, so that.  
 pourpre [purpr], *m.*, purple.  
 pourquoi [purkwa], why?  
 pourtant [purtā], still, nevertheless, yet.  
 pouvoir [purvwa:r], *irr.*, to provide.  
 pourvu que [purvy kə], provided that, only let!  
 pousser [puse], to push, urge, utter.  
 poussière [pusje:r], *f.*, dust.  
 Poussin [pusɛ̃], *m.*, Poussin.  
 pouvoir [puvwa:r], *m.*, power.  
 pouvoir [puvwa:r], *irr.*, to be able, can, may.  
 pré [pre], *m.*, meadow.  
 précaution [prekosjɔ̃], *f.*, precaution, care.  
 précis [presi], exact, precise.  
 précisément [presizemā], precisely.  
 préférence [preferā:s], *f.*, preference.  
 préférer [prefere], to prefer.  
 prélude [prelyd], *m.*, prelude.  
 premier, —ère [prəmje, -ɛ:r], first.  
 prendre [prā:dr], to take, seize, catch; — *à témoin*, to appeal.  
 préparatif [preparatif], *m.*, preparation.  
 préposition [prepozisjɔ̃], *f.*, preposition.  
 près [pre], near; — *de*, near to; *à peu* —, nearly, about.  
 présent [prezā], present.  
 présentement [prezātmā], at present.  
 présenter [prezāte], present, offer, hand; *se* —, to appear.  
 presque [presk], almost.  
 presse [pres], *f.*, press.  
 presser [prese], to hurry.  
 prêt [pre], ready.  
 prétendre [pretā:dr], to aspire, claim.  
 prêter [prete], to lend.  
 prêtre [pre:tr], *m.*, priest.  
 prévenir [prevni:r], *irr.*, *see* tenir, to warn, give notice in advance.  
 prier [prie], to pray, beg.  
 prière [priɛ:r], *f.*, prayer.  
 prince [prē:s], *m.*, prince.  
 princesse [prēses], *f.*, princess.  
 principal [prēsipal], principal, chief.  
 printemps [prētā], *m.*, spring.  
 pris [pri], *see* prendre.  
 prise [pri:z], *f.*, capture.  
 prison [pri:zɔ̃], *f.*, prison.  
 prisonnier, —ère [prizonje, -ɛ:r], *m., f.*, prisoner.  
 privé [rive], private.  
 privilège [privile:ʒ], *m.*, privilege.  
 prix [pri], *m.*, price, prize; *à tout* —, at any cost.  
 professeur [profesœ:r], *m.*, teacher, professor.



**profession** [prɔfɛsjɔ̃], *f.*, profession.

**profond** [prɔfɔ̃], deep.

**profondeur** [prɔfɔ̃dœʁ], *f.*, depth.

**progrès** [prɔgrɛ], *m.*, progress.

**promenade** [prɔmnad], *f.*, walk, trip.

**promener** [prɔmɛnɛ], to take about; **se** —, to walk, go about (for pleasure); — **en voiture**, — **en bateau**, etc.

**promettre** [prɔmɛtr], *irr.*, see **mettre**, to promise.

**pronom** [prɔnɔ̃], *m.*, pronoun.

**prononcer** [prɔnɔ̃sɛ], to pronounce.

**propreté** [prɔprɛtɛ], *f.*, neatness, cleanliness.

**propriété** [prɔpriɛtɛ], *f.*, property, estate.

**prose** [prɔz], *f.*, prose.

**protecteur** [prɔtɛktœʁ], *m.*, protector.

**protéger** [prɔtɛʒɛ], to protect.

**Provence** [prɔvɑ̃s], *f.*, Provence, province of southern France.

**province** [prɔvɛ̃s], *f.*, province.

**prudence** [prɔdɑ̃s], *f.*, prudence.

**prudent** [prɔdɑ̃], prudent.

**Prusse** [prys], *f.*, Prussia.

**Prussien** [prysjɛ̃], *m.*, Prussian.

**public**, **-que** [pyblik], public.

**puis** [pui], then, next, afterward.

**puisque** [pɥiskɔ̃], since.

**puissance** [pɥisɑ̃s], *f.*, power.

**puissant** [pɥisɑ̃], powerful.

**punir** [pyniʁ], to punish.

**punition** [pynisjɔ̃], *f.*, punishment.

**pupitre** [pypitʁ], *m.*, slant-top desk, pupil's desk.

## Q

**quand** [kɑ̃], when.

**quant à** [kɑ̃ta], as for.

**quarante** [karɑ̃t], forty.

**quart** [kaʁ], *m.*, quarter.

**quatorze** [katɔʁz], fourteen.

**quatre** [katʁ], four.

**quatre-vingts** [katʁɛvɛ̃], eighty.

**que** [kə], *pron.*, whom, which, that, what. §§ 73, 80, 81.

**que** [kə], *conj.*, that, than, as; *with subj.*, let; (*replaces other conjunctions in a following co-ordinate clause*). §§ 133, 228.

**que** [kə], *adv.*, how, what, how much, why; **ne** . . . —, only, but. §§ 201, 229.

**quel**, **-le** [kɛl], what, which; who; what a.

**quelconque** [kɛlkɔ̃k], whatever, whatsoever.

**quelque** [kɛlk], some; *pl.*, a few; — . . . **que**, whatever, however (*with subjunctive*).

**quelque chose** [kɛlkəʃɔz], *m.*, something.

**quelquefois** [kɛlkɔfwɑ], sometimes.

**quelqu'un**, **quelques-uns** [kɛlkœ̃, kɛlkœzœ̃], someone, some, a few.

**question** [kɛstjɔ̃], *f.*, question.

**qui** [ki], who, which, that whom; **à** —, whose; **ce** —, what; — **que**, whoever.

**Quint (Charles)** [ʃarl kɛ̃], Charles V (of Spain).

**quinze** [kɛ̃z], fifteen; — **jours**, a fortnight.

**quitter** [kite], to leave.

**quoi** [kwɑ], what, which; **de** —, whereof, wherewith; **il n'y a**

**pas de —**, you are welcome, don't mention it; — **que**, whatever.  
**quoique** [kwakə], although.

## R

**Racine** [rasin], *m.*, Racine.  
**rafraîchir** [rafreʃi:r], to refresh.  
**rage** [ra:ʒ], *f.*, madness, fury.  
**raisonner** [rezəne], to reason, argue, object.  
**ramener** [ramne], to bring back.  
**rançon** [rāsō], *f.*, ransom.  
**rang** [rā], *m.*, rank.  
**ranger** [rāʒe], to draw up, place, seat, arrange.  
**rapidement** [rapidmā], rapidly.  
**rappeler** [raple], to call back; se —, to remember.  
**rebondissement** [rəbōdismā], *m.*, leap.  
**récemment** [resamā], recently.  
**récent** [resā], recent.  
**recevoir** [rəsəvwɑ:r], *irr.*, to receive.  
**récit** [resi], *m.*, story.  
**réciter** [resite], to recite.  
**recommencer** [rəkəməse], to begin again, repeat.  
**récompense** [rekōpūs], *f.*, reward.  
**reconnaître** [rəkəneitr], *irr.*, see **connaître**, to recognize.  
**redescendre** [rədesū:dr], to go down again.  
**redevance** [rədəvūs], *f.*, dues, taxes.  
**redingote** [rədēgət], *f.*, frock-coat.  
**redoutable** [rədutabl], dreadful, formidable.  
**réduire** [redɥir], *irr.*, see **conduire**, to reduce.  
**réfléchi** [refleʃi], thoughtful.  
**réfléchir** [refleʃi:r], to reflect.

**réflexion** [refleksjō], *f.*, reflection.  
**réforme** [reform], *f.*, reform.  
**refuser** [rəfyze], to refuse.  
**regard** [rəga:r], *m.*, look, eye.  
**regarder** [rəga:rde], to watch, look, look at; **cela ne vous regarde pas**, that does not concern you.  
**régiment** [reʒimā], *m.*, regiment.  
**règle** [re:gl], *f.*, ruler, rule; example.  
**règlement** [reɡləmā], *m.*, regulation.  
**règne** [reɲ], *m.*, reign.  
**regretter** [rəɡrete], to regret, feel sorry.  
**reine** [ren], *f.*, queen.  
**rejaillissement** [reʒajismā], *m.*, spurt.  
**reluire** [rəlyi:r], *irr.*, see **nuire**, to glitter.  
**remarquable** [rəmarkabl], remarkable.  
**remarquer** [rəmarke], to notice.  
**remède** [rəmed], *f.*, remedy.  
**remercier** [rəmersje], to thank.  
**remettre** [rəmetr], *irr.*, see **mettre**, to give up, put back, hand, recover, postpone.  
**remonter** [rəmənte], to raise, roll up, wind up; to go up (again).  
**remplacer** [rāplase], to replace, take the place of.  
**remporter** [rāpørte], to carry off, win.  
**remuer** [rəmue], to move, stir.  
**rendre** [rā:dr], to make, render; give back; restore; se —, to go.  
**rentrer** [rūtre], to re-enter, return.  
**renvoyer** [rāvwaʒe], *irr.*, see **envoyer**, to send back, send away.  
**réparer** [repare], to repair, make amends for.

**repasser** [rəpase], to pass again;  
to iron.

**répéter** [repete], to repeat.

**répondre** [repō:dr], to reply, re-  
spond, answer.

**réponse** [repō:s], *f.*, reply.

**reposer (se)** [sə rəpoze], to rest.

**repousser** [rəpuse], to repulse.

**reprandre** [rəprū:dr], *irr.*, *see*  
**prendre**, to take back, resume.

**représenter** [rəprezāte], to rep-  
resent.

**réprimander** [reprimāde], to re-  
prove, reprimand.

**reproche** [rəproʃ], *f.*, reproach.

**reprocher** [rəproʃe], to reproach.

**république** [repyblik], *f.*, republic.

**réquisition** [rekizisjō], *f.*, requisition.

**résistance** [rezistā:s], *f.*, resis-  
tance.

**résister** [reziste], to resist.

**résolument** [resolymā], resolutely.

**résoudre** [rezudr], *irr.*, to re-  
solve.

**respectable** [respēktabl], respec-  
table.

**respecter** [respēkte], to respect.

**respirer** [respire], to breathe.

**ressemblance** [rəsūblā:s], *f.*, re-  
semblance.

**reste** [rēst], *m.*, rest; **du** —,  
moreover.

**rester** [rēste], to remain, stay.

**rétabli** [retabli], well again.

**retard** [rētai:r], *m.*, delay; **en** —,  
late.

**retenir** [rətni:r], *irr.*, *see* **tenir**,  
to retain, delay, keep.

**retourner** [rəturne], to turn  
around.

**retraite** [rətrēt], *f.*, retreat.

**retrouver** [rətruve], to find  
(again).

**réunion** [reynjō], *f.*, union, meet-  
ing, assembly.

**réunir** [reyni:r], to assemble, col-  
lect.

**réussir** [reysi:r], to succeed.

**revenir** [rəvni:r], *irr.*, *see* **tenir**,  
to come back, recover.

**révolter (se)** [sə revōlte], to rebel.

**révolution** [revōlysjō], *f.*, revolu-  
tion.

**Rheims** [rē:s], *m.*, Rheims; city  
where the kings of France were  
crowned.

**Rhin** [rē], *m.*, Rhine.

**riche** [riʃ], rich.

**Richelieu** [riʃljø], *m.*, (Cardinal)  
Richelieu.

**rien** [rjē], anything; **ne** . . . —,  
nothing; —! nothing!

**Rippert** [ripe:r], Rippert; **le pré**  
—, Rippert's meadow.

**rire** [ri:r], *m.*, laughter.

**rire** [ri:r], *irr.*, to laugh.

**risque** [risk], *m.*, risk, danger.

**risquer** [riske], to risk, venture.

**robe** [rōb], *f.*, dress, gown, robe.

**Robespierre** [rōbəspe:r], *m.*,  
Robespierre.

**roche** [rōʃ], *f.*, stone, mass of  
stone.

**rocher** [rōʃe], *m.*, rock, cliff,  
boulder.

**roi** [rwa], *m.*, king.

**Romain** [rōmē], *m.*, Roman.

**roman** [rōmā], *m.*, romance,  
novel.

**Rome** [rōm], *f.*, Rome.

**rompre** [rō:pr], to break, tear.

**rond** [rō], round.

**ronde** [rō:d], *f.*, round, round  
hand.

**rose** [rō:z], *f.*, rose.

**roucouler** [rukule], to coo.

**Rouen** [rwū], Rouen.

**rouge** [ru:ʒ], red; **vêtu de** —, dressed in red.

**rougir** [ruʒi:r], to grow red, blush, make red.

**Roussillon** [rusijõ], *m.*, Roussillon, province of Southern France.

**route** [rut], *f.*, road, way; **en** —! start!

**royal** [rwayal], royal.

**royaume** [rwajo:m], *m.*, kingdom.

**rue** [ry], *f.*, street.

**ruiner** [ruine], to ruin.

**rusé** [ryze], cunning, tricky.

**russe** [rys], Russian.

**Russie** [rysi], *f.*, Russia.

**rustique** [rystik], rustic.

## S

**sacrer** [sakre], to anoint, consecrate.

**sage** [sa:ʒ], wise, good.

**saint** [sē], holy.

**Sainte-Hélène** [sē:telen], St.

Helena, island west of Africa.

**saisir** [sezir], to seize, catch.

**salle** [sal], *f.*, hall, large room; —

**à manger**, dining-room; —

**d'attente**, waiting-room.

**samedi** [samdi], *m.*, Saturday.

**sang** [sā], *m.*, blood; — **froid**, *m.*, coolness.

**sanglant** [sāglā], bloody.

**sans** [sā], without; — **que**, *conj.*, without.

**santé** [sāte], *f.*, health.

**Sarre** [sar], *f.*, Sarre (river).

**satire** [sati:r], *f.*, satire.

**satisfait** [satisfē], satisfied, contented.

**sauter** [sote], to jump, leap.

**sauver** [sove], to save; **se** —, to run away, escape.

**savant** [savā], *m.*, scholar, learned man, scientist.

**savoir** [savwa:r], *m.*, knowledge, wisdom.

**savoir** [savwa:r], *irr.*, to know, be able; **je ne saurais vous le dire**, I can't tell you; **il le sut trop tard**, he learned it too late; — **gré**, to be grateful.

**Saxe** [saks], *f.*, Saxony.

**scandaleux**, — **se** [skādalø, -ø:z], scandalous.

**scélérat** [selera], *m.*, villain.

**scierie** [siri], *f.*, saw-mill.

**sculpteur** [skyltø:r], *m.*, sculptor.

**se** [sə], himself, herself, itself, themselves, oneself.

**sec**, **sèche** [sek, sɛʃ], dry.

**sèchement** [sɛʃmā], dryly.

**second** [səgō], second.

**seconde** [səgō:d], *f.*, second.

**secours** [səku:r], *m.*, help, aid.

**secret**, — **ête** [səkre, -kret], secret.

**seigneur** [sepœ:r], *m.*, lord.

**seize** [sɛ:z], sixteen.

**selon** [səlō], according to.

**semaine** [səmen], *f.*, week.

**sembler** [sūble], to seem, appear; **ce me semble**, it seems to me, I think.

**semer** [səme], to sow, plant.

**sentier** [sātje], *m.*, path.

**sentiment** [sātimā], *m.*, sentiment, feeling.

**sentir** [sāti:r], *irr.*, *see* **dormir**, to feel, smell; — **bon**, to smell sweet.

**séparer** [separe], to separate; **se** —, to adjourn.

**sept** [set], seven.

**septembre** [septā:br], *m.*, September.

**serai** [søre], *see* **être**.

**sergent de ville** [serʒɑ̃ də vil], *m.*, policeman.

**sérieux** [serjø], serious, severe.

**sermon** [sermɔ̃], *m.*, sermon.

**serrer** [sere], to press, clasp;  
**serré**, steady, regular.

**servante** [servɑ̃:t], *f.*, servant.

**service** [servis], *m.*, service.

**servir** [servi:r], to serve; **se** — **de**, to use.

**serviteur** [servitœ:r], *m.*, servant.

**seuil** [sœ:j], *m.*, sill, threshold.

**seul** [sœl], single, sole, only, alone.

**seulement** [sœlmɑ̃], only.

**sévère** [seve:r], stern.

**si** [si], if, whether.

**si** [si], so; yes; — **fait**, yes indeed;  
— **bien que**, so that.

**siècle** [sjekl], *m.*, century.

**sien** [sjɛ̃], his, hers.

**sieste** [sjest], *f.*, nap, siesta.

**siffler** [sifle], to whistle.

**signe** [sjɛ̃], *m.*, sign.

**signer** [sjɛ̃], to sign.

**silence** [silɑ̃:s], *m.*, silence.

**silencieux** [silɑ̃sjœ̃], silent.

**Simon** [simɔ̃], *m.*, Simon.

**sincérité** [sɛserite], *f.*, sincerity.

**singe** [sɛ̃:ʒ], *m.*, monkey.

**six** [sis], six.

**société** [sɔsjete], *f.*, company, society.

**sœur** [sœ:r], *f.*, sister.

**soi** [swa], oneself, himself.

**soie** [swa], *f.*, silk.

**soif** [swaf], *f.*, thirst; **avoir** —, to be thirsty.

**soir** [swa:r], *m.*, evening.

**sois** [swa], *see être*.

**soit** [swa]; — . . . —, either . . .  
or; **ainsi** — **il!** so be it!; *see être*.

**soixante** [swasɑ̃:t], sixty.

**soldat** [sɔlda], *m.*, soldier.

**soleil** [sɔlɛ:j], *m.*, sun.

**solennel** [sɔlanɛl], solemn.

**solide** [solid], strong.

**Soliman** [sɔlimɑ̃], *m.*, Soliman.

**sollicitude** [sɔlisityd], *f.*, tender interest, solicitude.

**somme** [sɔm], *f.*, sum; **en** —, in short.

**sommer** [sɔme], to summon, call upon.

**sommes** [sɔm], *see être*.

**son, sa, ses** [sɔ̃, sa, sɛ], his, her, its.

**songer** [sɔʒe], to think, dream, meditate.

**sont** [sɔ̃], *see être*.

**sorte** [sɔrt], *f.*, sort, kind; **de** — **que**, so that.

**sortie** [sɔrti], *f.*, exit.

**sortir** [sɔrti:r], *irr.*, *see dormir*, to go out.

**sot, -te** [so, sɔt], silly, foolish.

**sou** [su], *m.*, cent, penny.

**souffrance** [sufɾɑ̃:s], *f.*, suffering.

**souffrir** [sufɾi:r], *irr.*, *see courir*, to suffer.

**souhaiter** [swete], to wish.

**soulever (se)**, [sɔ sulve] to arise.

**soulier** [sulje], *m.*, shoe.

**soumettre** [sumetɾ], *irr.*, *see mettre*, to submit.

**soupçonneux, -se** [supɔsɔnø, -ø:z], suspicious.

**source** [surs], *f.*, spring, brook.

**sourd** [su:r], deaf.

**sourd-muet** [surmœ̃], deaf and dumb.

**sourire** [suri:r], *irr.*, *see rire*, to smile.

**souris** [suri], *f.*, mouse.

**sous** [su], under.

**soutenir** [sutni:r], *irr.*, *see tenir*, to sustain, maintain.

**souvenir** [suvni:r], **se — de**, to remember.  
**souvent** [suvā], often.  
**souverain** [suvrē], *m.*, sovereign.  
**souveraineté** [suvrente], *f.*, sovereignty.  
**soyez** [swaje], *see être*.  
**spécial** [spesjal], special.  
**store** [stɔ:r], *m.*, window shade, curtain (to roll on fixture).  
**studieux**, **—se** [stydjɔ, -ø:z], studious.  
**succéder** [syksede], to succeed, follow.  
**successeur** [syksesœ:r], *m.*, successor.  
**successivement** [syksesivmā], successively, in turn.  
**sucre** [sykr], *m.*, sugar.  
**suffire** [syfi:r], *irr.*, to be enough.  
**suffisamment** [syfizamā], sufficiently.  
**suisse** [sqis], Swiss.  
**Suisse** [sqis], *f.*, Switzerland.  
**Suisse** [sqises], *f.*, Swiss girl.  
**suite** [sqit], *f.*, successive; **tout de —**, at once, immediately; **à sa —**, after him or her.  
**suivant** [sqivā], following, according to.  
**suivre** [sqi:vr], *irr.*, to follow.  
**sujet** [syʒe], *m.*, subject.  
**Sully** [syli], *m.*, Sully, minister of Henry IV.  
**sultan** [sylvā], *m.*, sultan.  
**supérieur** [syperjœ:r], superior, upper.  
**supplier** [syplie], to beseech.  
**supprimer** [syprime], to suppress.  
**sûr** [sy:r], sure.  
**sur** [sy:r], on, upon, by, about, in. § 219.  
**surprendre** [syprũ:dr], *irr.*, *see prendre*, to surprise.

**surtout** [syrtu], especially.  
**suspendre** [syspũ:dr], to suspend, hang; **suspendu**, hanging.  
**syllabe** [silab], *f.*, syllable.

## T

**table** [table], *f.*, table.  
**tableau** [tablo], *m.*, picture; — (**noir**), blackboard.  
**tâcher** [ta:ʃe], to try.  
**taire** [te:r], *irr.*; **se —**, to keep silent.  
**talon** [talɔ], *m.*, heel; **tourner les —s**, to face about.  
**tandis que** [tãdi(s) kə], while.  
**tant** [tā], so much, so many; — **que**, as long as.  
**tante** [tã:t], *f.*, aunt.  
**tapage** [tapa:ʒ], *m.*, noise, racket, tumult.  
**taper** [tape], to hit, pound, strike, tap.  
**tapis** [tapi], *m.*, carpet, tablecloth, tapestry.  
**tard** [tar], late.  
**tasse** [tã:s], *f.*, cup.  
**taureau** [tãro], *m.*, bull.  
**te** [tə], thee, you, to thee, to you, for thee, for you.  
**tel**, **—le** [tel], such, like; **M. un —**, Mr. So and So; — **quel**, just as it is. § 89f.  
**témoin** [temwē], *m.*, witness; **prendre à —**, to appeal, call someone to witness.  
**temps** [tũ], *m.*, time, weather; **quel — fait-il**, what sort of weather is it; **faire beau —**, to be fine weather.  
**tenir** [tãni:r], *irr.*, to hold; — **à**, to insist on, depend on; **tenez!** here!; **se — debout**, to stand; — **de**, to take after.

tenter [tâte], to tempt.  
 terre [tær], *f.*, ground, earth;  
 s'asseoir à —, to sit on the  
 ground.  
 terreur [tæœ:r], *f.*, terror; **La**  
**Terreur**, the Reign of Terror.  
 terrible [terribl], terrible, fear-  
 ful.  
 territoire [teritwa:r], *m.*, terri-  
 tory.  
 tête [têt], *f.*, head.  
 thé [te], *m.*, tea.  
 tien [tjē], thine, yours.  
 tiers, tierce [tjær, tjers], third.  
 tige [ti:ʒ], *f.*, stem, trunk, stalk.  
 tigre, -sse [tigr, -græs], tiger.  
 tirer [tire], to draw, fire.  
 tiroir [tirwa:r], *m.*, drawer.  
 titre [titr], *m.*, title.  
 toi [twa], thee, you, to thee, for  
 thee, to you, for you.  
 toit [twa], *m.*, roof.  
 toiture [twaty:r], *f.*, roof, entire  
 roof, including gables, etc.  
 tomber [tôbe], to fall; *conj.*, with  
 être.  
 ton, ta, tes [tô, ta, te], thy, your.  
 tordre [tœdr], to twist.  
 tort [tœ:r], *m.*, wrong.  
 tôt [to], soon.  
 toucher [tuʃe], to touch; — à, to  
 touch, reach, interfere with,  
 injure.  
 toujours [tuʒur], always, still.  
 Toulon [tulô], *m.*, Toulon, city of  
 Southern France.  
 toupie [tupi], *f.*, top.  
 tour [tur], *f.*, tower.  
 tour [tur], *m.*, turn, stroll, trip.  
 tourner [turne], to turn, twist.  
 tout, *m. pl.* tous [tu, tu(s)], all,  
 any, every, quite, everything;  
 — le monde, everyone; — e la  
 ville, the whole city; tous les

jours, every day; — à fait,  
 completely; — à l'heure, soon,  
 recently; — à coup, suddenly;  
 rien du —, nothing at all.  
 § 89g.  
 toux [tu], *f.*, cough.  
 tracer [trase], to trace, draw.  
 traduire [traduir], *irr.*, see con-  
 duire, to translate.  
 tragédie [trazedi], *f.*, tragedy.  
 train [trē], *m.*, train; confusion,  
 uproar; en — de, in the act of.  
 trait [træ], *m.*, arrow, shaft.  
 trajet [traze], *m.*, trip, distance.  
 tranquille [trâkil], quiet, peace-  
 ful, tranquil.  
 travail [trava:j], *m.*, work; *pl.*  
 travaux, labors.  
 travailler [travaje], to work, toil,  
 labor, study.  
 travers [travær], *m.*, width; à —,  
 across; en — de, across.  
 traverser [traverse], to pass  
 through, pass over.  
 treize [træ:z], thirteen.  
 trembler [trâble], to tremble.  
 trente [trât], thirty.  
 tribu [triby], *f.*, tribe.  
 tricorne [trikœrn], *m.*, cocked hat,  
 three-cornered hat.  
 tringle [trē:gl], *f.*, rod, frame.  
 triomphe [triô:f], *m.*, triumph.  
 triste [trist], sad.  
 trois [trwa], three.  
 troisième [trwasjem], third.  
 tromper [trôpe], to deceive; se  
 —, to mistake.  
 trompette [trôpet], *f.*, trumpet;  
*m.*, trumpeter.  
 trompeur, -euse [trôpœ:r, -œ:z],  
 deceptive.  
 trop [trô], too, too much.  
 trotter [trôtime], to trot.  
 trouble [trubl], *m.*, confusion.

**troupe** [trup], *f.*, band, troop.  
**troupeau** [trupɔ], *m.*, flock, herd.  
**trouver** [truve], to find, think; *se* —, to be.  
**truite** [tʁɥit], *f.*, trout.  
**tsar, tsarine** [tsa:r, tsarin], tsar, tsarine.  
**tu** [ty], thou, you (*to a child, an intimate friend, or an animal*).  
**tuer** [tʁe], to kill.  
**tuilerie** [tɥiləri], *f.*, tile-works;  
**Les Tuileries**, Tuileries Palace.  
**turc, turque** [tyrk], Turkish.

## U

**un, une** [œ, yn], one, a, an; *l'—* et *l'autre*, both; *l'— ou l'autre*, either. § 88.  
**unique** [ynik], only.  
**usage** [yza:ʒ], *m.*, use, wear.  
**utile** [ytil], useful.

## V

**va** [va], *see aller*; — **pour N.**, I'll take N.; N. will do.  
**vache** [vaʃ], *f.*, cow.  
**vaillamment** [vajamã], bravely, valiantly.  
**vaillant** [vajã], valiant, brave.  
**vaincre** [vê:kr], *irr.*, to vanquish, conquer.  
**vainqueur** [vêkœ:r], *m.*, victor, conqueror.  
**vais** [vɛ], *see aller*.  
**vaisseau** [veso], *m.*, vessel, man-of-war.  
**vallée** [vale], *f.*, valley.  
**valoir** [valwa:r], *irr.*, to be worth; — **bien**, to be as good as; — **mieux**, to be better; **autant** **vaut**, as well.

**vanter** [vâte], to praise; **se —**, to boast, brag.  
**Vaud** [vo], *m.*, Vaud, Swiss canton, capital Lausanne.  
**vautrer** [votre], to wallow, roll.  
**véhément** [veemã], vehement; —**ement**, vehemently.  
**vendeur, —se** [vãdœ:r, -œ:z], seller, vender.  
**vendre** [vã:dr], to sell; **vendu**, bribed.  
**vendredi** [vãdrãdi], *m.*, Friday.  
**venir** [vœni:r], *irr.*, *see tenir*, to come; — **faire**, to come and do; — **à faire**, to happen to do; — **de faire**, to have just done.  
**vent** [vã], *m.*, wind.  
**ver** [vœ:r], *m.*, worm; — **à soie**, silk-worm.  
**verbe** [vœrb], *m.*, verb.  
**verdure** [vœrɥy:r], *f.*, verdure.  
**vergue** [vœrg], *f.*, yard.  
**vérité** [verite], *f.*, truth.  
**vermeil, —le** [vœrmœ:j], vermilion, bright red.  
**verre** [vœ:r], *m.*, glass.  
**vers** [vœ:r], *m.*, verse.  
**vers** [vœ:r], toward.  
**Versailles** [vœsa:j], *f.*, Versailles.  
**verser** [vœse], to turn out, pour out.  
**vert** [vœ:r], green.  
**vertigineux, —se** [vertizinø, -œ:z], dizzy, giddy.  
**vertu** [vœty], *f.*, virtue, valor.  
**vestale** [vœstal], *f.*, vestal, virgin.  
**veste** [vest], *f.*, jacket, short coat.  
**vêtir** [vœti:r], *irr.*, to clothe, dress.  
**veuf** [vœf], *m.*, widower.  
**veuillez** [vœje], *see vouloir*, please, have the kindness to.  
**veuve** [vœ:v], *f.*, widow.  
**veux** [vø], *see vouloir*.  
**viande** [vjã:d], *f.*, meat.



**victoire** [viktwa:r], *f.*, victory.  
**vide** [vid], empty, unoccupied, void.  
**vie** [vi], *f.*, life.  
**vieil** [vjɛ:j], *see* **vieux**.  
**vieillesse** [vjɛ:ʒ], *f.*, old age.  
**vieillir** [vjɛ:r], to grow old.  
**vieux, vieil, vieille** [vjø, vjɛ:j], old, aged.  
**vif, -ve** [vif, vi:v], lively, quick.  
**vilain** [vilɛ̃], homely.  
**village** [vila:ʒ], *m.*, village.  
**ville** [vil], *f.*, city, town.  
**vin** [vɛ̃], *m.*, wine.  
**vingt** [vɛ̃], twenty.  
**vint** [vɛ̃], *see* **venir**.  
**vis** [vis], *f.*, screw.  
**vis-à-vis** [vizavi]; — **de**, opposite.  
**visage** [viza:ʒ], *m.*, face.  
**visite** [vizit], *f.*, visit; **faire** — **à**, to visit, pay a visit to.  
**vite** [vit], fast, quickly.  
**vivement** [vivmɑ̃], quickly, vigorously.  
**vivre** [vi:vʁ], *irr.*, to live; **vive le roi!** long live the king; **vive Henri!** hurrah for Henry! **qui vive?** who goes there? (*sentry's challenge*).  
**voici** [vwasi], see here, here is, here are, this is.  
**voilà** [vwala], behold, see there, there is (are), that is (are); — **quinze ans**, for fifteen years.  
**voir** [vwa:r], *irr.*, to see; **faire** —, to show; **se** —, to be seen, occur.  
**voisin** [vwazɛ̃], *m.*, neighbor.  
**voisin** [vwazɛ̃], *adj.*, neighboring.

**voiture** [vwaty:r], *f.*, carriage.  
**voix** [vwa], *f.*, voice; **à haute** —, aloud.  
**vol** [vɔl], *m.*, flight; **au** —, on the fly.  
**volet** [vɔlɛ], *m.*, wooden shutter, blind.  
**voleur** [vɔlœ:r], *m.*, thief.  
**volonté** [vɔlɔ̃te], *f.*, will.  
**volontiers** [vɔlɔ̃tje], willingly, gladly.  
**volte-face** [vɔlɛfas], *f.*; **faire** —, to turn about.  
**vont** [vɔ̃], *see* **aller**.  
**voter** [vɔte], to vote.  
**votre, pl. vos** [vɔtr, vo], your.  
**vôtre** [vo:tr], yours.  
**vouloir** [vulwa:r], *irr.*, to will, wish, try; — **bien**, to be willing; — **dire**, to mean; **en** — **à**, to be vexed with.  
**vous** [vu], you.  
**voyage** [vwaja:ʒ], *m.*, journey.  
**voyageur** [vwajaʒœ:r], *m.*, traveler, passenger.  
**vrai** [vre], true; — **ment**, truly.  
**vu** [vy], *see* **voir**.  
**vue** [vy], *f.*, sight.

## W

**Wachter** [vaʃtɛ:r], Wachter.

## Y

**y** [i], there, to it, at it, in it, of it;  
**il** — **a**, there is, there are.  
**yeux** [jø], *pl. of* œil.

# VOCABULARY

## ENGLISH-FRENCH

### A

**a, an, un;** — **franc** — **dozen, un franc la douzaine.**  
**abbot, abbé, m.**  
**able, capable; be —, pouvoir.**  
**abolish, abolir.**  
**abominable, abominable.**  
**about, de, autour de, environ, sur; — it, en; set —, se mettre à.**  
**absent, absent.**  
**absolute, absolu.**  
**abuse, abuser.**  
**abyss, gouffre, m., abîme, m.**  
**accept, accepter.**  
**according to, selon.**  
**account; on — of, à cause de.**  
**accurse, maudire.**  
**acquaintance, connaissance, f.**  
**across, à travers.**  
**act, acte, m.**  
**act, agir.**  
**add, ajouter.**  
**admirable, admirable.**  
**admire, admirer.**  
**advice, avis, m., conseil, m.**  
**advise, conseiller.**  
**affectionate, affectueux, affectionné.**  
**afraid; to be — (of), avoir peur (de), craindre; — of, effrayé de; to be much — (=to be in great fear), avoir grand-peur.**

**after, prep. and adv., après.**  
**after, conj., après que.**  
**again, encore, encore une fois, de nouveau.**  
**against, contre.**  
**Agincourt, Azincourt, m.**  
**ago, il y a; two months —, il y a deux mois.**  
**agony, angoisse, f.**  
**aid, aide, f., secours, m., assistance, f.**  
**aid, aider, secourir, assister.**  
**air, air, m.**  
**all, tout; not at —, pas du tout; — at once, tout d'un coup, tout à coup.**  
**allow, laisser, permettre.**  
**almost, presque.**  
**aloud, haut, à haute voix.**  
**already, déjà.**  
**Alsatia, Alsace, f.**  
**also, aussi.**  
**although, bien que, quoique.**  
**altitude, altitude, f.**  
**always, toujours.**  
**amid, au milieu.**  
**among, parmi, entre, chez.**  
**amphitheater, cirque, m.**  
**ancient, ancien, antique.**  
**and, et; to go — visit, aller visiter.**  
**angry, irrité, fâché, furieux.**  
**animal, animal, m.**  
**another, un autre, une autre; one —, l'un l'autre.**

**answer**, réponse, *f.*  
**answer**, répondre.  
**anxiety**, sollicitude, *f.*  
**any**, de + *def. art.*, de; en; aucun, quelconque, tout; — **thing** (*with neg.*), rien; — **one** (*with neg.*), personne.  
**anyone**, quelqu'un.  
**anything**, quelque chose, *m.*,  
**not** —, ne . . . rien.  
**appeal** (to), invoquer.  
**appear**, paraître, sembler, com-  
 paraître.  
**apple**, pomme, *f.*  
**apple-tree**, pommier, *m.*  
**apply**, appliquer; — **oneself**,  
 s'appliquer.  
**apprentice**, apprenti, *m.*  
**approach**, approche, *f.*  
**approach**, approcher, s'appro-  
 cher de.  
**approval**, approbation, *f.*  
**archbishop**, archevêque, *m.*  
**army**, armée, *f.*  
**around**, autour de.  
**arrest**, arrêter, saisir.  
**arrival**, arrivée, *f.*  
**artist**, artiste, *m.*  
**as**, comme; aussi, si; pendant  
 que, en; — . . . —, aussi  
 . . . que; — **long** —, tant  
 que; — **soon** —, aussitôt que;  
 — **if**, comme si; — **well** —,  
 aussi bien que; — **to**, quant à.  
**ascent**, ascension, *f.*  
**ask**, demander, prier; — **for**,  
 demander; — **oneself**, se de-  
 mander; — (**a question**), faire,  
 poser.  
**asleep**, endormi; **be** —, être en-  
 dormi, dormir; **fall** —, s'en-  
 dormir.  
**assembly**, assemblée, *f.*  
**assistance**, secours, *m.*

**assume**, assumer, prendre sur  
 soi, s'arroger, se faire.  
**astonish**, étonner, surprendre.  
**at**, à, chez, de; — **the house of**,  
 chez; — **home**, chez moi, chez  
 toi, etc.; — **my house**, chez  
 moi; — **our house**, chez nous.  
**attention**, attention, *f.*; **pay** —,  
 give —, faire attention.  
**attentive**, attentif.  
**aunt**, tante, *f.*  
**Austria**, Autriche, *f.*  
**Austrian**, Autrichien, *m.*  
**author**, écrivain, *m.*, auteur, *m.*  
**avoid**, éviter.  
**awake**, *tr.*, éveiller, réveiller;  
*intr.*, s'éveiller, se réveiller.

## B

**back**, dos, *m.*; **at the** — **of**, au  
 fond de; **give** —, rendre;  
**come** —, revenir; **go** —, re-  
 tourner.  
**bad**, mauvais, méchant.  
**balance**, équilibre, *m.*  
**ball**, balle, *f.*, boule, *f.*, pe-  
 lote, *f.*  
**bank**, banque, *f.*  
**bankrupt**; **to be** —, faire ban-  
 queroute.  
**bar**, barrer.  
**barbarian**, barbare, *m.*  
**bark**, aboyer.  
**barking**, aboiement, *m.*  
**Bastille**, Bastille, *f.*  
**battle**, bataille, *f.*  
**be**, être, y avoir, se trouver; —  
**about to**, aller; — (*of health*),  
 se porter, aller; — **born**, naître;  
 — (*of weather*), faire; — (*of age*),  
 avoir; — (*of time*), y  
 avoir; — **afraid**, avoir peur.  
**beat**, battre.

beautiful, beau.  
 beauty, beauté, *f*.  
 because, parce que.  
 become, devenir, se faire; —  
 (= *suit*), soir, aller.  
 bed, lit, *m*.  
 before, *prep.*, avant (*of time*);  
 devant (*of place*); avant de  
 + *infin.*  
 before, *conj.*, avant que.  
 before, *adv.*, auparavant.  
 beg, prier.  
 begin, commencer, se mettre à.  
 beginning, commencement, *m*.  
 behind, derrière.  
 believe, croire; it is believed,  
 on croit.  
 bench, banc, *m*.  
 Berlin, Berlin, *m*.  
 berry, baie, *f*.; *pl.*, petits fruits.  
 best, *adj.*, le meilleur.  
 best, *adv.*, le mieux.  
 better, *adj.*, meilleur.  
 better, *adv.*, mieux; be — (= *be*  
*worth more*), valoir mieux;  
 be — (*of health*), se porter  
 mieux, aller mieux; like —  
 (= *prefer*), aimer mieux.  
 between, entre.  
 big, gros.  
 bind, lier, obliger; relier.  
 bird, oiseau, *m*.  
 bishop, évêque, *m*.  
 black, noir.  
 blackbird, merle, *m*.  
 blacksmith, forgeron, *m*.  
 blame, blâme, *m*.; to be to —,  
 être en faute.  
 blame, blâmer, reprendre.  
 blond, blonde, *f*.  
 bloom, fleurir.  
 blue, bleu.  
 board, tableau, *m*.  
 boat, bateau, *m*., barque, *f*.

body, corps, *m*.  
 book, livre, *m*.  
 born; to be —, naître.  
 both, tous (les) deux, l'un et  
 l'autre; — . . . and, et . . . et.  
 bound; to be — (= *to insist on*),  
 tenir à; — (*of books*) relié.  
 bower, berceau de verdure, *m*.,  
 salle de verdure, *f*.  
 bowl, jatte, *f*.  
 box, boîte, *f*.  
 boy, enfant, *m*., garçon, *m*.  
 bread, pain, *m*.  
 break, casser, rompre; — out,  
 éclater; — off, casser, ôter; —  
 up, se dissoudre; — in, enfon-  
 cer.  
 breath, souffle, *m*.; out of —,  
 essoufflé.  
 breathe, respirer.  
 bribe; to take a —, se vendre.  
 bright, clair.  
 bring, apporter; (= *carry*) trans-  
 porter; (= *lead*) amener; —  
 back, ramener; — down, des-  
 cendre; — up (= *rear*), élever.  
 brother, frère, *m*.  
 brunette, brunette, *f*.  
 build, construire, bâtir.  
 bulletin-board, grillage aux af-  
 fiches, *m*.  
 burn, brûler.  
 burst out, éclater; — laughing,  
 éclater de rire.  
 business, métier, commerce, *m*.;  
 affaires, *f. pl.*  
 busy, occupé, en train de.  
 but, mais; nothing —, ne . . .  
 rien . . . que; — few, ne . . .  
 guère.  
 butter, beurre, *m*.  
 buy, acheter.  
 by, par, de, sur, à, en; go —,  
 passer; — sight, de vue.

C

Calais, Calais, *m.*  
 caldron, chaudron, *m.*  
 call, appeler; faire venir; be  
 —ed, s'appeler.  
 calm, calme, *m.*  
 calm, calme, tranquille.  
 calm, calmer; become —, se  
 calmer, s'apaiser.  
 can, pouvoir, savoir.  
 canton, canton, *m.*  
 cap, casquette, *f.*, bonnet, *m.*,  
 chapeau, *m.*  
 capture, prendre.  
 cardinal, cardinal, *m.*  
 care; take —, prendre garde; —  
 for, soigner; take — of, avoir  
 soin de.  
 carefully, soigneusement, avec  
 soin.  
 carnation, œillet, *m.*  
 carriage, voiture, *f.*  
 carry, porter; — off, emporter.  
 cascade, cascade, *f.*  
 cat, chat, *m.*  
 catch, attraper, saisir, prendre.  
 celebrated, célèbre.  
 cent, sou, *m.*  
 certain, certain.  
 chair, chaise, *f.*  
 chalk, craie, *f.*  
 change, changer, changer de.  
 chant, chanter.  
 cheese, fromage, *m.*  
 cherry-tree, cerisier, *m.*  
 child, enfant, *m.* and *f.*  
 choose, choisir.  
 Christmas, Noël, *m.*  
 citizen, citoyen, *m.*, bourgeois,  
*m.*  
 city, ville, *f.*; in the —, à la ville,  
 en ville.  
 civil, civil.

clasp, embrasser.  
 class, classe, *f.*  
 clean, nettoyer.  
 clear, clair, net, léger.  
 clergy, clergé, *m.*  
 climb, grimper.  
 close, clos, fermé; — to, près de.  
 close, fermer, clore.  
 clothes, vêtements, habits, *m. pl.*  
 coast, côte, *f.*  
 coffee, café, *m.*  
 cold, froid; be — (*of living be-*  
*ings*), avoir froid; be — (*of*  
*weather*), faire froid; catch (*a*)  
 —, s'enrhumer.  
 colonnade, colonnade, *f.*  
 color, couleur, *f.*, teint, *m.*  
 come, venir, arriver; — back,  
 revenir; — again, revenir; —  
 to see, — and see, venir voir;  
 — down, descendre; — up,  
 monter; — in, entrer; — out,  
 sortir; —! voyons! allons!  
 comedy, comédie, *f.*  
 command, commandement, *m.*  
 command, commander.  
 comedy, comédie, *f.*  
 company, compagnie, *f.*  
 compose, composer.  
 comrade, camarade, *m.*  
 condemn, condamner.  
 condition, condition, *f.*  
 conduct, conduite, *f.*  
 conduct, conduire, mener.  
 confidence, confiance, *f.*  
 confident, assuré.  
 conquer, vaincre, conquérir.  
 conqueror, vainqueur, *m.*  
 conscientiously, consciencieuse-  
 ment.  
 constitution, constitution, *f.*  
 construct, construire, bâtir.  
 convention, assemblée, *f.*, con-  
 vention, *f.*

convict, forçat, *m.*  
 cool, frais; it is —, il fait frais.  
 coolness, fraîcheur, *f.*; with —,  
   de sang-froid.  
 copy, copier.  
 correct, amender, corriger.  
 cost, coûter.  
 costume, costume, *m.*  
 cottage, chalet, *m.*, maisonnette, *f.*  
 cotton, coton, *m.*  
 count, compter.  
 country, pays, *m.*; (*as opposed*  
*to town*), campagne, *f.*; —  
   (= *native land*), patrie, *f.*;  
   in the —, à la campagne.  
 courage, courage, *m.*; take —,  
   prendre courage.  
 court, cour, *f.*, salle, *f.*  
 courtyard, cour, *f.*  
 cousin, cousin, *m.*, cousine, *f.*  
 crazy, fou.  
 cross, traverser.  
 crowd, foule, *f.*  
 cruelty, cruauté, *f.*  
 crush, écraser.  
 cry, cri, *m.*  
 cry, pleurer, crier; — out, crier.  
 cup, tasse, *f.*, coupe, *f.*  
 cupboard, armoire, *f.*  
 curly, frisé.  
 curse, maudire.  
 custom, coutume, *f.*

## D

danger, danger, *m.*  
 dare, oser.  
 darling, mignon.  
 day, jour, *m.*, journée, *f.*; every  
   —, tous les jours, chaque  
   jour; the — before yesterday,  
   avant-hier; the — after to-  
   morrow, après-demain.  
 dead, mort.

deaf, sourd; turn a — ear, faire  
   la sourde oreille.  
 dear, cher, chéri.  
 death, mort, *f.*; put to —,  
   mettre à mort.  
 decision, décision, *f.*, parti, *m.*  
 declare, déclarer.  
 defend, défendre, protéger.  
 delay, retard, *m.*  
 deliberate, délibérer.  
 delightful, délicieux.  
 demand, demander.  
 depart, partir.  
 depot, gare, *f.*  
 deputy, député, *m.*  
 desire, désirer, vouloir.  
 desk, pupitre, bureau, *m.*  
 despise, dédaigner, mépriser.  
 despoil, dépouiller, priver.  
 detain, détenir, retenir.  
 detest, détester.  
 detestable, détestable.  
 devoted, dévoué.  
 dictation, dictée, *f.*  
 die, mourir; — away, se mourir.  
 different, différent.  
 dinner, dîner, *m.*  
 direction, direction, *f.*  
 disaster, désastre, *m.*  
 discipline, discipline, *f.*  
 discipline, discipliner.  
 discuss, discuter.  
 displease, déplaire.  
 dispose, disposer.  
 divers, divers, plusieurs.  
 do, faire; — (*of health*), se  
   porter; — without, se passer  
   de.  
 dog, chien, *m.*, chienne, *f.*  
 dollar, dollar, *m.*, piastre, *f.*  
 dominate, dominer.  
 door, porte, *f.*; next —, à côté.  
 doubt, doute, *m.*; no —, sans  
   doute.

doubt, douter.  
 drawer, tiroir, *m.*  
 dread, craindre, redouter.  
 dress (in), vêtir (de); well —ed,  
 bien mis.  
 drink, boire.  
 driver, cocher, *m.*  
 drop, goutte, *f.*  
 drop, jeter, laisser tomber.  
 duke, duc, *m.*  
 dummy, mannequin, *m.*  
 during, pendant.  
 dusty, poudreux.  
 duty, devoir, *m.*

**E**

each, chaque, tout.  
 each one, chacun.  
 each other, *reflex. pron. pl.*,  
 nous, vous, se; *indef.*, l'un  
 l'autre, l'un de l'autre, etc.  
 eagerly, ardemment, avidement.  
 ear, oreille, *f.*  
 early, de bonne heure.  
 earn, gagner.  
 easily, facilement.  
 easy, facile.  
 eat, manger.  
 edge, lisière, *f.*, bord, *m.*  
 educated, instruit.  
 education, instruction, *f.*  
 either, l'un ou l'autre; either  
 . . . or, ou . . . ou, soit . . .  
 soit.  
 Elba, Elbe, *f.*  
 elm, orme, *m.*  
 emotion, émotion, *f.*  
 emperor, empereur, *m.*  
 end, fin, *f.*, bout, *m.*; at the — of,  
 au bout de.  
 enemy, ennemi, *m.*  
 England, Angleterre, *f.*  
 English, anglais; — (*the lan-*

*guage*), l'anglais, anglais, *m.*;  
 —man, Anglais, *m.*  
 enjoy, jouir de; — oneself,  
 s'amuser.  
 enough, assez (de); not —, pas  
 assez; kind —, assez bon.  
 enrich, enrichir, embellir.  
 enter, entrer (dans).  
 equal, égal.  
 equal (=be — to), égaler.  
 error, faute, *f.*  
 estate, état, *m.*  
 Europe, Europe, *f.*  
 even, même; — if, — though,  
 quand même.  
 evening, soir, *m.*, soirée, *f.*; in  
 the —, le soir; last —, yes-  
 terday —, hier (au) soir.  
 ever, jamais.  
 every, tout, chaque; — Sunday,  
 tous les dimanches, —thing  
 which, tout ce qui; — other  
 day, tous les deux jours.  
 everybody, tout le monde, *m.*  
 everyone, chacun.  
 everything, tout, *m.*  
 evidently, évidemment.  
 exactly, exactement, précisé-  
 ment; — ten, dix heures pré-  
 cises.  
 example, exemple, *m.*; for —,  
 par exemple.  
 excitement, excitation, *f.*, agi-  
 tation, *f.*  
 exercise, exercice, *m.*  
 exhaust, épuiser.  
 expect, attendre, s'attendre (à),  
 compter, espérer.  
 expend, dépenser.  
 expensive, coûteux, cher.  
 express (train), express, *m.*  
 expression, expression, *f.*  
 eye, œil, *m.*, *pl.* yeux; regard,  
*m.*

## F

face, figure, *f.*, visage, *m.*  
 face about, se tourner.  
 fail, faillir; to — in, manquer à.  
 failing, faute, *f.*, défaut, *m.*  
 fair, bon, beau, juste.  
 fairy, fée, *f.*  
 faithful, fidèle.  
 fall, tomber; — asleep, s'endormir; — due, échoir; — out, se brouiller.  
 familiar, familier.  
 family, famille, *f.*  
 famous, fameux.  
 far, loin; — away, loin, loin d'ici; — from, loin que, loin de; farther off, plus loin; farther on, plus loin; as — as, jusqu'à; how — is it? combien y a-t-il?  
 fast, vite.  
 father, père, *m.*  
 fatherland, patrie, *f.*, pays natal, *m.*  
 fault, faute, *f.*  
 fear, crainte, *f.*, peur, *f.*; for — that, de crainte que; for — of, de crainte de.  
 fear, craindre, avoir peur.  
 fearless, intrépide, sans crainte, sans peur.  
 feed, nourrir.  
 feel, sentir; to — like, avoir envie de.  
 fellow, garçon, *m.*; little —, petit, *m.*  
 feudal, féodal.  
 few, peu, peu de, quelques; a —, quelques-uns; but —, ne . . . guère, ne . . . que peu.  
 field, champ, *m.*  
 fifteen, quinze.  
 fifth, cinquième.

fight, combattre.  
 fill, remplir; — the lungs with, respirer à pleins poumons.  
 find, trouver; be found, se trouver; — out, découvrir.  
 fine, beau; it is — (weather), il fait beau (temps).  
 finish, finir.  
 first, *adj.*, premier.  
 first, *adv.*, d'abord; at —, d'abord.  
 fish, poisson, *m.*  
 fish, pêcher.  
 five, cinq.  
 flee, fuir, s'enfuir.  
 flower, fleur, *f.*; in —, en fleurs.  
 fog, brouillard, *m.*  
 follow, suivre.  
 foot, pied, *m.*, patte, *f.*; on —, à pied.  
 foot-rope, marchepied, *m.*  
 for, *prep.*, pour, pendant, de, contre, par; — (= *during*), pendant; — a moment, un moment; — (= *since*), depuis; — a long time, depuis longtemps.  
 for, *conj.*, car.  
 forbid, défendre; God —, à Dieu ne plaise.  
 force, force, *f.*  
 force, forcer, obliger.  
 foreigner, étranger, *m.*  
 forever, (pour) toujours.  
 forget, oublier.  
 forgive, pardonner.  
 formality, formalité, forme, *f.*  
 former, ancien; the —, celui-là.  
 forty, quarante.  
 forward, en avant.  
 four, quatre.  
 franc, franc, *m.*  
 France, France, *f.*; in —, to —, en France.



**Francis**, François, *m.*  
**free**, libre.  
**freeze**, geler.  
**French**, français; — (*the language*), le français, français;  
 — **man**, Français, *m.*  
**frequently**, fréquemment, souvent.  
**fresh**, frais.  
**friend**, ami, *m.*, amie, *f.*  
**friendship**, amitié, *f.*  
**fright**, effroi, *m.*, frayeur, *f.*  
**frighten**, effrayer; **to be** — **ed**,  
 avoir peur, s'effrayer.  
**frock-coat**, redingote, *f.*  
**frog**, grenouille, *f.*  
**from**, de, à, à partir de, dans,  
 d'après, depuis; — **day to**  
**day**, de jour en jour; — **it**,  
 — **there**, en.  
**front**; **in** — **of**, devant.  
**full**, plein; **at** — **length**, tout au  
 long.  
**fun**; **make** — **of**, se moquer de.  
**furious**, furieux.  
**further**, plus loin.

**G**

**gaily**, gaiement.  
**garden**, jardin, *m.*  
**Gaul**, Gaulois, *m.*  
**general**, général, *m.*  
**general**, général.  
**gentle**, doux.  
**gentleman**, monsieur, *m.*  
**gently**, doucement.  
**German**, allemand; (*language*),  
 l'allemand, allemand, *m.*; (*per-*  
*son*), Allemand, *m.*  
**Germany**, Allemagne, *f.*  
**get**, obtenir, gagner, avoir, pren-  
 dre; (= *reach*) atteindre, ar-  
 river.

**give**, donner; — **away**, donner;  
 — **back**, rendre.  
**glad**; — **at**, **of**, content de,  
 charmé de.  
**glance**, regard, *m.*  
**glove**, gant, *m.*  
**go**, aller, se rendre; — **away**, s'en  
 aller, partir; — **in**, — **into**,  
 entrer dans; — **out**, sortir; —  
**with**, accompagner; — **by**, —  
**past**, passer (devant); — **up**  
 (*stairs*), aller en haut, monter;  
 — **down** (*stairs*), aller en bas,  
 descendre; — **and see**, aller  
 voir; — **to bed**, se coucher;  
 — (**out**) **for a walk**, aller se  
 promener; — **for**, — **after**, —  
**and get**, aller chercher; —  
**back**, retourner; — **home**,  
 aller chez soi, rentrer; —  
**on**, passer, continuer (à); —  
**to sleep**, s'endormir; — **to**  
**France**, aller en France.  
**God**, Dieu, *m.*  
**gold**, or, *m.*; *adj.* (= *of gold*),  
 d'or, en or.  
**good**, bon, brave, sage.  
**good**, bien, *m.*; **do** —, faire du  
 bien.  
**gossip**, bavarder.  
**govern**, gouverner, régir.  
**government**, gouvernement, *m.*  
**gown**, robe, *f.*  
**grammar**, grammaire, *f.*  
**grandson**, petit-fils, *m.*  
**great**, grand, gros; — **deal**,  
 beaucoup.  
**greediness**, avidité, *f.*  
**green**, vert.  
**grow**, croître; devenir; — **larger**,  
 grandir.  
**guide**, guide, *m.*  
**guide**, conduire.  
**guilty**, coupable.

## H

**hair**, cheveu, *m.*, poil, *m.*, cheveux, *m. pl.*  
**half**, demi, *m.*, moitié, *f.*; — **an** hour, une demi-heure, *f.*  
**half**, *adv.*, à demi.  
**half-open**, entr'ouvert.  
**hand**, main, *f.*; **on the right** —, à droite; **on the left** — à gauche; — **over** —, avec les mains.  
**hand**, remettre.  
**handsome**, beau, bel, belle.  
**handwriting**, écriture, *f.*  
**hang**, suspendre.  
**happen**, arriver; venir à.  
**happiness**, bonheur, *m.*, bonne fortune, félicité, *f.*  
**happy**, heureux, content.  
**hard**, ferme, dur, pénible, difficile.  
**hate**, haïr, détester.  
**hatred**, haine, *f.*  
**have**, avoir; obtenir; — (*as auxiliary*), avoir, être; — **just**, venir de; — **to**, être obligé de, devoir, falloir; — **him go**, faites-le partir.  
**he**, il, lui; ce; — **who**, celui qui; — **himself**, lui-même.  
**head**, tête, *f.*  
**headquarters**, commandature, *f.*  
**health**, santé, *f.*  
**hear**, entendre.  
**heavy**, lourd.  
**help**, secours, *m.*  
**hen**, poule, *f.*  
**Henry**, Henri, *m.*  
**her**, *adj.*, son, sa, ses; lui . . . le; à elle.  
**her**, *pers. pron.*, la, elle; **to** —, lui, à elle; — **own**, le sien, à elle.  
**here**, ici, *y*; — **is**, — **are**, voici.

**heroically**, héroïquement.  
**heroine**, héroïne, *f.*  
**hers**, le sien, à elle.  
**herself**, se, elle-même.  
**high**, haut.  
**him**, le, lui; **to** —, **for** —, lui, à lui; — **who**, celui qui.  
**himself**, se, soi, lui, lui-même; **to** —, en lui-même; **he** —, lui-même.  
**his**, *adj.*, son, sa, ses; lui . . . le; à lui.  
**his**, *pron.*, le sien, à lui; — **own**, le sien.  
**history**, histoire, *f.*  
**hold**, tenir; — **out**, tendre, endurer, tenir (bon).  
**holy**, saint, bénit.  
**home**, maison, *f.*, patrie, *f.*; (**at**) —, chez moi, chez toi, etc., à la maison.  
**honest**, honnête.  
**honor**, honneur, *m.*  
**honor**, honorer.  
**hope**, espérance, *f.*, espoir, *m.*  
**hope**, espérer.  
**horrible**, horrible, affreux.  
**horror**, horreur, *f.*  
**horse**, cheval, *m.*  
**hot**, chaud; **in the** — **sun**, en plein soleil.  
**hotel**, hôtel, *m.*  
**hour**, heure, *f.*  
**house**, maison, *f.*; **at (to) our** —, chez nous; **in the** —, à la maison, dans la maison.  
**how**, comment, comme, combien; — **many**, — **much**, combien; — **many!** — **much!** combien (de)! que de!  
**however**, cependant; — **good**, quelque bon que; — **little**, pour peu que; — **that may be**, quoi qu'il en soit.

humanity, humanité, *f.*  
 humiliate, humilier.  
 hundred; a (one) —, cent.  
 hunger, faim, *f.*  
 hungry; be (feel) —; avoir faim.  
 hurrah for! vive(nt)!  
 hurry, se dépêcher; be in a —,  
 être pressé.  
 husband, mari, *m.*

I

I, je, moi.  
 idea, idée, *f.*  
 if, si.  
 ill humor, mauvaise humeur, *f.*  
 impassable, impassable, infran-  
 chissable.  
 impatience, impatience, *f.*  
 impolite, impoli.  
 importance, importance, *f.*  
 in, dans, à, en, de, sur, entre; —  
 it, y; be —, y être; — the  
 evening, le soir; — the west, à  
 l'ouest; — the reign of, sous.  
 incident, incident, *m.*  
 inclined; be — to, être en  
 humeur de.  
 industry, industrie, *f.*  
 inflict, infliger, imposer.  
 inherit, hériter de, succéder à.  
 ink, encre, *f.*  
 ink-well, encrier, *m.*  
 inn, auberge, *f.*  
 insolvency; go into —, faire  
 banqueroute, *f.*  
 inspection, inspection, *f.*  
 inspire, inspirer; — in, inspirer à.  
 intelligence, intelligence, *f.*  
 intelligent, intelligent.  
 into, dans, en; — it, y, là  
 dedans.  
 introduce, présenter, introduire.  
 invade, envahir.

invasion, invasion, *f.*  
 invite, inviter.  
 island, île, *f.*  
 it, il, elle, ce; le, la; cela; in —, y,  
 dedans; of —, for —, en; to  
 —, y; — is you, c'est vous; —  
 is they, ce sont eux; think of  
 —, y penser.  
 Italy, Italie, *f.*  
 its, son, sa, ses; en . . . le.  
 itself, se, soi; lui-même; même.  
 ivory, ivoire, *m.*

J

Jane, Jeanne, *f.*  
 John, Jean, *m.*  
 join, *tr.*, joindre; *intr.*, se joindre.  
 journey, voyage, *m.*; pleasant  
 —! bon voyage!  
 joy, joie, *f.*  
 June-bug, hanneton, *m.*  
 just, *adj.*, juste, précis.  
 just, *adv.*, justement, donc; to  
 have —, venir de, ne faire que  
 de; — then, à ce moment; —  
 as, au moment où.  
 justice, justice, *f.*

K

keep, garder, tenir; — on, aller  
 en.  
 key, clé or clef, *f.*  
 kill, tuer, faire mourir.  
 king, roi, *m.*  
 kingdom, royaume, *m.*; United  
 Kingdom, Royaume-Uni.  
 knight, chevalier, *m.*  
 knock, frapper.  
 know, savoir, connaître; — how,  
 savoir.  
 knowledge, science, *f.*, savoir,  
*m.*, connaissances, *f. pl.*

## L

- labor**, travail, *m.*  
**labor**, travailler.  
**lack**, manquer.  
**lady**, dame, *f.*; **young** —, demoiselle, *f.*; jeune dame, *f.*  
**land**, terre, *f.*  
**land**, débarquer.  
**language**, langue, *f.*  
**large**, grand, gros; **grow** —, grandir.  
**last**, dernier, passé; — **evening**, hier (au) soir; — **night**, cette nuit; — **year**, l'année dernière; **at** —, enfin, à la fin.  
**last**, durer.  
**late**, tard, en retard; **be** — **for**, manquer; **later on**, plus tard; **it is getting** —, il se fait tard.  
**latter**; **the** —, celui-ci.  
**laugh**, rire; — **at**, rire de, se moquer de.  
**law**, loi, *f.*  
**lead**, mener, conduire.  
**leaf**, feuille, *f.*  
**lean**, *tr.*, appuyer; *intr.*, s'appuyer.  
**leap**, bond, *m.*  
**learn**, apprendre, savoir.  
**learned**, instruit.  
**least**; **the** —, *adj.*, le moindre.  
**least**; **the** —, *adv.*, le moins.  
**leave**, *tr.*, quitter, laisser; *intr.*, partir.  
**left**, gauche.  
**leg**, jambe, *f.*  
**length**, longueur, *f.*; **at** —, beaucoup, longuement; **at full** —, tout au long.  
**less**, *adj.*, moindre.  
**less**, *adv.*, moins.  
**lesson**, leçon, *f.*  
**let**, laisser, permettre; — **us go**, allons; — **him finish**, qu'il finisse; — **in**, laisser entrer; — **go**, lâcher.  
**letter**, lettre, *f.*  
**liberty**, liberté, *f.*  
**library**, bibliothèque, *f.*  
**lie** (= *speak falsely*), mentir.  
**lie**; — **down**, se coucher.  
**life**, vie, *f.*; — **convict**, forçat à vie.  
**lift**, lever, soulever, élever, ériger.  
**like**, comme.  
**like**, aimer; désirer, vouloir; — **better**, aimer mieux; — **to**, aimer à.  
**listen**; — **(to)**, écouter.  
**little**, *adj.*, petit; —, *adv.*, peu; **a** —, un peu (de); **however** —, pour peu que; **a** — **while ago**, il y a quelques moments, tout à l'heure; — **by** —, peu à peu; — **one**, petit, *m.*  
**live**, demeurer, vivre; — **in**, demeurer à, dans, habiter; — **on**, vivre de; **long** —! vive(nt)!  
**lofty**, haut.  
**London**, Londres, *m.*  
**long**, *adj.*, long.  
**long**, *adv.*, longtemps; **a** — **time**, **a** — **while**, longtemps; **how** —? depuis quand?; **as** — **as**, tant que; **a** — **way off**, loin.  
**longer**; **no** —, ne . . . plus.  
**look**, regard, *m.*  
**look**; — **(at)**, regarder; — **around**, regarder autour; — **for**, chercher; — **out of the window**, regarder par la fenêtre; — **up**, lever la tête; — (= *appear*), avoir l'air, sembler, paraître.  
**lord**, seigneur, *m.*

lose, perdre; — sight of, perdre de vue.  
 loud, haut.  
 Louisa, Louise, *f.*  
 love, amour, *m.*, affection, *f.*  
 love, aimer.  
 loveless, insensible.  
 Low Countries, Pays-Bas, *m. pl.*  
 lung, poumon, *m.*

**M**

magnificent, magnifique.  
 majority, majorité, *f.*  
 make, faire, rendre; be made, se faire; — use of, se servir de; — up for, réparer; — a decision, prendre un parti.  
 mamma, maman, *f.*  
 man, homme, *m.*; old —, vieillard, *m.*; young men, jeunes gens.  
 manage, ménager, conduire, manier.  
 manner, manière, *f.*  
 many; very —, a great —, beaucoup (de), beaucoup de personnes; so —, tant (de); — a, tel, maint; as —, autant (de); how —? combien (de)?  
 marble, marbre, *m.*; (for playing), bille, *f.*  
 marry, marier, se marier, épouser.  
 Mary, Marie, *f.*  
 master, maître, *m.*  
 matter; what is the —? qu'y a-t-il? de quoi s'agit-il?; no —, that does not —, n'importe.  
 may, pouvoir.  
 mayor, maire, *m.*  
 me, me, moi; to —, for —, me, moi; for —, pour moi; with —, avec moi.  
 mean, vouloir dire.

meanwhile, cependant.  
 measure, mesurer.  
 meet, se réunir, rencontrer.  
 meeting, assemblée, *f.*; call a —, convoquer une assemblée.  
 melancholy, mélancolique.  
 memory, mémoire, *f.*  
 mend, *tr.*, raccommoder, réparer, corriger; *intr.*, se corriger.  
 mention; don't — it, il n'y a pas de quoi.  
 meter, mètre, *m.*  
 midnight, minuit, *m.*  
 mighty, puissant, fort.  
 mile, mille, *m.*  
 military, militaire.  
 milk, lait, *m.*  
 mill, filature, *f.*, moulin, *m.*  
 mind; to make up one's —, prendre un parti.  
 mine, le mien; à moi; a friend of —, un de mes amis.  
 minister, ministre, *m.*  
 minute, minute, *f.*  
 miss, manquer.  
 mistake, méprise, *f.*, erreur, *f.*, faute, *f.*  
 mistake (= make a —), se tromper.  
 mistress, maîtresse, *f.*  
 model, exemple, *m.*  
 moment, moment, *m.*  
 money, argent, *m.*  
 monk, moine, *m.*, religieux, *m.*  
 month, mois, *m.*  
 more, plus (de), encore, davantage; I have no —, I have not any —, je n'en ai plus; — money than, plus d'argent que; I have some —, j'en ai encore; no —, ne . . . plus; it is worth —, il vaut mieux; — than one, plus d'un.

**morning**, matin, *m.*; **good** —, bon-jour; **in the** —, le matin.

**morrow**, demain, lendemain, *m.*

**most**, bien, fort, très; **the** —, le plus; — **people**, la plupart des gens.

**mother**, mère, *f.*

**mountain**, montagne, *f.*

**Mr.**, monsieur, *m.*, M.

**Mrs.**, madame, *f.*, Mme.

**much**, beaucoup (*de*), bien, très, grand'chose; **very** —, beaucoup; **as** — **as**, autant que; **so** —, tant, tellement; **how** —? combien (*de*)?; **too** —, trop; **as** —, autant (*de*).

**mulberry-tree**, mûrier, *m.*

**must**, falloir, devoir.

**mustache**, moustache, *f.*

**my**, mon, ma, mes; **me** (*dat.*), . . . le; — **own**, le mien, à moi.

## N

**name**, nom, *m.*

**name**, appeler; **be named**, s'appeler; **what is the** — **of**? comment s'appelle?

**nap**, sieste, *f.*, somme, *m.*

**Napoleon**, Napoléon, *m.*

**national**, national.

**nature**, nature, *f.*

**necessary**, nécessaire; **be** —, être nécessaire, falloir.

**need**, besoin, *m.*

**need**, falloir, avoir besoin de.

**neighbor**, voisin, *m.*, voisine, *f.*

**neither**, ni l'un ni l'autre . . . ne; — . . . **nor**, (ne . . .) ni . . . ni.

**nest**, nid, *m.*

**never**, ne . . . jamais.

**new**, nouveau, neuf.

**news**, nouvelle(s), *f.*

**New-year's-day**, le jour de l'an.

**next**, *adj.*, prochain, premier; — **year**, l'année prochaine; **the** — **day**, le lendemain; — **time**, la prochaine fois.

**next**, *adv.*, après, ensuite.

**night**, nuit, *f.*; **last** —, hier soir, cette nuit.

**ninety**, quatre-vingt-dix.

**no**, non, pas de, ne . . . pas, aucun; — **man**, — **one**, personne, — **longer**, — **more**, ne . . . plus.

**nobility**, noblesse, *f.*

**noble**, noble, *m.*

**nobody**, (ne . . .) personne.

**nod**, signe de tête, *m.*

**none**, pas, nul; **I have** —, je n'en ai pas; **there are** —, il n'y en a pas.

**noon**, midi, *m.*

**nor**, ni, et ne . . . pas.

**Norman**, normand.

**Normandy**, Normandie, *f.*

**northern**, septentrional, du nord.

**not**, ne . . . pas (*point*), non; — **that**, non (*pas*) que; — **one** (ne . . .) pas un; — **at all**, pas du tout.

**nothing**, (ne . . .) rien; — **at all**, rien du tout; **do** — **but**, ne faire que.

**novel**, roman, *m.*

**now**, maintenant, à présent, déjà, tiens!; — **and then**, de temps en temps.

**numerous**, nombreux.

**nut**, noisette, *f.*, noix, *f.*

## O

**oak**, chêne, *m.*

**obediently**, avec obéissance.

**obey**, obéir (*à*).

observe, observer, remarquer.  
 occur, se trouver.  
 o'clock, heure(s), *f.*  
 odious, odieux, détestable.  
 of, de; — it, — them, en, *y.*  
 often, souvent; how —, com-  
 bien de fois.  
 oh! oh!  
 old, âgé, vieux; (=former), an-  
 cien; — man, vieillard, *m.*;  
 how — is he? quel âge a-t-il?  
 on, sur, à, de, en.  
 once, une fois, autrefois; at —,  
 tout de suite, aussitôt.  
 one, *num.*, un, une.  
 one, *indef. pron.*, on, vous  
 (*obj.*); no —, (ne . . .) per-  
 sonne; the white —s, les  
 blancs; a small —, un petit;  
 the — who, celui qui.  
 only, ne . . . que, seulement;  
 not —, non seulement; —  
 (one), seul.  
 open, ouvert; wide —, grand(e)  
 ouvert(e); half —, entr'ouvert.  
 open, ouvrir; s'ouvrir, éclore.  
 opinion, opinion, *f.*  
 or, ou; (after sans) ni; no . . .  
 —, ne . . . ni . . . ni.  
 orange, orange, *f.*  
 oration, oraison, *f.*  
 order, ordre, *m.*; in — to, pour,  
 afin de; in — that, pour que,  
 afin que.  
 order (=give orders), ordonner;  
 (=send for), faire venir.  
 other, autre; —s, d'autres, au-  
 trui; write to each, —, s'écrire.  
 otherwise, autrement.  
 ought, devoir; he — to do it, il  
 devrait le faire; he — to have  
 done it, il aurait dû le faire.  
 our, notre, nos; at — house,  
 chez nous.

ours, le nôtre.  
 ourselves, nous, nous-mêmes.  
 out; come —, go —, sortir.  
 owe, devoir.  
 own, propre; my —, le mien; of  
 his —, à lui.

P

page, page, *m.*  
 palace, palais, *m.*  
 pale, pâle.  
 panorama, panorama, *m.*  
 pansy, pensée, *f.*  
 papa, papa, *m.*  
 paper, papier, *m.*; (=newspaper)  
 feuille, *f.*, journal, *m.*  
 parent, parent, *m.*  
 Paris, Paris, *m.*; in —, à Paris.  
 participle, participe, *m.*  
 pass (=go past), passer (devant,  
 près de); — through, tra-  
 verser; as he —ed, au passage,  
 en passant.  
 passage, passage, *m.*  
 past, passé, *m.*  
 past, *adj.*, passé; at half — one,  
 à une heure et demie.  
 path, sentier, *m.*  
 patience, patience, *f.*  
 patiently, avec patience, patiem-  
 ment.  
 pay (=pay for), payer; — atten-  
 tion, faire attention.  
 pear-tree, poirier, *m.*  
 peasant, paysan, *m.*  
 pen, plume, *f.*  
 pencil, crayon, *m.*  
 people, peuple, *m.*, on, gens, *m.*  
 or *f.*, monde, *m.*, personnes, *f.*  
 pl.; few —, peu de gens;  
 most —, la plupart des gens;  
 other —, les autres, autrui.  
 perfect, parfait.

- perfectly, parfaitement.  
 perhaps, peut-être.  
 permit, permettre (à).  
 person, personne, *f*.  
 Peter, Pierre, *m*.  
 Philip, Philippe, *m*.  
 pick, cueillir; — out, choisir; —  
 up, ramasser.  
 picture, tableau, *m.*, peinture, *f*.  
 piece, morceau, *m*.  
 pigeon, pigeon, *m*.  
 pink, œillet, *m*.  
 pipe, siffler.  
 pity, plaindre.  
 place, endroit, *m.*, lieu, *m.*,  
 place, *f*.; take —, avoir lieu.  
 place, mettre, placer.  
 plainly, franchement, claire-  
 ment.  
 plant, plante, *f*.  
 plant, planter.  
 play, jouer; — at (*games*), jouer  
 à; — on (*instruments*), jouer de.  
 pleasant, agréable, aimable; —  
 journey! bon voyage!  
 please, plaire à; if you —, s'il  
 vous plaît; as we —, comme  
 il nous plaira.  
 plunge, plonger, (s')enfoncer.  
 poet, poète, *m*.  
 point, point, *m.*, pointe, *f*.; the  
 — is, il s'agit de.  
 Poitiers, Poitiers, *m*.  
 poor, pauvre, mauvais.  
 portion, part, *f*.  
 possess, posséder.  
 possible, possible.  
 post-office, poste, *f*.  
 pound, livre, *f*.  
 pound, taper.  
 power, puissance, *f*. , pouvoir,  
*m*.  
 powerful, puissant, fort.  
 powerless, impuissant.  
 praise, louer.  
 pray, *adv.*, donc.  
 prefer, préférer.  
 prepare, préparer.  
 presence, présence, *f*.; in the —  
 of, devant; into his —, auprès  
 de lui.  
 present, cadeau, *m.*; person —,  
 assistant, *m*.  
 present, présent; at —, à présent;  
 be — at, être présent à,  
 assister à.  
 press, presse, *f*.  
 pretty, *adj.*, joli.  
 pretty, *adv.*, assez.  
 prevent, empêcher.  
 pride, orgueil, *m*.  
 primer, abécédaire, *m*.  
 prince, prince, *m*.  
 prison, prison, *f*.  
 prisoner, prisonnier, *m*.  
 privilege, privilège, *m*.  
 probably, probablement.  
 prompt, prompt, exact.  
 property, bien, *m*.  
 proud, fier, orgueilleux.  
 provide (*for*), pourvoir à; (*with*),  
 fournir à.  
 province, province, *f*.  
 provincial, provincial, de pro-  
 vince.  
 Prussia, Prusse, *f*.  
 Prussian, Prussien, *m*.  
 Prussian, prussien.  
 pull, tirer, haler, hisser.  
 punish, punir.  
 punishment, punition, *f*.  
 pupil, élève, *m.*, *f*.  
 put, mettre, attacher; — on  
 (*clothing*), mettre; — out  
 (*fire*), éteindre; — out (*of*  
*doors*), mettre à la porte; —  
 to death, mettre à mort; —  
 off, remettre.



Q

quality, qualité, *f*.  
 quarter, quart, *m.*; — of an  
 hour, quart d'heure.  
 question, question, *f.*; ask a —,  
 faire une question.  
 quickly, vite.  
 quiet, tranquille.  
 quite, tout, tout à fait.

R

racket, tapage, *m.*  
 rain, pluie, *f*.  
 rain, pleuvoir.  
 rank, rang, *m.*  
 rare, rare.  
 reach, arriver à or chez, at-  
 teindre, gagner.  
 read, lire.  
 ready, prêt.  
 receive, recevoir.  
 recite, réciter.  
 reckon, calculer, compter.  
 recognize, reconnaître.  
 recover, recouvrer, se remettre.  
 red, rouge.  
 refuse, refuser.  
 regret, regret, *m.*  
 regret, regretter.  
 reign, règne, *m.*  
 reign, régner.  
 remain, rester.  
 remember, se souvenir de, se  
 rappeler, retenir.  
 repeat, répéter.  
 reply, réponse, *f*.  
 reply, répondre.  
 represent, représenter.  
 reproach, reproche, *m.*  
 reproach, reprocher.  
 resist, résister à.  
 respect, respect, *m.*  
 respect, respecter.

rest, se reposer.  
 retrace, retracer, revenir sur; —  
 his steps, revenir sur ses pas.  
 retreat, retraite, *f*.  
 return, retourner, revenir, rendre.  
 revolt, révolte, *f.*, soulèvement,  
*m.*  
 revolt, se révolter, se rebeller.  
 reward, récompense, *f*.  
 reward, récompenser.  
 rich, riche.  
 rigging, grément, *m.*  
 right, droit, *m.*; be (in the) —,  
 avoir raison; all —! à la  
 bonne heure!  
 right, droit; on the — hand, to  
 the —, à (la) droite.  
 rise (up), se lever, se dresser.  
 road, route, *f.*, chemin, *m.*  
 rock, roc, *m.*, roche, *f.*, rocher, *m.*  
 Roman, Romain, *m.*  
 room, chambre, *f.*, salle, *f*.  
 rope, corde, *f*.  
 rose, rose, *f*.  
 rose-bush, rosier, *m.*  
 round, rond.  
 royal, royal.  
 ruin, ruine, *f*.  
 ruin, ruiner, détruire.  
 rule, règle, *f*.  
 ruler, règle, *f*.  
 run, courir; — away, se sauver;  
 — over, parcourir; — after,  
 courir après.  
 Russia, Russie, *f*.  
 Russian, Russe, *m.*, *f*.  
 Russian, russe.  
 rustic, rustique.

S

sad, triste.  
 sailor, marin, *m.*, matelot, *m.*  
 Saint Helena, Sainte-Hélène, *f*.

- same, même.  
 satisfy, satisfaire.  
 save, sauver, conserver; (*money*), épargner.  
 saw-mill, scierie, *f*.  
 say, dire; **it is said**, on dit; — **to each other**, — **to oneself**, se dire; — **again**, redire.  
 scaffold, échafaud, *m*.  
 scarcely, à peine.  
 school, école, *f*.; **at or to** —, à l'école.  
 scold, gronder.  
 scornful, dédaigneux.  
 scream, crier.  
 seat, banc, *m*.  
 second, seconde, *f*.  
 see, voir; — **again**, revoir.  
 seek, chercher.  
 seem, sembler, paraître.  
 seize, saisir.  
 sell, vendre.  
 senate, sénat, *m*.  
 send, envoyer; — **for**, envoyer chercher, faire appeler, faire venir.  
 sentence, sentence, *f*., phrase, *f*.  
 separate, séparer, se séparer.  
 serious, sérieux, grave.  
 sermon, sermon, *m*.  
 serve, servir.  
 set out, partir.  
 seven, sept.  
 seventeen, dix-sept.  
 several, plusieurs (*invariable*).  
 shade, ombre, *f*.  
 shaggy, hérissé, ébouriffé.  
 shame, honte, *f*.; **it is a** —, c'est honteux.  
 shameful, honteux.  
 share, part, *f*.  
 sharp, aigu, *vif*.  
 sharpen, tailler, aiguiser.  
 she, elle, *ce*.  
 shining, brillant.  
 shoe, soulier, *m*.  
 shout, crier.  
 show, spectacle, *m*.  
 show, montrer, faire voir; — **itself**, se montrer; — **in**, faire entrer.  
 shut, fermer.  
 side, côté, *m*.  
 siege, siège, *m*.  
 sign, signe, *m*.  
 silence, silence, *m*.  
 silent, muet, silencieux; **be or become** —, se taire.  
 silk, soie, *f*.  
 silk-worm, ver à soie, *m*.  
 silver, argent, *m*.  
 silver, d'argent, en argent.  
 since, *prep.*, depuis.  
 since, *conj.*, depuis que, puisque, que.  
 sing, chanter.  
 single, seul.  
 sir, monsieur, *m*.  
 sister, sœur, *f*.  
 sit (*down*), s'asseoir.  
 skate, patiner; **go —ing**, (aller) patiner.  
 slave, esclave, *m.*, *f*.  
 slavery; **to fall into** —, tomber esclave.  
 sleep, dormir; **go to** —, s'endormir.  
 slide, glissade, *f*.  
 slight, léger.  
 slip, glisser.  
 slowly, lentement.  
 small, petit.  
 smell, sentir.  
 smile, sourire.  
 snarl, brouiller; **get —ed up**, s'embrouiller.  
 snow, neige, *f*.  
 snow, neiger.

**snow-cap**, houppette de neige, *f.*  
**so**, si, ainsi, par conséquent,  
aussi, c'est pourquoi; — **many**,  
— **much**, tant (de), tellement;  
**not** — . . . **as**, ne  
. . . pas si . . . que; **I think**  
—, je le crois; **I am** —, je le  
suis; — **as to**, afin de, de ma-  
nière à; — **that**, afin que, de  
sorte que; — **well**, si bien, tant.  
**softly**, doucement, mollement.  
**soldier**, soldat, *m.*, militaire,  
*m.*  
**solemn**, solennel, grave.  
**some**, *adj.*, du, de la, des; quel-  
que(s); **for** — **time**, pendant  
quelque temps.  
**some**, *pron.*, en, quelqu'un,  
quelques-uns; — **of it**, en;  
**I have** —, j'en ai.  
**somebody**, quelqu'un, *on.*  
**someone**, quelqu'un, *on.*  
**something**, quelque chose, *m.*  
**sometimes**, quelquefois.  
**son**, fils, *m.*  
**soon**, bientôt; **as** — **as**, aussitôt  
que.  
**sorry**, fâché, désolé; **be** — (for),  
regretter.  
**sort**, sorte, *f.*, espèce, *f.*; **what**  
— **of weather?** quel temps?  
**Spain**, Espagne, *f.*  
**speak**, parler; **French is spoken**,  
on parle français; **so to** —,  
pour ainsi dire.  
**spectacles**, lunettes, *f.*  
**speech**, parole, *f.*  
**spell**, épeler.  
**spend** (*money*), dépenser, (*time*),  
passer.  
**spring**, printemps, *m.*; **in** —,  
au printemps.  
**square** (*of a city*), place, *f.*  
**stake**, enjeu; jalon, *m.*; **be at** —,

y aller de, s'agir de; **my life is**  
**at** —, il y va de ma vie.  
**stand**, être debout, rester debout.  
**start** (= *set out*), partir.  
**state**, état, *m.*  
**station-master**, chef de gare, *m.*  
**stay**, rester, s'arrêter.  
**steep**, montueux, raide.  
**step**, pas, *m.*; **take a** —, faire un  
pas.  
**stern**, sévère.  
**stick**, baguette, *f.*, bâton, *m.*  
**still**, *adj.*, calme, tranquille.  
**still**, *adv.*, encore, toujours.  
**stool**, escabeau, *m.*  
**stop**, *tr.*, arrêter, boucher; *intr.*  
s'arrêter.  
**story**, histoire, *f.*, conte, *m.*  
**street**, rue, *f.*  
**strength**, force, *f.*  
**stretch**, (s')étendre.  
**strong**, solide.  
**strongly**, fortement.  
**studious**, studieux.  
**study**, étude, *f.*  
**study**, étudier.  
**stupid**, bête, stupide.  
**succeed**, succéder à, réussir.  
**such**, tel; — **a**, un tel.  
**suffer**, souffrir.  
**sugar**, sucre, *m.*  
**sultan**, sultan, *m.*  
**sum**, somme, *f.*  
**summer**, été, *m.*  
**sun**, soleil, *m.*  
**Sunday**, dimanche, *m.*  
**support**, appuyer, soutenir; —  
**oneself**, s'appuyer, se sou-  
tenir.  
**suppress**, supprimer, réprimer,  
étouffer.  
**surprise**, surprendre, étonner.  
**surprised**, surpris, étonné.  
**surrender**, (se) rendre.

sway, balancer.  
 sweet, doux; **smell** —, sentir bon.  
 swiftly, vite.  
 swim, nager.  
 swing, balancer; — **back and forth**, aller et venir.  
 Swiss, suisse; — **girl**, Suissesse, *f.*  
 Switzerland, Suisse, *f.*

## T

**table**, table, *f.*  
**take**, prendre, porter, emporter, mener, emmener, conduire;  
 — **off**, ôter; — **in**, envelopper.  
**talent**, talent, *m.*  
**talk**, parler.  
**tall**, grand, haut.  
**task**, tâche, *f.*, affaire, *f.*  
**tax**, impôt, *m.*, taxe, *f.*  
**tea**, thé, *m.*  
**teach**, enseigner, apprendre.  
**teacher**, professeur, *m.*, maître, *m.*  
**tell**, raconter, dire, annoncer.  
**temple**, temple, *m.*  
**ten**, dix.  
**tennis**, jeu de paume, *m.*  
**terrible**, terrible.  
**territory**, territoire, *m.*  
**than**, que, (*before numerals*) de.  
**that**, *dem. adj.*, ce, cet, cette; ce . . . -là.  
**that**, *dem. pron.*, ce, cela, celui; — **is**, voilà, c'est.  
**that**, *rel. pron.*, qui, que, lequel.  
**that**, *conj.*, que.  
**the**, le, la, les.  
**their**, leur, leurs.  
**theirs**, le leur.  
**them**, les, leur, eux, elles; **of** —, d'eux, en; **to** —, à eux, leur, *y.*  
**themselves**, se, eux, eux-mêmes.

**then**, alors, ensuite, puis.  
**there**, là, *y*; — **is**, — **are**, voilà, il *y* a; — **it is**, le (la) voilà.  
**these**, *adj.*, ces; ces . . . -ci.  
**these**, *pron.*, ceux, ceux-ci; — **are**, ce sont, voici.  
**they**, ils, elles, on, ce; **there** — **are**, les voilà; **it is** —, ce sont eux.  
**thing**, chose, *f.*, affaire, *f.*, objet, *m.*  
**think**, penser, croire, songer.  
**third**, troisième, trois.  
**thirsty**; **be** —, avoir soif; **be very** —, avoir bien soif, mourir de soif.  
**this**, *adj.*, ce, cet, cette; ce . . . -ci.  
**this**, *pron.*, ce, ceci, celui(-ci); — **one**, celui-ci.  
**those**, *adj.*, ces, ces . . . -là.  
**those**, *pron.*, ceux(-là); — **who**, ceux qui; — **are**, voilà.  
**thou**, tu, toi.  
**thought**, pensée, *f.*, idée, *f.*  
**thoughtful**, réfléchi, pensif.  
**thousand**, mille, mil.  
**three**, trois.  
**through**, par, à travers, au travers de.  
**throw**, jeter.  
**tie**, attacher.  
**till**, *prep.*, jusqu'à, avant.  
**till**, *conj.*, jusqu'à ce que, que.  
**time**, temps, *m.*, fois, *f.*, moment, *m.*; **at** —s, quelquefois.  
**tire**, fatiguer, ennuyer; **be or get tired**, s'ennuyer, se fatiguer.  
**to**, à, chez, de, pour, en, jusqu'à, envers, vers.  
**to-day**, aujourd'hui.  
**together**, ensemble.  
**to-morrow**, demain; **day after** —, après-demain.  
**tongue**, langue, *f.*; **hold one's** —, se taire.

too, aussi, trop; — much, — many, trop.  
top, sommet, *m.*; spinning —, toupie, *f.*  
topman, gabier, *m.*  
toward, vers.  
town, ville, *f.*; in —, down —, en ville; to —, à la ville.  
town-hall, mairie, *f.*, hôtel de ville, *m.*  
trace, tracer.  
trade, métier, *m.*  
trade-guild, corporation, *f.*  
tragedy, tragédie, *f.*  
train (railroad), train, *m.*  
translate, traduire.  
traveler, voyageur, *m.*  
tree, arbre, *m.*  
tremble, trembler.  
triumph, triomphe, *m.*  
troops, troupes, *f. pl.*  
trot (along), trotter.  
trout, truite, *f.*  
true, vrai, fidèle.  
trumpet, trompette, *f.*  
truth, vérité, *f.*  
try, essayer.  
turn, tour, *m.*; in —, à tour.  
turn, tourner.  
twelve, douze; — (o'clock), midi, *m.*, minuit, *m.*  
twenty, vingt.  
twenty-four, vingt-quatre.  
twice, deux fois.  
twinkling, clin d'œil, *m.*  
twist, tourner.  
two, deux.

U

ugly, laid, vilain.  
umbrella, parapluie, *m.*  
uncle, oncle, *m.*  
under, sous, au-dessous de.

understand, comprendre.  
undisciplined, indiscipliné.  
unfortunate, malheureux.  
unhappy, malheureux.  
United States, États-Unis, *m. pl.*; in the —, aux États-Unis.  
unknown, inconnu.  
unless, à moins que . . . (ne).  
until, *prep.*, jusqu'à.  
until, *conj.*, jusqu'à ce que, que.  
up, en haut; come —, monter; get —, se lever; — to, jusqu'à.  
upon, sur.  
uproar, train, *m.*  
upset, bouleverser.  
urchin, gamin, *m.*  
us, nous.  
use, usage, *m.*; be of some —, être de quelque utilité; have — for, avoir besoin de; make — of, se servir de, employer.  
use, se servir de, employer.  
useless, inutile; be —, ne valoir rien.  
usually, d'ordinaire, ordinairement, usuellement.  
utter, pousser, prononcer.

V

vanquish, vaincre.  
verb, verbe, *m.*  
very, très, bien, fort; — much, beaucoup, bien, très; that — evening, le soir même.  
vex, vexer, irriter, agacer.  
victor, vainqueur, *m.*  
victory, victoire, *f.*  
village, village, *m.*  
violet, violette, *f.*  
voice, voix, *f.*  
vote, voix, *f.*, suffrage, *m.*  
voter, votant, *m.*

## W

**wait**, wait for, attendre.  
**walk**, promenade, *f.*; **go for a —**, take a —, (aller) se promener, faire une promenade.  
**walk**, marcher, se promener; — **in**, entrer.  
**wall**, mur, *m.*  
**walnut-tree**, noyer, *m.*  
**want**, avoir besoin de, désirer, vouloir; **I —**, il me faut.  
**war**, guerre, *f.*; **make —**, faire la guerre.  
**warm**, chaud; **be —** (*of living beings*), avoir chaud; **be —** (*of weather*), faire chaud.  
**warn**, prévenir.  
**waste**, *tr.*, perdre, dissiper, prodiguer; *intr.*, dépérir, s'épuiser.  
**watch**, montre, *f.*  
**watch**, contempler, regarder; — **for**, guetter.  
**water**, eau, *f.*  
**way**, route, *f.*, chemin, *m.*; **manière**, *f.*, moyen, *m.*; **on the —**, en route; **by the —**, à propos; **a long — off**, bien loin.  
**we**, nous, *on.*  
**weakness**, faiblesse, *f.*  
**wear**, porter.  
**weariness**, lassitude, *f.*, fatigue, *f.*  
**weather**, temps, *m.*; **the — is warm**, il fait chaud.  
**week**, semaine, *f.*, huit jours, *m. pl.*  
**weigh**, peser.  
**welcome**, accueillir; **be —**, être le bienvenu.  
**well**, bien, très; **so —**, si bien; **very —**, très bien; **be —**, se porter bien; **do —**, faire le bien; **as — as**, aussi bien que; **well!** eh bien!

**wet**, humide.  
**what**, *adj.*, quel; — **time is it?** quelle heure est-il?  
**what**, *pron.*, que, quoi, ce qui, ce que, ce à quoi, ce dont, qu'est-ce que? qu'est-ce qui? qu'est-ce que c'est que? ce que c'est que; — **is up now?** qu'est-ce qu'il y a encore?  
**whatever**, tout ce qui (que), quoi que, quel que, quelconque.  
**when**, quand, lorsque, que.  
**whenever**, quand, lorsque.  
**where**, où; **from —**, d'où.  
**which**, *adj.*, quel.  
**which**, *pron.*, qui, que, lequel; **of —**, dont, duquel; **at —**, où, auquel; **in —**, où, dans lequel; **from —**, dont, duquel.  
**while**, *prep.*, en.  
**while**, *conj.*, pendant que, tandis que, tant que.  
**while**; **a long —**, longtemps.  
**white**, blanc.  
**who**, qui, quel, lequel.  
**whoever**, qui que, quiconque, qui que ce soit.  
**whole**, tout, entier; **the — evening**, toute la soirée; **the — year**, toute l'année.  
**whom**, qui, que, lequel; **of —**, dont, de qui, duquel.  
**whose**, à qui, de qui, dont, duquel; **at — house**, chez qui.  
**why**, pourquoi.  
**wicked**, méchant.  
**wide**, large; — **open**, grand(e) ouvert(e).  
**will**, volonté, *f.*  
**win**, gagner, remporter.  
**window**, fenêtre, *f.*; **out of the —**, par la fenêtre.

wine, vin, *m.*  
 wipe, essuyer.  
 wisdom, sagesse, *f.*  
 wish, désir, *m.*  
 wish, désirer, souhaiter, vouloir.  
 with, avec, chez, à, de, envers, par; go or be —, accompagner.  
 without, *prep.*, sans; — . . .  
 and, — . . . or, sans . . .  
 ni; do —, se passer de.  
 without, *conj.*, sans que (*with subj.*).  
 woman, femme, *f.*  
 wonder, se demander, s'étonner.  
 wonderful, merveilleux, étonnant.  
 wood, bois *m.*  
 word, mot, *m.*, parole, *f.*; send —, faire savoir.  
 work, travail, *m.*, ouvrage, *m.*, œuvre, *m. or f.*  
 work, travailler.  
 world, monde, *m.*  
 worth; be —, valoir; — the trouble, — while, valoir la peine.

worthy, digne.  
 would (*past tense of will*); — to God! plût à Dieu!  
 wretch, misérable, *m.*  
 write, écrire; — to each other, s'écrire.  
 writing, écriture, *f.*  
 wrong, mal, *m.*; be (in the) —, avoir tort.

Y

yard (*of a ship*), vergue, *f.*  
 year, année, *f.*, an, *m.*; last —, l'année dernière, l'année passée.  
 yelping, jappement, *m.*  
 yes, oui, si.  
 yesterday, hier.  
 yet, encore, cependant; not —, pas encore.  
 yield, céder.  
 yonder, là-bas.  
 you, vous, tu, te, toi.  
 young, jeune.  
 youngster, jeune homme, *m.*  
 your, votre, vos, ton, ta, tes.  
 yours, le vôtre, le tien; à vous, à toi.





# INDEX

All numbers refer to sections.

- À**, 202-206, 219-221.  
 abbreviations, 232.  
 accents, 4. See also stress.  
 adjectives, feminine, 21-25, 128, 129; plurals, 26-28, 31; possessives, 32; demonstratives, 30, 31, 67, 69; indefinites, 84-89; invariable, 130, 131; agreement, 132; comparison, 133; superlative, 135; position, 138; numeral, 139, 140; with **à**, 205; with **de**, 212.  
 adverbs, 187-201, 229.  
 age, 145.  
 agreement of verb, 153-155.  
**aller**, 56, 101, 182, 218.  
 alphabet, 2; phonetic, 18.  
 apposition, 136.  
**après**, with infinitive, 109.  
 article, 19, 29, 34, 136, 137.  
**au**, 29; prefix, 199.  
**autre**, 88, 89.  
**autrui**, 89.  
 auxiliary verb, 90, 92.  
**avant**, 207; **avant que**, 197*b*, 2; 227.  
**avec**, 208.  
**avoir**, 36, 1; 90-92, 145, 146, 184.  
  
**beaucoup**, 27, 197.  
**bel**, 25.  
**bien**, 133, 137, 2*f*.  
**bien que**, 222.  
**bon**, 133.  
**bouger**, 196.  
  
**ç**, cedilla, 48.  
**ça**, 67.  
 capitals, 144.  
 cardinal numbers, 139.  
**ce**, 29-31, 67, 147.  
**ceci**, 67.  
 cedilla, 48.  
**cela**, 67.  
**celui**, 68-71.  
**cent(s)**, 139.  
**-cer** verbs, 48.  
**cesser**, 196*a*.  
**cet**, 25.  
**chacun**, 87.  
**chaque**, 87.  
**chez**, 209.  
**-ci**, 69.  
**ciel**, 28.  
 circumflex, 4.  
 close vowel, 4, 45.  
 collectives, 153.  
 collocation, 63, 64.  
**comme**, 229, 231.  
**comment**, 231.  
 comparison, 133-135, 191.  
 complement of verbs, 157-162.  
 composite subject, 153-155.  
 compound tenses, 90-92, 102-105.  
 conditional, 114, 116, 165-168, 173-175.  
 conjunctions, 222-228.  
 consonants, final, 13, 16.  
**craindre**, 197*b*, 1.

- d** in liaison, 17.  
**dans**, 210, 219.  
**dates**, 144.  
**davantage**, 200.  
**de**, 36, 37, 146, 176, 191, 211–216, 219–221.  
**definite article**, 19, 27, 29, 37, 135–137.  
**demi**, 130, 142.  
**demonstratives**, 67–71.  
**depuis**, 103.  
**depuis que**, 196, 226.  
**des**, 29.  
**deuxième**, 140.  
**devant**, 207.  
**devoir**, 168, 186.  
**dieresis**, 12.  
**dimensions**, 146.  
**disjunctives**, 53, 56, 57.  
**dont**, 75.  
**du**, 29.  
  
**e** mute, 9, 46.  
**–eler verbs**, 46.  
**elision**, 24.  
**elle**, 19, 55.  
**–ément**, 189.  
**empêcher**, 197*b*, 2.  
**en**, preposition, 111, 202, 210, 219, 220.  
**en**, pronoun, 61, 65, 150.  
**encore**, 89.  
**envers**, 217.  
**–eter verbs**, 46.  
**être**, 92.  
**–eur**, feminine of, 128.  
**éviter**, 197*b*, 2.  
  
**f** in liaison, 17.  
**faire**, 157–159, 180*a*, *c*, 183.  
**falloir**, 180*a*, 186, 197*b*, 2.  
**fol**, 25.  
**fractions**, 142.  
  
**fraîche-cueillie**, 131.  
**future**, 98–101, 163, 164, 166.  
**future anterior**, 102, 103.  
  
**g** in liaison, 17; becomes **ge**, 48.  
**gender**, 19, 126–128.  
**generic noun**, 137, 2*a*.  
**gens**, gender, 126, 7.  
**gerund**, 110.  
**glide**, vowel, 7.  
**government of verbs**, 156.  
**grande ouverte**, 131.  
  
**h** aspirate, 16.  
**hiatus**, 25.  
*however*, 171.  
  
**il**, 19, 55, 147.  
**il y a**, 103, 184, 185.  
**imperative**, 50, 58, 169, 170.  
**imperfect indicative**, 94, 95, 103, 116, 173.  
**imperfect subjunctive**, 122.  
**impersonal verbs**, 181–186.  
**indefinite nouns**, 33, 34.  
**indefinite adjectives and pronouns**, 84–89.  
**indicative**, Chap. II; Chap. IV; 118.  
**indirect discourse**, 115.  
**indirect object**, 56.  
**infinitive**, 38, 108, 109, 168, 176–178; with **à**, 204–206; with **de**, 214–216; with **pour**, 218.  
**interrogation**, 51–53.  
**interrogative adjectives**, 73.  
**interrogative pronouns**, 81–83.  
**invariable adjective**, 130, 139.  
**inversion**, 151, 152.  
  
**jumeau**, 129.

- laisser**, 157.  
**la plupart**, 137, 2*f*, 153.  
**le**, 19, 62, 148, 149.  
**lequel**, 73-78.  
**liaison**, 17.  
**lip-rounding**, 5.  
**lorsque**, 224.  
**l'un l'autre**, 88.  
  
**mauvais**, 133.  
**meilleur, mieux**, 133.  
**-ment**, 188.  
**moindre, moins**, 133.  
**moins de**, 191.  
**mol**, 25.  
**monsieur**, 194.  
**motion, verbs with à**, 56.  
**muscle tension**, 6.  
**mute e**, 9, 46.  
  
**narrow vowels**, 6.  
**ne**, 54, 134, 196-198, 223.  
**ne . . . que**, 201.  
**negation**, 54, 192, 196-198.  
**ni**, 223.  
**non**, 192, 194.  
**nouns, definite**, 19; **indefinite and partitive**, 33-35; **gender**, 126-128; **numerals**, 141.  
**nu**, 130.  
**numerals**, 139-146.  
  
**objective pronouns**, 55-58, 63, 64.  
**œil**, 28.  
**oi**, 11.  
**on**, 85.  
**only**, 201.  
**open vowel**, 4, 45.  
**or translated by ni**, 223.  
**ordinals**, 140.  
**oser**, 196*a*.  
**oui**, 192, 194.  
  
**par**, 211, 219.  
**participles**, 91, 92, 110-113, 179, 180.  
**partitives**, 33-37.  
**parts of speech**, 1.  
**pas**, 198; **pas de**, 36, 2.  
**passive verb**, 60, 85, 105-107, 211.  
**past anterior**, 104.  
**past definite**, 96, 97.  
**past indefinite**, 90, 173.  
**past participle**, 91, 92, 110, 161, 180.  
**pendant que**, 225.  
**penser à**, 56, 202.  
**personal pronouns**, 55-64.  
**petit, peu**, 133.  
**phonetic alphabet**, 18.  
**pire, pis**, 133.  
**pleonastic ne**, 197.  
**plupart**, 137, 2*f*, 153.  
**pluperfect indicative**, 102-104; **subjunctive**, 122, 125.  
**plurals**, 26-28, 31, 130.  
**plus**, 149, 191.  
**position, of pronouns**, 63-65; 170; **of adverbs**, 187. See also **word-order and inversion**.  
**possession, être à**, 205.  
**possessives**, 32, 66.  
**pour**, 218, 219.  
**pouvoir**, 161, 168, 196*a*.  
**prepositional phrases**, 221.  
**prepositions**, 202-221.  
**present indicative**, 41-49, 100-103.  
**present participle**, 111-113, 179.  
**primitive tenses**, 38, 39.  
**pronouns, personal**, 55-57; **position**, 58, 63-65; **reflexive**, 59; **possessive**, 66; **demonstrative**, 67-71; **relative**, 72-80; **inter-**

- rogative, 81-83; indefinite, 84-89.  
 pronunciation, 3-18.  
 proper nouns, 130, 136, 137, 2c.  
*pu*, 161.  
*puisque*, 226.
- quand*, 224; *quand même*, 165*b*.  
*que*, pronoun, 73, 80.  
*que*, conjunction, 133, 228.  
*que*, adverb, 229.  
*quel*, 73; *quel que*, 171.  
*quelque*, 86; *quelque . . . que*, 171.  
*qui*, 73, 81, 83; *qui que*, 171.  
*quoique*, 222; *quoi que*, 171.
- reflexive pronoun, 59, 159; verb, 59, 60, 89, 91, 92, 1.  
 relative clauses, 171, 172.  
 relative pronoun, 72-80.  
 repetition of preposition, 220.
- s* in liaison, 17.  
*sans que*, 222.  
*savoir*, 168, 196*a*.  
*se*, 59.  
 second, 140.  
 sequence of tenses, 120-122.  
*seulement*, 201.  
*si*, adverb, 192; *si . . . que*, 171; conjunction, 21, 100, 125.  
 simple tenses for continuing action, 104.  
*soi*, 89.  
 sounds, 2-18.  
*sous*, 219.  
 strengthening vowel, 45, 46, 99.  
 stress, 5, 14, 45, 46.  
 stressed personal pronoun, 55, 57.  
 subjunctive, 117, 118; present, 120, 121; imperfect, 122; as imperative, 123, 124; pluperfect, 125; uses, 171-175; with conjunction, 222.  
 superlatives, 135.  
*sur*, 146, 219.  
 syllabication, 12.
- t* in inversion, 53.  
*tandis que*, 225.  
*tant*, 199.  
*tel*, 89.  
 -*teur*, feminine, 128, 2.  
 time, 143.  
 titles, 137, 2c; 144.  
*tout*, 89, 131.  
*tout . . . que*, 171, 172.  
*tréma*, 12.  
*tu*, 55.
- u*, pronunciation, 8.  
*un*, 88, 139.
- valoir*, 160, 180*b*.  
*venir*, 218, 219.  
 verbs, principal parts, 38, 39;  
   present indicative, 41-49, 100-103; imperative, 50-58, 169, 170; imperfect indicative, 94, 95, 103, 116, 173; past definite, 96, 97; past indefinite, 90, 173; participles, 91, 92, 110-113, 179, 180; future, 98-101, 163, 164, 166; compound tenses, 102-104; agreement, 153-155; government, 156; complement, 157-162; conditional, 114-116, 165-168, 173-175; subjunctive, 117-125, 171-175, 222; infinitive, 108, 109, 168, 176-178, 204-206, 214-216, 218; impersonals, 181-186.  
*vers*, 217.  
*voilà*, 185.

**voir**, 158, 160.  
**vouloir**, 162, 168.  
**vowels**, 3-11, 15.

*what*, 67.  
**with**, 208, 211.  
**word-order**, 138, 151, 229.

**x** in liaison, 17; in syllabication, 12.

**y**, between vowels, 10; changed to *i*, 47.

**y**, adverb and pronoun, 61.

**-yer** verbs, 47.





UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

Base schedule: 25 cents on first day overdue  
50 cents on fourth day overdue  
One dollar on seventh day overdue

OCT 30 1947

75-24751

1 Mar 50 RM

3 Nov '50 CA

23 JUL 2 1950

JUL 23 1952 LU

17 Apr '56 GE

MAY 20 1956 LU

30 Jan '59 BB

REC'D LD

LD 21-100m-12,46 (A2012s16) 4120

JAN 28 1959



YB 01209

240387

803

5674

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

